The Mission of the University of Botswana is to improve economic and social conditions for the Nation while advancing itself as a distinctively African university with a regional and international outlook.

To be a leading centre of academic excellence in Africa and the world.

- Provide excellence in the delivery of learning to ensure society is provided with talented, creative and confident graduates
- Advance knowledge and understanding through excellence in research and its application
- Improve economic and social development by high impact engagement with business, the professions, government and civil society

To achieve its Vision and fulfil its Mission the University of Botswana values the following:

- Students by creating a holistic environment which ensures that learning is their central focus, and by establishing and developing a range of learning, social, cultural and recreational opportunities that will facilitate the full realisation of their potential for academic and personal growth
- Staff by fostering a University community through encouraging, supporting, developing and empowering all individuals and groups to achieve the University’s Goals
- Academic freedom by upholding the spirit of free and critical thought and enquiry, through the tolerance of a diversity of beliefs and understanding, as well as the open exchange of ideas and knowledge
- Academic integrity expressed in creativity, objective analysis, experimentation, critical appraisal, independent thought, informed debate and intellectual honesty
- Cultural authenticity by ensuring that the diversity of Botswana’s individual values and cultural heritage forms an important part of the academic and organisational life of the institution and reflects its distinctiveness as an African university
- Internationalism through participation in the global world of scholarship, by being receptive and responsive to issues within the international environment as well as the recruitment of an international staff and student body
- Professional and ethical standards by upholding the highest professional and ethical behaviour and through openness, honesty, tolerance and respect for the individual
- Social responsibility by promoting an awareness of, and providing leadership in responding to, the issues and problems facing society
- Equity by ensuring equal opportunity and non-discrimination on the basis of personal, ethnic, religious, gender or other social characteristics
- Autonomy as an institution that is, through its self-governing structures, independent in action while being responsive to societal needs
- Public accountability by ensuring transparent decision-making and open review as well as the full participation of stakeholders in the development of the institution
- Productivity through the setting and rewarding of high standards of performance underpinned by a dedication to quality, efficiency and effectiveness throughout the institution
- Environmental Sustainability by deepening awareness and ensuring environmental issues are incorporated into student learning and teaching and research, the development of environmentally sustainable campuses and through contributing to the environmental sustainability agenda in Botswana and beyond
University of Botswana Principal Officers

Chairman of Council
Mr E. W. M. J. Legwaila

Chancellor
Sir Q. K. J. Masire

Deputy Vice Chancellor
(Finance & Administration)
Mr D. B. Katzke

Vice Chancellor
Prof. B. K. Otthogile

Deputy Vice Chancellor
(Student Affairs)
Prof. L. Nyati – Saleshando

Deputy Vice Chancellor
(Academic Affairs)
Prof. F. Youngman
# Academic Year Almanac 2010-2011

## Semester One 2010

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event/Date</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-9 July</td>
<td>Last Day to Drop a Course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 July</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 1 (Level 1.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 July</td>
<td>Last day to withdraw and receive a refund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 July</td>
<td>DABS Mid-Semester Break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-24 July</td>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 July</td>
<td>COUNCIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 July</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (level 3, 4, 5,)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 July</td>
<td>DABS Classes Resume after Mid Semester Break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 July</td>
<td>Business Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 July</td>
<td>Education Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26-30 July</td>
<td>CCE Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27-30 July</td>
<td>FET Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 July</td>
<td>Humanities Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 July</td>
<td>School of Graduate Studies Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 July</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (level 1, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 Jul – 4 Aug</td>
<td>Science Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 August</td>
<td>Social Science Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 – 3 August</td>
<td>Health Sciences Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 August</td>
<td>DE-Diplomas Residential Session 2 &amp; Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 August</td>
<td>Mid-Semester Break Begins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 August</td>
<td>Botswana Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 August</td>
<td>Public Holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 August</td>
<td>Classes Resume after Mid Semester Break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8 August</td>
<td>Semester 2 Class Schedule Information due</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 August</td>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 August</td>
<td>University Research Committee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Semester Two 2010

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event/Date</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 January</td>
<td>DE - Business Degrees- Residential Session 1 (Level 3, 4, 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4 January</td>
<td>SENATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-7 January</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 1 (Level 1, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-7 January</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 3, 4, 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 January</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 1, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9 January</td>
<td>Mid-Semester Break Begins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9 November</td>
<td>DE-Diplomas Residential Session 2 and Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 January</td>
<td>Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 January</td>
<td>COUNCIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 January</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 2 (Level 3, 4, 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 January</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 2 (Level 1, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 January</td>
<td>Classes Resume after Semester Break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 January 2 p.m.</td>
<td>DABS Classes Resume after Mid-Semester Break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 January</td>
<td>Science Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 January</td>
<td>Social Science Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 January</td>
<td>Health Sciences Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 January</td>
<td>Business Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 January</td>
<td>Education Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 January</td>
<td>Semester 1 Class Schedule Information due</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 January</td>
<td>DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 2 (Level 1, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 January 2 p.m.</td>
<td>CCE Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 January</td>
<td>FET Faculty Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 January</td>
<td>Humanities FacultyBoard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 February</td>
<td>School of Graduate Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 February</td>
<td>DE - Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 3, 4, 5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**SEMESTER ONE 2010**

- **DABS Registration Period**
- **Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee**
- **Open Registration for Undergraduate Students**
- **DABS Classes Begin**
- **New Student Orientation and Registration (New Undergraduates)**
- **DABS Last Day to Add a Course**
- **DABS Late Registration**
- **President’s Day**
- **Public Holiday**
- **Arrival and Registration (All Continuing Students)**
- **DE-Diplomas Registration Period**
- **New Graduate Student Orientation**
- **DE-Diplomas New Students Orientation**
- **Library Orientation for DE-Diploma New Students**
- **DE-Business Degrees- Introductory Session (All Levels)**
- **DE-Diplomas Residential Session 1**
- **Classes Begin**
- **Faculty Executive Committees**
- **Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins**
- **Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee**
- **University Research Committee**
- **Last Day to Add Course**
- **Last Day of Late Registration**
- **DE-Business Degrees Residential Session 1 (Level 3,4,5) **
- **SENATE**

**SEMESTER TWO 2010**

- **University Reopens**
- **Faculty Executive Committees**
- **Registration Period**
- **DE Registration Period**
- **Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee**
- **DE-Diplomas Residential Session 1**
- **DE Business Degrees- Introductory Session (Levels 1-5)**
- **Classes Begin**
- **Late Registration and Course Add/Drop Period Begins**
- **Social Science Faculty Board**
- **Health Sciences Faculty Board**
- **SENATE EXECUTIVE**
- **Business Faculty Board**
- **Education Faculty Board**
- **Last Day to Add Course**
- **Last Day of Late Registration**
- **CCE Board**
- **FET Faculty Board**
- **Humanities Faculty Board**
- **Science Faculty Board**
- **School of Graduate Studies Board**
- **Last day to Drop Course**
- **Last day to withdraw and receive a refund**
- **Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee**
- **University Research Committee**
- **3 January**
- **3-4 January**
- **4-7 January**
- **5-7 January**
- **6 January**
- **8-9 January**
- **8-9 November**
- **10 January**
- **10 January**
- **11 January**
- **12 January**
- **12 January 2 p.m.**
- **13 January**
- **14 January**
- **14 January**
- **14 January**
- **17 January**
- **18 January**
- **19 January**
- **20 January 2 p.m.**
- **21 January**
- **28 January**
- **3 February**
- **4 February**
- **5-6 February**
- **9 February**
- **12-13 February**
- **19-20 February**
- **26-27 February**
- **28 February**
- **28-4 February**
- **3 March**
- **4 MARCH**
- **5-6 March**
- **6-7 March**
- **7 March**
- **7 March**
- **8 March**
- **9 March**
- **10 March**
- **11 March**
- **11 March**
- **12-13 March**
- **14 March**
- **15 March**
- **16 March**
- **17 March**
- **19-20 March**
Graduation Ceremony

SCHFROMA
DE - Business Degrees- Residential Session 2 (Level 3,4,5)
Social Science Faculty Board
Health Sciences Faculty Board
Business Faculty Board
Education Faculty Board
DE - Business Degrees Residential Session 2 (Level 1, 2)
CCE Board
Humanities Faculty Board
School of Graduate Studies Board
Science Faculty Board
DE - Business Degrees Test 1 (level 1,2)
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
DABS Classes End
DABS Examination Days
Open Registration for Semester 2
Last Day of Classes
COUNCIL
Reading Days (No Classes, Assessments, Examinations Held)
DE - Business Degrees Residential Session 3 (Level 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
DE - Diplomas Residential Session 3
Final Examination Period Begins
DE - Diplomas Examinations

9 October
10 October
11 October
12 October
13 October
14 October
15 October
16 October
17 October
18 October
19 October
20 October
21 October
22 October
23 October
24 October
25 October
26 October
27 October
28 October
29 October
30 October
31 October
November
December
January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December

DE - Business Degrees - Examinations
Final Examinations Period Ends
Semester 1 Ends
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
Departmental Boards of Examiners/CCE Examiners Boards
Faculty Boards (Examination Results)
Final Grades Due by 6 pm
SENATE EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE
All Final Grades Published
University Closes for Christmas

22-29 November
26 November
26 November
3 December
6-8 December
9-13 December
13 December
14 December
14 December
15 December

University Research Committee
DE - Business Degrees Test 1 (Level 1, 2)
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
Open Registration for Semester 1 Begins
SCHFROMA
DE - Business Degrees- Residential Session 3 (Levels 5)
DE - Diplomas Residential Session 3
DE - Diplomas Examination Session
Last Day of Classes
Good Friday (Public holiday)
Readings Days (No Classes, Assessments, Examinations Held)
Easter Monday (Public holiday)
Final Examination Period Begins
DABS Examination Period
Labour Day
DE - Business Degrees Residential Session 3 (Levels 5)
Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee
Semester 2 Ends
Final Examinations Period Ends
Winter Session begins
Departmental Boards of Examiners
Faculty Boards (Examination Results)
Final Grades Due by 6 pm
Senate Executive Committee
All Final Grades Published
The opening of the University of Basutoland, Bechuanaland and Swaziland (UBBS) on January 1st 1964 was the outcome of an agreement reached in mid-1962 between the High Commission Territories and the Oblate of Mary Immaculate of Pius XII Catholic University, Roma, Lesotho. Pius XII College of Roma, 35 kilometres from Maseru, was itself the product of the desire for an institution of higher learning for Africans by the Catholic hierarchy in Southern Africa. It opened its doors to students in 1946, with five students and five priest-lecturers. In 1950, it was taken over by the Catholic Order of the Oblate of Mary Immaculate. By 1963 there were 180 students, both men and women, and several buildings, including a science block, refectory, administration complex and workshops. Courses followed at Pius XII College were taught and examined under a special relationship entered into in 1955 with the University of South Africa, which awarded students its degrees and diplomas in Arts, Science, Commerce and Education. Pius XII College experienced difficulties over finance for the expanding institution and over racial restrictions on student residence required by the University of South Africa. Negotiations with the High Commission Territories to transform the University College into a fully fledged University were therefore initiated during 1962. On June 13, 1963, a deed of cession and indemnity was signed by the Oblates and the High Commissioner of Basutoland, Bechuanaland and Swaziland. The new University, with Ford Foundation and British Government funds, purchased the assets of the Roma Campus for an indemnity of half of its value, in exchange for guarantees of a continuing Catholic presence on the campus. UBBS became UBLs (The University of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland) in 1966 on the Independence of Botswana and Lesotho. From a total of 188 students in 1964, the University grew to 402 students in 1970, of whom 145 were from Lesotho, with lesser numbers from Swaziland, Botswana, Rhodesia, South Africa and elsewhere. UBLs conferred its first degrees in April 1st 1967 after a transitional period during which the former Pius XII College students continued to take University of South Africa degrees. UBLs offered its own four-year undergraduate degrees and diplomas in Arts (including Economics and Administration), Science and Education, with Law students following a five-year degree, including two years tuition at the University of Edinburgh. Students seeking specialised degrees in Medicine, Engineering, etc, proceeded to other universities after completing Part I (Years 1 and 2) studies in Science. The number of academic staff grew from 31 in 1964 to 78 in 1970. Staff were recruited from many countries, but the University pursued an active localisation policy from 1971. UBLs was equally funded by the Governments of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, but had comparatively little presence in Botswana and Swaziland in the first phase of its existence during 1964-1970. The only substantial ‘devolution’ of UBLs from Roma Campus came towards the end of this phase of University development and was the association of the Swaziland Agricultural College of Luyengo with the University, as the Swaziland Agricultural College and University Centre. This College, built for the Swaziland Government with Oxfam and ‘Freedom from Hunger’ funds, had been opened in 1966. In 1970, the Swaziland Government agreed to hand over the College to UBLs, together with the Research Division of the Ministry of Agriculture and its experimental station at Malkerns near Luyengo. From 1972, these together constituted a new Faculty of Agriculture. In Botswana, the UBLs presence was limited to the energies of the Division of Extra Mural Services and the School of Education, and a small Short-Course Centre built during 1969. With independence, the three countries began to take a closer look at the colonial inheritance of education, including their joint University, and began to identify the role of UBLs in higher and middle-level training. A series of academic planning reports for UBLs produced after 1966 culminated in the second Alexander Report of 1970, which combined, ‘The major recommendations of previous reports for the development of university campuses in each country and the unified development of higher education and vocational and teacher training’. The report recommended that Part I studies begin in Botswana and Swaziland, with eventual division of Part II (Year 2 and 4) studies among the campuses, and the consideration of ‘polytechnic’ arrangements for technical and vocational courses. The second Alexander Report was accepted by the University and by the Governments of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland, at a meeting in October 1970, on the Luyengo campus. It heralded the second phase (1971-1976) of UBLs development. Plans were immediately drawn up to spend about one million Rand for campus development in each of the three countries. In Botswana and Swaziland there were to be campuses respectively within the capital of Gaborone, and at Kwaluseni adjacent to the national high school of Matsapha. Funds were obtained from the United States, British, Canada, Danish and Netherlands Governments as well as from the Governments of UBLs countries, the Anglo American Corporation and other bodies. Teaching of Part I began and temporary accommodation at Gaborone and Kwaluseni campuses became fully operational in 1973. In Swaziland, the William Pitcher and Nazarene Teacher Training Colleges were affiliated to the local university centre, as were
the Francistown, Lobatse and Serowe Teacher Training Colleges in Botswana. Plans for specialised Part II and professional studies on each campus were dramatically advanced by the devolution of Part II Humanities teaching to Gaborone and Kwaluseni, as well as Roma, in 1974. Further negotiations between the three governments and the University resulted in agreement on June 11, 1975, known as the 'Luyengo Package' which was accepted by all parties. Following student unrest at Roma, and strained relations between the central UBLS administration and the Lesotho government over implementation of the 'Luyengo Package', the Roma campus was precipitately withdrawn from UBLS and constituted as the National University of Lesotho (NUU) on Monday October 20, 1975. This occurred at a time when a working group on further devolution of UBLS into three University Colleges was preparing its report for the Council of the University. The nationalization of all facilities, monies and files in Lesotho meant the central administration of UBLS could operate with only limited effectiveness from premises at Malkerns during 1975-1976, and considerable autonomy was devolved onto the Botswana and Swaziland campuses. Students from Botswana and Swaziland were immediately withdrawn from the Roma campus on the appropriation of all UBLS property in Lesotho by NUL. Part II teaching for students was resumed within a few months in Botswana (Economics and Social Studies and Science) and in Swaziland (Law). Following the acceptance of the Hunter Report and further negotiations between the University and the Governments of Botswana and Swaziland, the University of Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland (UBLS) became the University of Botswana and Swaziland (UBS), with two constituent University Colleges of Botswana and Swaziland (UCB and UCS respectively). The new University structure was dedicated to maintaining and intensifying service to the ideals previously laid out for UBLS by the Botswana and Swaziland Governments. The ideals were summed up in the Second National Development Plan of Swaziland, which saw UBS as playing an increasingly important role in National Development not only through providing the educated manpower needed, but also through (the university’s) great potential as a focus for the academic and cultural activities of the nation. The ideals were also identified as the beginning of the devolution phase of UBLS development into Botswana and Swaziland by the then Chancellor, Seretse Khama, in his graduation speech in May 1970, on the Luyengo campus. "The University must be a committed institution, committed to the fulfillment of the ambitions and aspirations of the communities it was created to serve. One of these is rapid development, another is nonracialism, and the third is simply pride in ourselves and in our past, which in turn would lead to a greater degree of self-confidence, which is one of the very basic ingredients of true independent nationhood." The years 1976 and 1982 saw both constituent Colleges of the University develop their physical resources and their academic programmes in close cooperation with each other, with a view to the eventual establishment of separate national universities on the 1st July, 1982. The formal inauguration of the University of Botswana was performed on 23rd October 1982 by His Excellency Sir Ketumile Masire, President of the Republic of Botswana. The University of Botswana and Swaziland continued to cooperate for a further six months to 31 December 1982 for the purpose of examining and awarding degrees, diplomas and certificates. In terms of an agreement between the Governments of Botswana and Swaziland, the National Universities in Botswana and Swaziland were to continue to exchange students and to cooperate in certain areas and to that end a consultative machinery set up to advise on how best to cooperate.

The University Organisation

The University of Botswana was established on 1st July 1982 by an Act of Parliament. The University campus consists of that part of the two former universities (UBLS and UBS – see Historical Note above) which was situated in Botswana and was sometimes referred to as the Gaborone Campus. The University is closely involved in the national development process of Botswana. In this regard the special functions of the University are to engage in improving the quality and in expanding the quantity of the human resources needed for development, and to act as the repository of the collective knowledge and experience of the nation and the world. The first of these functions is fulfilled through the teaching programmes offered by the University and its affiliated institutions, leading to the award of degrees, diplomas and certificates. The second function is carried out individually and collectively by the staff of the University and its affiliated institutions, through the research and development, consultancies and information services which they undertake. Like any other complex organisation, the University has established certain patterns of authority and specialisation, systems, and rules of procedure, in order to perform its functions in an orderly and effective manner. These regulate day-to-day work within the University.

The Council

The governing body of the University is the Council, which has the ultimate responsibility for the work and progress of the University towards the achievement of its goals. Its
general information

membership includes leading figures from the national and international community as well as student representatives within the University. The Council has wide powers to make statutes, lay down policy, approve programmes and plans, and to establish working procedures governing the day-to-day administrative life of the University. It also provides and controls the resources required to support both the academic activities and the physical development and maintenance of the University. But as a mainly policy-making body, the Council deploys the resources, and should not be engaged in the day-to-day administration of the University. Clearly, it could not carry out efficiently all its wide responsibilities by itself.

On academic matters it consults the Senate; on non-academic matters, on financial control and responsibility, it delegates much of the detailed work to the officers and committees.

The Senate

The chief academic authority of the University is the Senate, whose membership includes the VC, DVCs, Faculty Deans, Faculty representatives and Heads of academic support units as well as student representatives. Under the Council, the Senate has the responsibility for the general control and direction of teaching and research activities, examinations, the conferment of degrees and award of diplomas and certificates. Much of its statutory authority is exercised through its approval and, from time to time, amendment of various sets of academic regulations, all of which are published for general information in the later sections of this Calendar. They include general and special academic regulations, admissions and examination procedures, degree structures, programmes of study, syllabuses, library regulations, etcetera. Regulations in any organisation may appear to restrict freedom of action, but are necessary for the orderly conduct of affairs. Additionally, in a University context, the regulations are the means by which the Senate ensures that the academic standards and quality of teaching are acceptable not only to the University and the nation, but also to the wider academic community of the world. Senate also delegates much of its detailed work to committees, reviewing the recommendations they bring forward for its approval.

Faculties and Departments

Below the level of the Vice Chancellor’s office, the University is divided broadly into three types of specialised work: academic affairs, finance and administration, and student affairs. The academic side is represented by the Senate, Faculties, Schools, Departments and Institutes. Specialisation and the best use of staff expertise are achieved on the basis of the division of the academic areas into departments. Each department has a special focus, involving it in teaching and research in particular subjects or disciplines. These departments are responsible for the day-to-day teaching and research work of the University, and they formulate the programmes of study. A number of departments and similar or related disciplines are grouped together to constitute a Faculty. At present there are six established Faculties: Business, Education, Engineering and Technology, Humanities, Science, Social Sciences and the School of Graduate Studies.

Detailed planning of the new Faculty of Health Sciences that was formally established on 1 April 2006 is underway. Currently, the Faculty is envisaged as comprising the emerging School of Medicine, a School of Nursing, a School of Allied Health Professions and the existing Department of Environmental Health. In general, departments in the same Faculty work closely together in offering Degree, Diploma and Certificate Programmes. In many cases there is a similar cooperation between Faculties. Faculties are headed by Deans, who represent the Faculty on other bodies and who have general responsibility for coordinating the work of the Faculty. Faculties work through their Faculty Boards and a variety of committees established by the Boards. Proposals from departments are brought to Faculty Boards for discussion and may then be submitted to Senate and, when necessary, to Council. Decisions and directions are then transmitted back to departments through the same channels.

Student Financial Information

Student Financial Procedures

2.21 Reporting to the Finance Office is an integral part of registration. Until financial clearance has been obtained from the Finance Office, registration will be deemed to be incomplete.

2.22 All fees must be paid by the first day of the semester. Sponsored students have to produce satisfactory evidence of the award of sponsorship.

2.23 Where a scholarship includes a student's personal allowance, the University may advance up to one half of it, at its discretion. If a cherub is not honored, a student may be asked to cancel registration immediately.

2.24 Scholarships administered by the University shall be awarded on the understanding that any monies received by the University and disbursed to or on behalf of the student, will be repayable by the student, should he or she withdraw during the course of the academic year without permission of the University.

2.25 Students who damage University property or equipment will be charged the cost of repair or replacement of the item(s). An annual caution fee is held to cover any such charges which are not otherwise settled upon demand. Before registering for a subsequent academic session, the caution fee must be restored. Unless an account for damage is settled immediately a student may be requested to withdraw.

2.26 Should a student leave the University without having paid the prescribed fees, including fines due, or without returning any library books, the academic results and transcripts and/or final certification for which a student is otherwise qualified, shall be withheld until such fees, library books or University property have been recovered.

2.27 Any registered student who decides to withdraw from the University must give notice of his/her intention to do so in writing to the relevant Head of Department and Deans Office. All students shall be eligible to get 100% refund if they withdraw within the first 30 days each semester. Any registered student who withdraws from the University after the first 30 days shall be eligible for only 50% of tuition fee refund up to mid semester and any student withdrawing from the University after mid semester break of each semester shall not be eligible for any refund of fees.

2.28 Once a student has accepted an offer to reside in any hostel and has been duly registered for accommodation, he/she shall remain so registered for the rest of the semester. Application or request to move out of the hostel during the semester shall not be acceded to.

Where a student moves out of the hostel on their own accord no refund of accommodation fees shall be made irrespective of the period of hostel occupation.

Where a student is allocated hostel space during the course of the semester accommodation fees shall be charged on a pro rata basis.

Student Admissions

Prospective undergraduate applicants, may obtain application forms and information from the University Admissions Office located in Block 210 on the Main Campus. The forms must be returned directly to the Admissions Office at the University. For graduate Programmers, admission applications are made direct to The Dean of School of Graduate Studies. It must be stressed that application for a Government or other scholarship tenable at the University does not take the place of application to the University for admission. However, prospective applicants need not wait until they are assured of a scholarship before applying for admission to the University; the two applications can go forward in parallel. Similarly, students are free to simultaneously apply to other universities or educational institutions. For the admission application to be processed, all the forms and other requirements outlined in the Admission Regulations must be submitted.

Fees and Scholarships

It should be noted that statutory fees, and expenses do not include the costs of books, notebooks, stationery, personal laboratory equipment, medical attention, repair of clothes, dry-cleaning and living expenses. The cost of travel to and from the University is entirely the student’s responsibility. Many governments are prepared to offer scholarships or grants to prospective students; information about these scholarships should be obtained from the appropriate authority in the country concerned. Some industrial trusts and corporations also offer awards, usually through the appropriate government, and information about these should be sought accordingly. Although every effort will be made to ensure that no student is deprived of the opportunity for study by lack of money, acceptance by the University does not imply that a scholarship is available.
### Full Time Programmes

#### Undergraduate Programmes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certificates</th>
<th>Science and Engineering</th>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>19 300</td>
<td>36 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Faculties</td>
<td></td>
<td>21 280</td>
<td>42 560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14 500</td>
<td>29 000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Diplomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Science and Engineering</th>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
<th>Other Faculties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 300</td>
<td>36 600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 280</td>
<td>42 560</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14 500</td>
<td>29 000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Bachelors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Science and Engineering</th>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
<th>School of Medicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 300</td>
<td>36 600</td>
<td>21 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 280</td>
<td>42 560</td>
<td>42 560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14 500</td>
<td>29 000</td>
<td>29 000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Postgraduate Programmes

#### Postgraduate Diplomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 580</td>
<td>18 870</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Masters Programmes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Science and Engineering</th>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
<th>School of Medicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17 050</td>
<td>25 575</td>
<td>21 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 280</td>
<td>42 560</td>
<td>42 560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14 500</td>
<td>29 000</td>
<td>29 000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MBA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19 610</td>
<td>29 415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 750</td>
<td>28 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 550</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Other Faculties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13 550</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MPhil Science and Engineering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17 050</td>
<td>25 575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 970</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MPhil (Other Faculties)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13 550</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 970</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PhD Science and Engineering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9 350</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PhD (Other Faculties)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident Students</th>
<th>Non-Resident Students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9 350</td>
<td>20 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Based on normal load of 30 credits for undergraduates and 24 credits for postgraduate students.

---

### Part Time Programmes

#### Diploma (DABS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annual Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 090</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Excluding book costs)

### International Student Fees

#### Undergraduate/Postgraduate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Students from Africa: 2 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students from outside Africa: 3 220</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Group Study Abroad

| Students from Africa: 580 |
| Students from outside Africa: 920 |

Group Study Abroad [Special Service] =20% of the cost of activity

### Other Fees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students: 180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students: 360</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Late Application Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resident Students: 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Resident Students: 530</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Student Life Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Late Registration Fee/Day (Maximum 14 Days): 70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transcript Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identity Card Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Accommodation Fees

| Undergraduate Full Time Student/Annum: 4 000 |
| Undergraduate Hostel Fee during Holidays/Day: 25 |
| Undergraduate Hostel Fee for non-students during Holidays/Day: 140 |
| Refectory Fees Undergraduate Students/Annum**: 8 970 |
| Graduate Hostels/Annum: 6 760 |
| Graduate Hostels/Annum (including holidays): 9 660 |
| Graduate Hostels Fee during Holidays/Day: 60 |
| Graduate Hostels Fee for non-students during Holidays/Day: 300 |
| Laundry Fee/Annum: 430 |

*Fees subject to change during 2009/2010
Bank Payments and Procedures

1. Existing Students

1.1 University students may pay fees at any branch of First National Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 57110069096. To pay into this account a University student needs a valid student ID number. The University accounting system has been interfaced with that of the bank so that immediately upon payment a student will be un-blocked for registration at the University. After paying your fees you may proceed directly to your Faculty for academic registration [i.e. University students who pay fees in this manner need not queue again at Financial Services department for financial registration/clearance].

For international payments, students can pay into our Standard Chartered Bank Account details of which are as follows:

Account Name: University of Botswana
Account Number: 0100110109600
Branch code: 662167
Swift code: SCCHBBGX

Copies of proof of payment, (with full student names and student number noted on them) must immediately be sent to the attention Manager Student debtors at fax number 00 267 3959 390 or e-mailed to Studentpayments@mopipi.ub.bw

1.2. Students who are in receipt of sponsorship letters must deliver copies of the same and get financial clearance from Student Debtors office before proceeding to their respective Faculties to complete registration.

2. Prospective Students

2.1 Candidates or Prospective students who wish to apply for admission may pay application fees at the following banks:

- First National Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 62130787601
- Barclays Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 3761645
- Standard Chartered Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 010010109604

For payment of application fee from outside Botswana please deposit the fees into the following account; Account name, University of Botswana; Account number, 010010109604; Branch code, 662167; Swift Code, SCCHBBGX

2.2 A copy of the deposit slip [with your name & ID written on] should be attached to application forms when these are submitted or sent to Admissions Section of Academic Services department. Applicants who pay fees in this manner need not queue at University Cashier’s Office for payment before submitting application forms. This method of payment also avoids acquisition of post office Postal Orders for onward transmission to the University as a form of payment.

Bank Payments and Procedures

1. Existing Students

1.1 University students may pay fees at any branch of First National Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 57110069096. To pay into this account a University student needs a valid student ID number. The University accounting system has been interfaced with that of the bank so that immediately upon payment a student will be un-blocked for registration at the University. After paying your fees you may proceed directly to your Faculty for academic registration [i.e. University students who pay fees in this manner need not queue again at Financial Services department for financial registration/clearance].

For international payments, students can pay into our Standard Chartered Bank Account details of which are as follows:

Account Name: University of Botswana
Account Number: 0100110109600
Branch code: 662167
Swift code: SCCHBBGX

Copies of proof of payment, (with full student names and student number noted on them) must immediately be sent to the attention Manager Student debtors at fax number 00 267 3959 390 or e-mailed to Studentpayments@mopipi.ub.bw

1.2. Students who are in receipt of sponsorship letters must deliver copies of the same and get financial clearance from Student Debtors office before proceeding to their respective Faculties to complete registration.

2. Prospective Students

2.1 Candidates or Prospective students who wish to apply for admission may pay application fees at the following banks:

- First National Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 62130787601
- Barclays Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 3761645
- Standard Chartered Bank of Botswana to University of Botswana bank account number 010010109604

For payment of application fee from outside Botswana please deposit the fees into the following account; Account name, University of Botswana; Account number, 010010109604; Branch code, 662167; Swift Code, SCCHBBGX

2.2 A copy of the deposit slip [with your name & ID written on] should be attached to application forms when these are submitted or sent to Admissions Section of Academic Services department. Applicants who pay fees in this manner need not queue at University Cashier’s Office for payment before submitting application forms. This method of payment also avoids acquisition of post office Postal Orders for onward transmission to the University as a form of payment.

Travel and Residence

International students accepted to the University of Botswana are required to be in possession of valid travel documents, visas and residence permits (where applicable) to enter the country.

Base Entrance Qualifications

1. Admission Regulations

1.1 Qualifications for Entry

1.1.1 The normal basic requirements for entrance to Undergraduate Degree and Diploma programmes shall be Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) with a grade C or better in English Language, but other qualifications may be accepted on their merit as alternatives. Entry into the Science Degree programmes shall be on the basis of BGCSE Science and Mathematics aggregates and a grade D or better in English Language or equivalents. (For further details see General Academic Regulations covering the programme in question.)

1.1.2 For all programmes, only the results of examinations taken before March 1st in the year of application will be considered in assessing an applicant’s entrance qualifications. Full particulars concerning qualifications must normally be available to the University before 1st March. It is the responsibility of the applicant to ensure that all examination results and other documents are forwarded to the Admissions Office before the deadline.

1.1.3 Candidates who are awaiting the issue of a certificate following results of an examination shall normally be required to provide legal proof of qualification from an examining body, stating the level of the subjects passed, before an offer of admission is issued and registration to programmes of the University is effected. Applicants admitted and registered under this provision shall not normally be permitted to register for, or write final year examinations before submitting the certificate.

1.2 Admission Applications

1.2.1 Unless other specific instructions are given, application forms are obtained from and returned to: The Undergraduate Admissions Office University of Botswana Private Bag 0022 Gaborone, Botswana

1.2.2 Each application shall consist of:

i) The application form to be completed by the applicant himself/herself, in ink, clearly and in capital letters;
ii) Academic transcripts;
iii) Certified copy of Secondary School certificate;
iv) Appropriate application fee.

1.2.3 When returning the application form, the
applicant must enclose a (non-refundable) application fee.

1.2.4 Applications will not be considered until the University has received the application form, relevant academic transcripts and certificates, and the application fee.

1.2.5 In addition, an applicant who has attended another university or other postsecondary institution must submit a certificate of good conduct, and a transcript, duly signed by the competent officer of the issuing University.

1.2.6 Unless an applicant is notified to the contrary, the closing date for the receipt of complete application forms and accompanying documents will be the last working day of March immediately preceding the commencement of the academic year for which application is made. (The academic year starts in August.)

1.27 Graduate Degrees

1.271 Application procedures are as for undergraduate study (1.2.1 to 1.2.6 above).

1.272 Admission to a programme leading to a graduate degree must be approved by the School of Graduate Studies on the authority of Senate.

1.273 On receipt of the completed application forms, the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies shall send one copy to the relevant Head of Department who shall submit his/her recommendation to the Departmental Board for consideration. The Board shall in turn forward the application with its recommendation to Senate via the Graduate Studies Board.

1.274 Permission to pursue a graduate degree programme as a part-time student shall be granted only to persons who can show that they are able to devote a reasonable proportion of their time to the work prescribed.

1.275 Registration for Master's Degree programmes by coursework and dissertation shall normally take place at the beginning of the first semester of each academic year but may, in special circumstances, and on the recommendation by the Graduate Studies Board, take place at the beginning of the semester following that in which the application is approved by the Senate.

1.276 MPhil and PhD applicants may be accepted and register anytime during the academic year with permission of the relevant Department/unit.

1.3 Notification of Acceptance

1.31 The Admissions Office for undergraduate applicants and the School of Graduate Studies for graduate applicants shall notify each applicant whether or not he/she has been accepted for admission to the University.

1.32 No applicant should come to the University unless he/she has received a formal offer of admission.

1.4 Conditions of Acceptance

1.4.1 Acceptance of an applicant by the University shall be on the understanding that the applicant undertakes to be bound by and to observe the policies and regulations of the University. Acceptance to the University will be subject to the production of a satisfactory medical certificate.

1.4.2 Academic Transcripts

An official transcript will be provided to each student free at the conclusion of his/her studies. Extra copies thereafter shall be issued at a cost to be determined by the University from time to time.

General Academic Regulations

2 00.0 General Provisions

00.1 Preamble

00.11 Senate reserves the right to alter, amend, replace or cancel any of the Academic Regulations and shall be the final authority for the interpretation of these regulations.

00.12 Senate has the power to exempt any student from any of the Academic Regulations.

00.13 In addition to these general academic regulations, special faculty and departmental regulations, which must be approved by Senate, shall also apply.

00.14 General regulations shall take precedence over special faculty and departmental regulations unless Senate has otherwise provided.

00.15 Faculty regulations shall take precedence over departmental special regulations, unless Senate has otherwise provided.

00.16 Should a regulation, according to which a programme has been compiled, be amended, a student who has started a programme under the old regulation and who has not interrupted studies, may complete such a programme in accordance with the old regulation on condition that a faculty board may formulate special transitional requirements in order to enable that student to complete studies in accordance with the new regulation.

00.17 A student who has been admitted to a programme and fails to register for such a programme in the ensuing two semesters; or is re-admitted to such a programme, is deemed to have interrupted studies and forfeits the right to continue studies under the old regulation.

00.18 Senate shall establish procedures for the approval of all academic programmes of the university.

00.2 Definitions of Key Terms

In these regulations, the following terms shall be used as indicated.

00.211 Academic Year and Semester: The academic year shall comprise two semesters, each consisting of 14 teaching weeks, a week mid-semester break, and two weeks for examinations.

00.212 Programme: A plan of study made up of core, optional, electives, and general education courses, lasting over a specified period, which leads to a Degree, or Diploma qualification.

00.213 Subject: A collection of core and optional courses in a given discipline of study that will constitute a major or minor component of the programme.

00.214 Course: For the purpose of teaching, each subject shall be divided into one or more components called courses. A course is a basic building block of teaching and learning activities with content designed to meet particular aims and objectives. Each course will normally be assessed within the semester in which it is offered, except for a year-long course, teaching practice, internship, industrial training or any other attachments.

00.215 Course Code: A course code is an identification of a course with a prefix of three capital letters followed by three digits. The first of the three letters shall normally be the same as the first letter of the subject, and the digits shall indicate the level, with 100 to 599 for Bachelor's Degrees, and Diploma programmes.

00.216 Lecture Hour: A lecture hour is a period of instruction of a duration of 50 minutes.

00.217 Lecture Hour Equivalent: One lecture hour equivalent shall be equivalent to any of the following modes of teaching and learning: One lecture hour; Two to three hours of practical/laboratory work/activity defined by the department; or any number between one to four weeks of teaching practice, field work, industrial training or any other attachments or other academic work outside the classroom.

00.218 Credit or Credit Value: The number of credits (or credit value) is assigned to a course in relation to the work done. In any course, work entailing one lecture hour or one lecture hour equivalent per week throughout a semester shall have a credit value of 1.

00.219 Major Subject: A major subject shall comprise courses where the subject is treated in depth during the entire programme of study; and the workload shall depend on the type of programme as defined in regulation 00.230. A student shall normally register for a major subject either in the third or fifth semester.

00.220 Minor Subject: A minor subject shall comprise courses where the workload shall have fewer credits than those of the major subject as stated in regulation 00.232.

00.230 Types of Programmes: Possible programme formats shall include single major, combined degree (major/minor, major/major, multidisciplinary).

00.231 Single Major: A single major is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from one subject (normally chosen either in the third or fifth semester), as well as electives and general education courses.

00.232 Combined Degree (major/minor): A combined degree (major/minor) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from two subjects normally in the ratio of major to minor of approximately 70:30, as well as electives and general education courses. A student’s major and minor cannot be from the same subject.

00.233 Combined Degree (major/major): A combined degree (major/major) is a programme of study composed of core and optional courses from two equally weighted major subjects which are independently studied, as well as electives and general education courses.

00.234 Combined Degree (multidisciplinary): A combined degree (multidisciplinary) is a
programme of study composed of core and optional courses from more than two subjects (for example a combination of three equally weighted subjects, or a series of individualised courses resulting in a programme constructed by negotiation between a student and a personal tutor, and approved by Heads of relevant Departments and Deans), as well as electives and general education courses.

00.240 Types of Courses: Types of courses shall include core, optional, elective, general education, pre-requisite, co-requisite, winter, project, service and audit.

00.241 Core Courses: Core courses are those courses which must be taken in order to meet the requirements of an award, that is, they are compulsory or mandatory.

00.242 Optional Courses: Optional courses are those courses which may be selected from an approved list of courses within a subject of study and which count towards the requirements of an award.

00.243 Elective Courses: Elective courses are those courses which may be selected from a list of courses outside a subject of study and which count towards the requirements of an award.

00.244 General Education Courses:
General education courses are those courses taken for the purpose of broadening the knowledge of a student and count towards the overall credit requirement for the award, but are not part of the core courses of the programme.

00.245 Pre-requisite: A pre-requisite is a course that must be taken and passed in preparation for another course.

00.246 Co-requisite: A co-requisite is a course that must be taken concurrently with other courses to enhance learning in the programme.

00.247 Winter Course: A winter course is that which is taken during the long vacation, such as, teaching practice, industrial training, field work, internships, and attachments. The curriculum and methods of assessment for these courses will be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.248 Project Course: A project course may be taken in a major subject and the requirements of such a course and its method of assessment will be specified in special departmental and faculty regulations. A project course may be taken as a semester course or as a year long project course.

00.249 Service Course: A service course is a course taken in a major or minor subject of one department but is taught by another department.

00.250 Audit Course: An audit course is a course taken by a student, but no credit is earned in such a course.

00.251 Attempted Credits: Attempted credits are the total number of credits a student is officially registered for in a given semester or in all years/levels of study. They exclude audit courses, non - credit courses a student may take, and courses which a student has officially dropped. Attempted credits are used in the calculation of the grade point average (GPA).

00.252 Earned Credits: Earned credits are the total number of credit values of the courses a student has passed in a given semester or in all years/levels of study. Earned credits are used in the determination of a student's year/level of study and minimum number of credits required for graduation. Audit and non - credit courses do not count in credits earned within a particular programme.

00.253 Academic Good Standing: Students are in academic good standing at the university when their cumulative grade point average is 2.00 or above. Such students are considered to be making satisfactory progress toward a qualification.

00.254 Academic Warning: Students may be placed on academic warning for failure to make satisfactory progress toward a qualification. Students whose cumulative grade point average is between 1.99 and 1.51 (the actual lower limit is dependant on the number of attempted credits a student has as indicated in regulation 00.9) may be placed on academic warning for their subsequent semester of enrolment. Students on academic warning may not enrol for more than 16 semester credits. They are encouraged to seek appropriate advice and services from relevant offices.

00.256 Academic Probation: Students may be placed on academic probation for failure to make satisfactory progress toward a qualification. Students whose cumulative grade point average is between 1.90 and 1.21 (the actual upper limit is dependant on the number of attempted credits a student has as indicated in regulation 00.9) may be placed on academic probation for their subsequent semester of enrolment. Students on academic probation may not enrol for more than 14 semester credits. They should seek appropriate advice and services from relevant offices.

00.3 Students
00.31 Registered Students
00.311 Full-time Student: A full-time undergraduate student is one who is registered with the university and carries a minimum workload of 15 credits per semester, unless officially exempted.

00.312 Part-time Student: A part-time undergraduate student is one who is registered with the university and normally carries a workload of less than 15 credits per semester.

00.313 Transfer Student: A transfer student is one who is registered with UB after transferring academic credits deemed to be equivalent to UB credits. Such credits may come from another recognised university or equivalent, or be the result of various articulation agreements between UB and other institutions. Such a student can only transfer up to a maximum of one-half of the total credits required for the programme, and must complete the remaining one-half in the university. The total credits transferred are subject to acceptance by the relevant Department(s). Grade points are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA of transfer students will be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

00.314 Visiting/Exchange/Audit Student: A visiting/exchange/audit student is one who satisfies the university entrance requirements and is registered for a selected number of courses for credit or audit. Such students may be from within the country, from abroad or under exchange programmes.

00.315 Special Student: A special student is one who satisfies the university entrance requirements, but does not have immediate plans to enter a programme and wants to take courses with approval from the department. Such a student shall be limited to register for a maximum of fifteen credits overall.

00.32 Responsibilities of Students
00.321 While the university strives to give students proper academic advice, it is the responsibility of the individual student to know and follow all the regulations of the university.

00.322 A student registered for a course is expected to fulfill all requirements prescribed for that course.

00.323 A student who is unable to attend classes due to illness should notify the Director of Student Welfare of this fact within twenty one consecutive days from the day the student misses classes. Certification from a recognised health officer will be required in support. Prior permission or supporting evidence will be necessary for circumstances other than ill health.

00.324 A student who enters or returns to the university late shall not be entitled to extra tuition.

00.325 A student may have access to their academic transcript and has the right of appeal on any matters concerning it, to Senate through their Faculty Board.

00.4 Exemptions, Credit Banking, Credit Transfer, and recognition of prior learning.

00.41 Permission for exemptions shall be sought in all cases from the Director, Academic Services, and exemption shall be subject to the approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department. Exemption from taking certain courses may be granted under the following conditions:
a) A student who has been registered at UB can bank credits up to a maximum of ten consecutive semesters. Exemption may be
given to a former UB student who subsequently renews UB if such a student has banked credits. Once this exemption has been granted, the programme for which the student is currently registered will be credited with the original marks obtained for the credit course(s) and the corresponding grade points.

b) Exemption(s) may be given to a student if such a student took a course or courses at another recognized University or institution with which UB has a formal articulation agreement, within ten semesters prior to registration. Once such exemptions have been granted, the student may transfer up to a maximum of one-half of the total credits required for the programme. However, grade points for such students are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

c) Exemption may be granted to a student if such a student took a course or courses at another recognized University or institution with which UB has no formal articulation agreement within ten semesters prior to registration. Such exemptions shall be based on course to course articulation and once they have been granted a student may transfer up to a maximum of one third of the total credits required for the programme. However, grade points for such students are not transferable, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of work done at UB only.

d) Exemption(s) may be given to a student for relevant work experience and recognized prior learning upon satisfactory performance in assessments of their knowledge, skills and experience in the area as outlined in Section 6.0 of the policy organised by the Department. A student who has performed such tests shall be awarded an appropriate grade, and may be exempted in the relevant courses up to a maximum of one-sixth of the total credits required for the programme.

00.42 Articulation agreements between UB and other institutions resulting in de facto exemptions shall be applied to general admissions to diploma, higher diploma and degree programmes as well as to satisfy programme specific internal requirements

00.52 Subject to regulation 00.521, any additional entry requirements shall be specified in the programme special faculty and departmental regulations.

00.523 Subject to regulations 00.521 and 00.522, a mature age applicant may use the direct entry route if such an applicant possesses BGCSE or equivalent with grade B or better in two subjects and grade C or better in four subjects.

00.53 Transfer Students

00.531 Transfer students from other recognised universities or institutions may be accepted for undergraduate studies if they have at least a cumulative GPA of 2.00 (on a five point scale) or equivalent and are eligible to return to the university or institution last attended.

00.532 Transfer students with a cumulative GPA of less than 2.00 (on a five point scale) or equivalent shall be subjected to the provisions of general academic regulation 00.9 to determine their admissibility for undergraduate studies. Students admitted under such provisions will have an academic probation status.

00.6 Registration

00.611 The normal workload for a full-time undergraduate student shall be 15 to 18 credits per semester.

00.612 A full-time undergraduate student may carry 12 to 14 credits per semester if such a student has approved course exemptions or is on academic probation.

00.613 Subject to the provisions of regulation 00.9, a full-time undergraduate student may carry 19 to a maximum of 21 credits if such a student has a cumulative GPA of at least 3.50.

00.614 No student shall be registered for any programme one week after the commencement of classes. Any exception to this regulation must have the written permission of the Dean of the Faculty who may consult with the Head of Department and shall not extend beyond the end of the second week after the commencement of classes.

00.615 A student may register for a course only if the official class timetable allows the student to attend all the classes.

00.616 No student shall be allowed to add a course or courses after the first week of the commencement of classes.

00.617 A student may drop a course or courses up to the end of the second week of the commencement of classes.

00.618 A student who has been admitted to the university can register for a core, optional, elective or general education course offered in any of the university programmes, subject to pre-requisites or any other approved programme restrictions.

00.619 An undergraduate student shall register for general education courses selected from the following areas: Area 1: Communication and Study Skills; Area 2: Computer and Information Skills; Area 3: Modes of Inquiry and Critical Thinking; Area 4: Physical Education, Health and Wellness; Area 5: Science and Technology; Area 6: World Civilisation; and Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills.

00.620 An undergraduate student must, during their first two semesters at UB, register for at least four credits in level 100 general education courses in each of Areas 1 and 2, unless exempted.

00.621 In addition to the requirements of general academic regulation 00.620, an undergraduate degree student must register for a minimum of an additional twelve credits of general education courses selected from at least two credits from Area 3, and the balance from at least two areas out of Areas 4, 5, 6 and 7 before completing their programme of study. Where there are problems of accessing any of Areas 3 to 7 courses, a student shall fulfil the requirement by selecting optional or elective courses.

00.622 The total number of credits earned by a student from elective and general education courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits gained in the entire programme.

00.623 A Dean, on the recommendation of a relevant department may cancel the registration of a student or the registration for a course during a semester, if the student does not meet the programme requirements or prerequisite requirements for the course.

00.624 A registered student shall have access to an official registration record printout detailing the course(s) registered for. It is the student's responsibility to ensure that the registration record is correct. Any registration record amendments should be made by the end of the add/drop/late registration period.

00.625 A student should not attend a course unless such a course is officially registered for as indicated on the official registration printout.

00.626 A student cannot earn credit for a course in which a student is officially registered for as indicated on the official registration printout.

00.627 Any registered for course which is abandoned or not attended will be recorded with a zero mark for any graded component not taken. Such a course will be included in the calculation of the student's cumulative GPA.

00.628 The minimum number of students required in order for an optional course to run is 15 students for levels 100 to 200 classes, and 8 students for classes above level 200 except as permitted by Senate.

00.629 The maximum number of students permitted to be enrolled in each course shall be determined by the Head of Department in consultation with the Dean.

00.630 Cancellation of Classes: If no class cancellation notice is posted on the classroom door, classes are officially considered cancelled if an instructor is 15 minutes late. All cases of cancelled classes must be reported to the relevant Head of department.

00.631 A visiting/exchange/special/audit student may register to take courses for credit or audit. An application to take courses for credit or audit should be made to the Director of Academic Services. The application will be subject to approval by the relevant Head(s) of
00.7 Withdrawal
00.711 Withdrawing refers to withdrawing from all courses for which a student is enrolled for a given semester, and therefore the student is no longer enrolled. The withdrawal application should be lodged through the relevant Head of Department and Dean’s office.
00.712 A student may officially withdraw from the university by voluntarily terminating enrolment during a semester which is in progress. Such a student shall not receive any credit for courses taken during the semester. If such a student subsequently enrols in the university the credits previously taken shall be treated in accordance with regulation 00.41 (b) on credit banking.
00.713 A student who withdraws prior to the end of the eighth week of a semester or who withdraws after the eighth week of a semester where there are documented acceptable extenuating circumstances, will receive a grade of "W" (withdrawn) otherwise a zero mark will be recorded for any graded component not taken.
00.714 If a student is obliged through illness or any other cause to be absent from classes for a continuous period exceeding three weeks, the Dean, in consultation with relevant Departments and in light of an appropriate medical report, shall decide whether such a student shall be withdrawn from the university for the duration of that semester.
00.715 A student who has withdrawn from the university may re-enter the programme subject to quota restrictions and compliance with existing programme requirements. The university does not guarantee to offer the same courses as at the time the student withdrew from the university.
00.8 Assessment
00.81 Continuous Assessment
00.811 The continuous assessment component of each course may include one or more of the following: written assignments, written tests, practicals, projects, research exercises, essays, open book tests, independent study, dissertations/theses, oral tests, plus other forms of continuous assessment as shall be determined by the instructor and approved by the Head of Department.
00.812 A student is required to fulfil all requirements prescribed for continuous assessment. Failure to do so without valid reasons will normally incur penalties as prescribed in special faculty and departmental regulations.
00.813 Progress Reports: Each faculty shall report continuous assessment marks for all undergraduate stu-dents by the end of the eighth week of classes. Progress reports are made available to students and to the students’ advisors through the computer system at UB.
00.82 Final Examinations
Where the assessment of a course includes final examinations, the following regulations shall apply:
00.821 All final examinations shall be held during the scheduled examination period at the end of the semester in which the course is taught.
00.822 A paper in a final written examination of a course shall be of one to three hours duration.
00.823 Other forms of examination of a course shall be as prescribed in special faculty and departmental regulations.
00.824 A student must take final examinations at the scheduled times. Failure to do so without valid reasons will amount to a candidate being awarded a zero mark in that particular examination.
00.825 Special final examinations will be considered on an individual basis for students who miss scheduled final examinations due to exceptional and extenuating circumstances.
00.826 Once a student has sat for an examination, the student may not afterwards apply for a special examination on the basis of unforeseen circumstances or illness.
00.827 In the week preceding the final examinations, all lectures and tutorials will continue, however, no assignment, test, examination, field trip, or any assessment work may be scheduled.
00.83 Quality Assurance
00.831 Senate shall determine the system of quality assurance of programmes of the university.
00.84 Overall Course Grade
(Applicable to undergraduates entering from August 2010 deferred from August 2009)
00.841 In any course, the weighting between different components of assessment shall be specified in the special faculty and departmental regulations.
00.842 Overall performance in a course shall be assessed on a percentage scale, a letter grade, and a grade point as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marks (%)</th>
<th>Letter Grade</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90 – 100</td>
<td>A+</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85 – 89.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 – 84.9</td>
<td>A-</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 – 79.9</td>
<td>B+</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 – 74.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 – 69.9</td>
<td>B-</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 – 64.9</td>
<td>C+</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 – 59.9</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 – 54.9</td>
<td>C-</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

00.844 An Incomplete grade (I) may be awarded when some assigned work comprising continuous assessment, for example a project, has not been completed with valid reasons. The I letter grade has no grade point. The I grade must be converted to an appropriate mark within the following twelve months; otherwise the incomplete work will be awarded a zero mark.
00.845 Passing a course means obtaining a mark of at least 50 percent.
00.85 Completion of Credits in a Programme
00.851 A student shall only be awarded a completion of credits in a Programme when:

a) A minimum of 60 credits in a Diploma programme with a duration of 4 semesters; or
b) A minimum of 90 credits in a Higher Diploma programme with a duration of 6 semesters; or

00.86 Calculating Cumulative GPA
00.861 Cumulative GPA associated with courses at UB at any time during the student’s programme is obtained as follows:

a) Identify the credits for the course;
b) Identify the marks (%), corresponding letter grade and the grade point using the table in regulation 0.842;
c) Obtain the weighted score by multiplying the credits and the grade point for each course;
d) Obtain the total weighted score by adding
the weighted scores for all the courses;

c) The cumulative GPA is given by the total weighted score divided by the total number of credits. The cumulative GPA shall be computed to two decimal places.

0.0862 Where there have been exemptions for credits as per regulation 0.04, grade points from other institutions are not transferable to UB, and the cumulative GPA shall be computed on the basis of the work done at UB only.

0.09 Progression from Semester to Semester

0.091 Proceed

0.0911 To remain in academic good standing, a student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 2.00.

0.0912 A student proceeding on academic good standing who fails a core, prerequisite or co-requisite course must retake the course. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding eighteen (18) credits.

0.0913 To proceed on academic warning (AW) or academic probation (AP) a student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 1.21. Such a student shall be subject to regulation 0.09.32 below.

0.09.2 Academic Warning and Academic Probation

0.0921 A student must pass at least half the attempted semester credits and attain a cumulative GPA of at least 1.21 for the status of academic warning or academic probation to apply.

0.0922 The status of academic warning shall apply to a student whose cumulative GPA is less than 2.00 but higher than the academic probation level as indicated in regulation 0.09.23 below.

0.0923 The status of academic probation shall apply to a student in accordance with cumulative GPA performance levels as indicated below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attempted Credits</th>
<th>Academic Warning</th>
<th>Academic Probation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 30</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.51</td>
<td>1.50 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 to 60</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.61</td>
<td>1.60 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 to 90</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.81</td>
<td>1.80 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 90</td>
<td>1.99 to 1.91</td>
<td>1.90 to 1.21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0.0924 A student on academic warning status must retake any failed core, prerequisite and co-requisite course(s) when next offered. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding sixteen (16) credits.

0.0925 A student on academic probation status must retake any failed core, prerequisite and co-requisite course(s) when next offered. Such a student shall carry a semester credit load not exceeding fourteen (14) credits.

0.093 Fail and Discontinue

0.0931 A student who fails more than half the attempted semester credits or attains a cumulative GPA of 1.20 or less shall be put on fail and discontinué (FD) status.

0.0932 A student with two (2) consecutive academic probations shall be put on a fail and discontinue status.

0.0933 A student with any combination of three (3) consecutive academic warnings and/or academic probations shall be put on a fail and discontinue status.

0.0934 A student who fails a course thrice shall be put on a fail and discontinue status, even if the cumulative GPA is above 2.00.

0.0935 A student on fail and discontinue status may apply for readmission to the programme after a lapse of at least one (1) semester. To return to the programme the student must apply and be accepted for re-entry/readmission.

0.0936 A student on a fail and discontinue status may apply to change to another programme for which the student qualifies and can enter in the subsequent semester(s).

0.09.4 Fail and Exclude

0.0941 A student who is placed on fail and discontinue status twice in one programme shall be placed on a fail and exclude (FE) status.

0.0942 A student who has been unsuccessful in two programmes shall be placed on fail and exclude status.

0.0943 A student placed on fail and exclude status may apply for readmission to the university after a lapse of at least two (2) academic years.

0.095 Retaking Courses

0.0951 A student shall not retake a course already passed with a minimum grade of fifty (50 C-).

0.0952 Subject to regulations on academic warning/probation, fail and discontinue, and fail and exclude, a student may retake a failed course up to two (2) times.

0.0953 A student who has failed a core, prerequisite, co-requisite course or a core general education course must retake the course.

0.0954 A student who has failed an optional, elective, a non-core general education course may retake the course or take a substitute course.

0.0955 When a student retakes a course, the series of retakes with their grades shall appear on the student’s official academic record and count in the cumulative GPA. However, in satisfying the minimum number of credits required for graduation the credits shall count only once where a passing grade is recorded.

0.096 Prerequisite Courses

0.0961 A student must achieve at least fifty (50 C-) in a prerequisite to enrol in the specific course(s) for which the course is a prerequisite.

0.097 Academic Standing

0.0971 At end of each semester, a student’s academic standing shall be reported using the following symbols:

- P: Proceed (Academic Good Standing)
- AP: Proceed (Academic Probation)
- AW: Proceed (Academic Warning)
- FD: Fail and Discontinue
- FE: Fail and Exclude
- W: Withdrawn with Permission

0.098 Minimum Cumulative GPA Required for Graduation

0.0981 A student shall attain a minimum cumulative GPA of 2.00 to be considered for graduation. If the cumulative GPA is below 2.00 after passing the course retakes, the student shall take additional courses to bring the cumulative GPA to at least 2.00.

0.1.0 Aegrotat Regulations

0.1.01 If a student in the final semester of a programme is prevented by illness, or other sufficient cause, from undertaking some of the requirements for assessment (continuous assessment or final examinations), Senate may, upon written report of the Department(s) concerned, and upon any other evidence as it shall deem fit, recommend to assign an aegrotat award.

The student’s illness or incapacity must be reported to the office of the Director of Academic Services within two weeks of the date on which the test(s) or examination(s) should have been written.

0.0.02 The aegrotat award shall be unclassified.

10. General Regulations for Undergraduate Diploma and Higher Diploma Programmes

10.1 Diploma Programmes

10.11 Diplomas

Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

10.12 Higher Diplomas

Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

10.2 Entrance Qualifications

10.21 The normal entry requirement for Diploma programmes is at least six subjects not below grade D in the BGCSE or equivalent. English language shall be one of the required subjects. Five subjects may be accepted. A grade of C shall be required in at least three of the five or six subjects.

10.22 Other entry qualifications for entry to Diploma programmes may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives. In particular, attention is drawn to the regulations governing mature age applicants in 0.0.52 and the regulation in respect to recognition of prior learning general academic regulation 0.0.41. Subject to regulation 10.21, any additional requirements shall be specified in appropriate special regulations.

10.24 The entry requirements specified in 10.21, 10.22 and 10.23 do not guarantee admission.

10.3 Programme Structure

10.31 Curriculum and Assessment

The curriculum and methods of assessment for the undergraduate Diploma programmes shall be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.
10.32 Duration of the Programme
10.32.1 Diploma and Higher Diploma Programmes
The normal duration for Diploma or Higher Diploma programmes shall be as follows: 4 to 6 semesters on a full-time basis; 8 to 12 semesters on a part-time basis.

10.4 Classification of Results
(Applicable to Undergraduates entering from August 2010 deferred from August 2009)
10.41 Subject to regulations 00.85 and 00.98, the overall result of the Diploma or Higher Diploma shall be classified based on the cumulative GPA (computed to two decimal places) that includes all attempted credits as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Cumulative GPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>2.00 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>4.00 – 4.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td>4.70 – 5.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. General Regulations for Bachelor's Degree Programmes

20.1 Degree Programmes
Programme titles appear in Faculty and Departmental sections below.

20.2.2 Entrance Qualifications
20.2.1 The normal entry requirement for Degree programmes shall be at least six subjects not below grade D in the BGCSE or its equivalent. The grades obtained in five of the subjects shall be grade C or better from one examination sitting. Grades obtained from two (not more) examination sittings are acceptable, provided the applicant has grade B or better in two subjects and grade C or better in four subjects.

English language must be grade C or better for non-Science based programmes and grade D or better in Science-based programmes.

20.2.2 Other entry qualifications may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives. In particular, attention is drawn to the regulations governing mature age applicants in 00.52 and the regulation in respect to recognition of prior learning general academic regulation 00.41.

20.2.3 Applicants possessing an acceptable Certificate qualification with grade C or better in at least 4 subjects and grade D in English language in the BGCSE or equivalent may be considered for entry to Level 100 of a related bachelors programme.

20.2.4 Where entry is on the basis of a Diploma qualification, the Diploma shall normally be two years or more and one acceptable to UB. Entry on the basis of a Diploma of less than two years in duration may be considered if the applicant has a previous related Certificate qualification.

20.2.5 Subject to regulation 20.21, any additional requirements shall be specified in appropriate special faculty and departmental regulations.


20.3 Programme Structure
20.3.1 Curriculum and Assessment
The curriculum and methods of assessment for Bachelor’s degree programmes shall be specified in special faculty and departmental regulations.

20.32 Duration of the Programme
20.3.2.1 The normal duration for Bachelor’s programmes shall be as follows: 8 to 10 semesters full-time or up to 16 to 20 semesters part-time respectively.

20.3.2.2 A student may register for a combined degree programme (major-major, major/ minor or multidisciplinary) or single major programme as shall be specified in special departmental and faculty regulations.

20.4 Degree Classification
(Applicable to Undergraduates entering from August 2010 deferred from August 2009)
20.41 Subject to regulations 00.85 and 00.98, the overall result of the Degree shall be classified based on the cumulative GPA (computed to two decimal places) that includes all attempted credits as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Cumulative GPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| General Education Courses
1. Overview
In line with the University of Botswana Vision and Mission statements, the new semesterisation system incorporates several features into the University academic programmes that will assist UB to become a leading academic centre of excellence in Africa and the world. One important feature of the new undergraduate academic programme structure is the introduction of the General Education Courses (GECs). The GECs provide more student determined choice and flexibility of programmes. They address such crosscutting issues as employers’ expectations, competence in communication skills, IT and information skills literacy, gender, HIV/AIDS, environment, energy and globalisation. The GECs fall under seven themes that have been approved by Senate after extensive consultations. These areas of study have generally received support from vital stakeholders such as the Ministry of Education and various major companies and organisations in the private sector. The concept of General Education Courses is not new. For many years now, UB has recognised the importance of courses such as Communication and Study Skills and Computer Skills for all students at the University. Thus the GECs are an extension of this concept.

2. Regulations
Regulations pertaining to the GECs are stated in Regulation 00.2124 of the General Academic Regulations, stated as follows:

a) Every undergraduate student shall take General Education Courses. These courses are taken for the purpose of broadening the knowledge of a student and count towards the overall credit requirement for the award, but are not part of the core courses of the programme. The purpose of these courses is to enhance university education so that it is broadly based, promotes critical thinking, intellectual growth, broader perspective in analysis of issues, and general skills for lifelong learning.

b) The total number of credits from elective/general education courses shall not exceed one third of the total credits gained in the entire programme.

c) General Education Courses can be selected from the following:

Area 1: Communication and Study Skills
Area 2: Computer and Information Skills
Area 3: Modes of Inquiry and Critical Thinking
Area 4: Physical Education, Health and Wellness
Area 5: Sciences and Technology
Area 6: World Civilisation
Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills.

Each of the areas shall have a set of courses at different levels, and students from any Faculty can enrol in such courses. In addition to courses in Area 3, all other courses must include critical inquiry and analytical skills.

d) All undergraduate students must during their first two semesters at UB register for at least four credits in 100 level courses in Areas 4, 5, 6 and 7 before completing their programme of study.

e) Students taking General Education Courses shall be subject to assessment procedures as specified in General, Special Faculty and Departmental Regulations, and the marks obtained shall count towards the semester’s assessment and the award of the qualification for which the student is registered.

3. Coding the GECs
In order to assist students and staff to identify GECs, these courses have been given two kinds of identification: Either:

a) With the code GEC followed by three digits, with the first digit indicating level (1 to 4). The second digit indicating area (1 to 4) and the third digit (0 to 9) indicates the Faculty (or Faculties) offering the GEC; or

b) A Departmental code as per General Regulation 00.25, and an indication of such A course has been declared as a GEC under one of Areas 1 to 7 as per Regulation 00.2124 (c).

Area 1: Communication and Study Skills
Courses in Communication and Study Skills are open to Certificate, Diploma and Degree students.
Area 2: Computer and Information Skills

The objectives of the GECs in Computer and Information Skills are to promote the utilization of computers and information technology in University studies and to provide vital life long skills. All Faculties are expected to offer courses in Computer and Information Skills, and coordination will be done by the Department of Computer Science. These courses are open to Certificate, Diploma and Degree students.

GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, Computer Science)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, Computer Science)
GEC221 Information Management Skills (2, Computer Science)
GEC222 Problem-Solving with Spreadsheet (2, Computer Science)
GEC223 Web Application Skills (2, Computer Science)
GEC322 Multimedia Information Presentation Skills (2, Computer Science)

Area 3: Modes of Inquiry and Critical Thinking

GEC232 Critical Thinking - A Life Tool (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC233 Logic I: Introduction to Logic (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC330 Introduction to Research Methods (3, All Faculties)
GEC333 Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC334 Epistemology: Theories of Truth (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC441 Introduction to Wetland Research

Area 4: Physical Education and Wellness

The purpose of the GECs in Physical Education, Health and Wellness is to encourage students to develop a physically active way of living and adopt positive attitudes to health so as to enrich the quality of life.

GEC141 Fitness Through Physical Education (2, Physical Education)
GEC145 Introduction to Swimming (2, Physical Education)
GEC148 Health and Wellness (2, Physical Education)
GEC247 HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control (3, Nursing Education)
GEC248 Human Nutrition (3, Biological Sciences)
GEC249 Human Sexuality (3, Biological Sciences)
GEC271 Basic Cost Accounting and Control (3, Accounting and Finance)
GEC272 Basic Finance and Taxation (3, Accounting and Finance)
GEC273 Small Business Entrepreneurship (3, Management)
GEC275 Basic Concepts in Marketing (3, Management)
GEC276 Contemporary Economic Issues (3, Economics)
GEC277 Law and Society in Botswana (3, Law)
GEC278 Population and Society (3, Population Studies)
GEC279 e-Governance (2, Political and Administrative Studies)
GEC283 The State and Society (2, Political and Administrative Studies)
GEC372 Migration and Globalisation (2, Population Studies)
GEC441 Special Education (2)

Area 6: World Civilisation (Humanities)

The GECs in World Civilisation, offered by the Faculty of Humanities, will help to promote an understanding of the diversity and complexity of different world cultures.

GEC261 The Languages of Botswana (2, African Languages and Literature)
GEC262 Introduction to Cultural Studies (2, African Languages and Literature)
GEC263 The Politics of Gender (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC264 Religion and Development (2, Theology and Religious Studies)
GEC268 Literature of Liberation (2, English)
GEC362 Africa and its Past on Film (2, History)

Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills

The GECs in World Economy and Business Skills will help to instil an appreciation of how economic and business activities shape human affairs, nationally, regionally and internationally. They will be offered by the Faculty of Social Sciences and the Faculty of Business.

GEC261 Accounting for Non-Business Majors (3, Accounting and Finance)
GEC262 Basic Finance and Taxation (3, Accounting and Finance)
state the intended time span of the fellowship, the amount of money they wish to donate to the University, and the value of each fellowship.

v) As a general principle, current members of staff may not have fellowships named after them.

vi) When the Fellowships Committee has satisfied itself as to the suitability of the proposed fellowship and its administration, it shall make a recommendation to the Senate.

vii) Before making a recommendation to the Senate, the Fellowships Committee may request the prospective donor to supply more detailed information on the financing, nature of conditions for the fellowship, and may advise the donor of the need to increase the donation value of the award.

viii) On the recommendation of the Fellowships Committee, the Senate shall review and set the minimum amount which a donor shall be required to pay to the University in order to establish a fellowship.

ix) A fellowship shall be established or terminated by the University Council on the recommendation of the Senate.

90.22 Procedures for the Award of a Fellowship

i) All proposals for the award of a fellowship to any student shall first be made to the Fellowship Selection Committee, which after careful deliberation shall recommend the name(s) of the recipient(s) to the Fellowships Committee.

ii) If the recommendation for an award of a fellowship is received and approved by the Fellowships Committee, the Vice Chancellor may approve the award on behalf of the Senate.

iii) No award of a fellowship may be approved before the donor has paid to the University the minimum amount required to establish a fellowship.

iv) All awards of fellowships shall be made subject to the Special Regulations for the individual fellowships.

90.23 Special Regulations for the University of Botswana Alumni Fellowship

The Alumni Fellowship was established in 1996/97 as a result of a donation by the Alumni of the University of Botswana Development Trust (ALUBDEVT) to promote Master's Degree studies and research on some aspect of Botswana culture in any field of study. The Alumni Fellowship will cover the following fees: tuition, book and caution fee, Identity Card and fieldwork for both part and full-time students. For full-time Students, residence, refectory and laundry fees will also be covered by the fellowship.

i) The Alumni Fellowship shall be tenable at the University of Botswana and may be awarded by the Senate to citizens of Botswana who qualify for Master's Degree studies in any field.

ii) The maximum period of the fellowship shall be two years for full-time study and three years for part-time study.

iii) The Senate shall satisfy itself that the focus of the intended Master's Degree studies by the proposed recipient is on some aspect of Botswana culture.

iv) The recipient of the Fellowship shall be required to maintain a satisfactory performance during the course of study.

v) The UB Alumni Fellowship Selection Committee shall include two representatives of the Alumni of the University of Botswana Development Trust (ALUBDEVT).

90.30 Scholarships

90.40 Studentship

90.50 Exhibitions

90.60 Prizes

90.61 Procedures for Instituting Prizes

i) All proposals for the institution of prizes shall be forwarded to the Director, Academic Services.

ii) Proposals shall include the suggested name of the prize, full reasons for making the proposals and choosing the particular name, and the conditions under which the prize may be awarded.

iii) If the proposed prize is to be named in honour of a particular person or group, the donor should not inform the person(s) he/she wishes to honour before the appropriate University authorities have considered the proposal.

iv) Prospective donors of prizes should state the intended time span of the prize, the amount of money they wish to donate, and the value of each award of the prize. They may also indicate the nature of the prize.

v) As a general principle, current members of staff may not have prizes named after them.

vi) When the Department or Faculty has satisfied itself as to the suitability of the prize, it shall make a recommendation to the Senate.

vii) Before making a recommendation to the Senate, the Department or Faculty may request the prospective donor to supply more detailed information on the financing, nature of conditions for the award of the prize, and may advise the donor of the need to increase the donation value of the award.

90.62 Procedures for the Award of Prizes

i) A prospective donor may suggest a person who qualifies to receive an award for consideration by the Department or Faculty.

ii) Any proposal for the institution of a prize may include the composition of the awarding committee.

iii) All proposals for the award of a prize to any student shall first be made to the awarding committee, which after careful deliberation shall recommend the name(s) of the recipient(s).

iv) Subject to the Special Regulations for individual prizes, the award may be in cash or in books to the value of the prize, and the award may be made jointly to two or more persons in any one year in which case its value shall be shared equally between them.

90.63 The following Special Regulations apply to individual prizes:

1. Roderick Ross Prize in Administration

This prize was established in 1982/83 as a result of an annual donation to the University by Roderick Ross, a former visiting Registrar (1978) to the then University College of Botswana, to mark its attainment of full University status and to encourage studies in Administration. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the student with the best marks in the final examinations in the subject Public Administration for the BA Degree. The Senate may in any year award the prize jointly or, exceptionally and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Social Sciences, make no award where an insufficiently high standard has been achieved. The prize shall be in books, chosen by the winner, to the value of 15 Pounds in Pula.

2. Isaac Schapera Prize

This prize was established in 1983/84 as a result of a donation to the University of the royalties accruing from the sale of the book "Land Reform In The Making", edited by R.P. Werbner. The prize, which is in honour of Professor Isaac Schapera's major contribution to the Social Sciences in Botswana, may be awarded, as income permits, by the Senate to a final year degree student with the best performance or project in one of the following fields of the Social Sciences; Sociology, Environmental Science, Law, Public Administration and Political Sciences. The Senate may award the prize jointly or, exceptionally and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Social Sciences, make no award where an insufficiently high standard has been achieved. The prize shall be in books worth P150 chosen by the successful candidate.

3. Vice Chancellor's Prize

This prize was established in 1989 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Honourable Mr D. N. Magang and his family. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding full-time first degree graduating student(s). This student(s) should have made a significant contribution to student life, should be of good conduct and should have consistently outstanding leadership qualities during his/her period as a student. The prize will be in the form of the following: a miniature trophy on which the name of the recipient will be appropriately engraved, a scroll duly signed by the Vice Chancellor and the donor during his life time, and a shield on which the name of the prize and the recipient's name will be inscribed. The shield will be placed at a conspicuous place on the University Campus. The Senate may award the prize jointly or, make no award at all, if there is no candidate qualified for the prize.

4. Michael Hamlyn Prize

This prize was established in 1987 by the staff members of the Faculty of Science in memory of Mr. Michael Hamlyn, a South African refugee student who was the only member of the University of Botswana killed by a South African Government commando
force that invaded Gaborone in the early hours of Friday 14th June 1985. He had just completed the Degree of Bachelor of Science, First Class when he was killed. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a student who studied and showed considerable ability in Mathematics and Physics in the second year of the BSc Degree programme and who demonstrated maturity in his/her relationship with other students and staff. The Awarding Committee, comprising the Dean of the Faculty of Science, the Head and an elected member of the Mathematics Department, and the Head and elected member of the Physics Department, will make a recommendation through the Science Faculty Board to the Deputy Vice Chancellor. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner.

5. Bank of Botswana Prize
This prize was established in 1989 and may be awarded annually by the Senate to a Motswana graduating student with the best marks in Accountancy and Business Administration and Economics. The recipient will be invited to attend the annual the Bankers Banquet.

6. PriceWaterhouseCoopers Prize
This prize was established in 1990 as a result of a generous donation to the University of Botswana by PriceWaterhouseCoopers. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to a second year Motswana Bachelor of Accounting student with the best overall performance in any particular year. The prize will be in the form of books worth P500 chosen by the winner and a floating trophy. The winner will also be attached to the Firm during the vacation periods and will receive an allowance. The Firm will also pay for the student’s registration with the Chartered Association of Certified Accountants in the U.K. or other approved body.

7. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Education
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Education in 1993. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Education who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

8. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Science
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Science in 1993. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Science who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

9. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Humanities
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Humanities in 1992. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Humanities, who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

10. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Social Sciences
This prize was established in 1984 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Social Sciences in 1992. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Social Sciences who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 chosen by the winner and a shield. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

11. Dean’s Prize: Faculty of Business
This prize was established in 2001 and was funded by members of the academic staff of the Faculty of Business in 2000. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year student adjudged academically the most outstanding in the Faculty of Business who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of cash to the value of P400, a shield and a Certificate of Outstanding Performance signed by the Dean of the Faculty. The name of the recipient will be inscribed on the shield to be placed in the Dean’s office.

12. Deloitte and Touche Prize
This prize was established in 1994 through a donation from the Deloitte and Touche Accounting Firm. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a graduating student with the highest overall average is disqualified from winning this prize because of disciplinary action, the prize will be awarded to the next best graduating student with the best marks. The prize will be in the form of books worth P1,000 and a floating imbua plaque on which the name of the recipient(s) shall be inscribed.

13. De Beers Private Sector Trust Prize
This prize was established in 1996 through a generous donation from the De Beers Botswana (Pty) Ltd. to the University of Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best graduating degree MBA student(s) who have obtained the highest overall minimum average of 70 percent. The recipient should have had a clean academic record and also should not have repeated a course or have been the subject of disciplinary action while a student. In the event that a graduating student with the highest overall average is disqualified from winning this prize because of disciplinary action, the prize will be awarded to the next best graduating student with the best marks. The prize will be in the form of books worth P1,000 and a floating imbua plaque on which the name of the recipient(s) shall be inscribed.

14. British High Commissioner’s Prize
This prize was established in 1990 through a donation from the then British High Commissioner Mr. Brian Smith. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to a final year degree student(s) adjudged academically the most outstanding in either the Faculty of Education (Department of Mathematics and Science) or the Faculty of Science. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be a floating trophy.

15. The Builders World Prize
This prize was established in 1995 with seed money donated by Builders World Botswana (Pty) Ltd. The prize may be awarded annually to the most outstanding final year BSc Degree female student in the Faculty of Science with a degree classification of at least 2(i). The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 and a floating shield engraved with the donor’s and winner(s)’ names.

16. The John Cooke Prize for Environmental Conservation
This prize was established in 1993 in honour of Professor John H. Cooke (Founding Head of the Department of Environmental Science). It was established with money collected by the Department. The prize may be awarded annually to the best graduating student in Environmental Science with a degree classification of at least 2(i) and a record of active interest in environmental issues. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200 selected by the winner.

17. Botswana Institute of Accountants Prize (BIA)
This prize was established in 1994 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Institute of Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the most outstanding graduating Bachelor of Accountancy Motswana student(s) who must have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The prize will be in the form of books worth P300, a shield for the winner with his/her name inscribed on it and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient(s) shall be inscribed.

18. CISNA ‘93 Information Technology Prize; Computer Science
This prize was established in 1996 through a donation from the CISNA ‘93 Conference Organising Committee. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year degree student in the Department of Computer Science with at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of books worth P200.
form of P500 cash and a floating shield on which the name of the recipient and prize will be inscribed.

23. Botswana Institute of Engineers Prize
This prize was established in 1996 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Institute of Engineers. The prize may be awarded annually by the University Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Department of Engineering and Technology with at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of P1000 cash.

24. Dean's Prize: Faculty of Engineering and Technology
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Defence Force. The prize may be awarded by the Senate to the best final year degree student(s) in the Physical Education programme. The student(s) should be outstanding student(s) in the final year of the Bachelor of Science in Physical Education programme and should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a trophy, a cash award of P1700 and a text book worth P300.

25. The Indian High Commissioner's Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a generous donation from the High Commission of India to the University of Botswana. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding Bachelor of Arts degree student(s) who should have obtained at least 4.0 CGPA. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a trophy and a cash award of P1500.

26. The BDF Prize for Physical Education
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Defence Force. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding student(s) in Physical Education programme. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a trophy and a cash award of P1500.

27. Setswana Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the National Setswana Language Council. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the student(s) with the best performance in African Languages and Literature in a single or combined major. The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a symbolic cultural artefact, depicting Setswana culture, given to the recipient. It will bear on it the name of prize, prize winner, donor and year of award. The Senate may award the prize jointly by using the interest money to purchase two or several cultural artefacts.

28. The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Prize in Management (ACCA)
This prize was established in 1996/97 through a donation to the University of Botswana by the Botswana Branch of the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the most outstanding Bachelor of Business Administration Management final year student(s) with at least 4.0 CGPA. The recipient should not have repeated a course or year of the programme and should be of acceptable conduct. The prize shall be in the form of a scroll on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed and a plaque retained by the University on which the name of the recipient, donor and prize shall be inscribed.

29. The Ernst and Young Prize
This prize was established in 1998/99 through a generous donation to the University of Botswana by the Ernst and Young firm of Certified Public Accountants. The prize may be awarded annually by the Senate to the overall top three Bachelor of Accountancy programme first year students and the best second year student(s), third year student(s). The student(s) should be of acceptable conduct. The prize will be in the form of a cash award of P500 and P300 per student for first year and third year students respectively.

30. Media Communications (Pty) Ltd Prize
A prize awarded to the student(s) with the best performance (not below 70%) in each of the courses: integrated marketing communications, international marketing, marketing ethics, product and brand marketing, retail management, services marketing, contemporary issues in social marketing, strategic marketing.
4.12 A student shall be guilty of misconduct of the University which credits the good name or is prejudicial to the peace, good order and good government of the University; ii) Fails to comply with any Statute of the University; iii) Willfully destroys, damages, defaces, alienates or appropriates to himself/herself any property of the University; iv) Infringes the regulations of the University for the control of Library materials; v) Examinations, class tests and assignments or any other approved regulations; vi) Fails to comply with such instruction relating to his/her conduct as a student as he/she may receive from any member of the University staff in the exercise of his/her duties; vii) Infringes the traffic rules of the University; viii) Is convicted in any court of law of an offence which in the opinion of the Vice Chancellor is serious enough to warrant disciplinary action.

4.2 Disciplinary Procedures

4.21 Any charge of misconduct shall in the first instance be laid before the Vice Chancellor.

4.22 i) The Vice Chancellor may decide the case after taking such advice or seeking such evidence as he/she considers desirable or may refer the case for investigation to a sole investigator or may appoint a Disciplinary Committee with such membership as he/she deems appropriate.

ii) The Vice Chancellor may forbid such student to attend lectures and/or participate in any student activities whilst the charge against him/her is being investigated.

4.23 Where the Vice Chancellor refers the case to a sole investigator or appoints a Disciplinary Committee and refers the case to the same Committee, the following procedures shall be followed:

i) The student shall be given at least two clear days' notice in writing of the time and place of the hearing and of the nature and substance of the charge against him/her.

ii) The Vice Chancellor may designate a member of staff to be present at the hearing to present the case against the student. The sole investigator or the Disciplinary Committee may call witnesses and interrogate them concerning the matters at issue.

iii) The hearing before the sole investigator or the Disciplinary Committee shall be conducted in private.

iv) The Secretary of the Disciplinary Committee shall be appointed by the Vice Chancellor, or the sole investigator, as the case may be, shall ensure that an accurate record is kept of all the proceedings and of the evidence pertaining to the case. The Director, Legal Services Office shall have custody of records.

v) The sole investigator or the Committee, as the case may be, shall prepare a written statement of the decision together with a brief summary of the reasons thereof.

vi) When a student is rusticated for a period longer than a semester, or is dismissed from the University, an appeal may be made to the Council and the student shall be informed of his/her right to appeal.

vii) On receipt of a memorandum of appeal, the Vice Chancellor shall bring before the Council, which shall meet in special session if the Chairperson deems it necessary, without delay, a statement of the reasons for the decision, together with a summary of the evidence on which that decision is based, and the student's written memorandum of appeal. The case shall then be decided by the Council on the basis of the material thus presented.

viii) Such appeals may be considered by the whole Council or a Committee of not less than three members appointed by the Chairperson for the purpose. Council or its Committee may make its decision on the basis of the minutes or records of any previous hearing and students shall be given seven clear days' notice of the day and time when the appeal will be heard and, in any case in which oral representations of any kind are heard, shall be given the opportunity to hear and cross examine any person making such representations.

x) The decision of Council shall be final.

4.3 Criminal Proceedings

4.31 A finding of guilt or an acquittal in a criminal court shall not preclude proceedings against a student in respect of the same incident, but any sentence or order pronounced shall be taken into account in the imposition of any penalty. Further, the finding of a criminal court in respect of any incident which is the subject of proceedings against a student, may be used in evidence in those proceedings.

Examinations Regulations

4.41 Information and Guidance for Candidates

All candidates will be assumed to have read the following rules and regulations.

4.42 Examination Venues

Examinations are normally held in the University and its Centres. The venue of each examination will be specified in the examination timetable. Candidates are responsible for knowing in advance the rooms in which they write examinations.

4.43 Examination Numbers

You must write your Student Identity number and full names on the cover of your answer book and any other materials used. Make sure that you write your ID Number and full names on the examination materials clearly and correctly. Candidates must produce a valid Student ID card at each of their examinations and display it on the examination desk/table for checking by the invigilator.

4.44 Time of Arrival

Examinations commence at times stated in the examination timetable. Candidates must confirm the times of each of their examinations. Candidates will be admitted into the examination room approximately 20 minutes before the start of each examination session. Candidates will be given 10 minutes...
reading time prior to the advertised time of exam commencement. Candidates must not make notes or commence writing during this period.

4.45 Absence from an Examination
i) If a candidate fails to take an examination for no good reason, special papers will not be set and the candidate will be deemed to have failed the particular examination. Losing, misreading or failure to consult the examination timetable are not acceptable reasons for absence or late arrival at an examination.

ii) In the case of absence from an examination through ill health, the candidate (or someone acting on his/her behalf) must submit a relevant medical certificate which must relate to the day or period of the examination. Evidence of illness will not normally be taken into account unless substantiated by a medical certificate. Such evidence must be received within 14 days after the day of examination in order for it to receive full consideration.

iii) It is the responsibility of the candidate to arrange with his/her doctor for any medical evidence to be sent to the relevant Head of Department.

iv) In the case of absence from an examination due to serious causes (other than ill health of the candidate), the candidate (or someone acting on his/her behalf) must submit to the relevant Head of Department: (a) evidence of the cause, where possible and, (b) a written explanation of the absence.

4.46 Entry into the Examination Room
Candidates will be told when they can enter the examination room and silence must be observed on entry and whilst in the examination room.

4.461 Seating Arrangements in the Examination Room
Invigilators and exam assistants will guide candidates to their seat.

4.462 Special Arrangements
Candidates who have a disability or suffer from any illness or condition that will require special examination arrangements should inform the Faculty office well in advance. Where feasible, special examination arrangements will be made.

4.463 Procedures During the Examination
Candidates must immediately on taking their examination seats fill in the attendance slip provided. Answer books and other requisite stationery will be provided. Candidates should carefully read the instructions on the front cover of the answer books and then enter their candidate’s ID number and other details required. No part of the book may be torn off and all books used must be left on the desks. Rough work must be done in the answer book and should be crossed out to show that it is not part of the answer.

4.464 Starting the Examination
You will be told by the supervisor when you can start the examination and you should not look at the examination question paper before you are told to do so.

4.465 Late Arrival
Candidates who are more than one hour late will not be admitted into the examination room. Candidates who arrive late will not be allowed extra time to complete the examination.

4.466 Examination Reading Time
On being told to start reading, candidates will check that the question paper is the correct one, all questions are legible and all pages are attached. Discrepancies must be reported to the invigilator for attention.

4.467 Temporary Withdrawal
A candidate leaving the examination room temporarily for personal reasons will be accompanied by an invigilator or other authorised person. (NB: Smoking is not considered a suitable reason for leaving the examination room.) The candidate will not take the question paper, answer book(s) and other materials and must not consult or attempt to consult any materials or persons outside the room that may assist him/her in writing the examination.

4.468 Leaving the Examination Room
Candidates may not leave the examination room during the first hour of the examination session unless they feel unwell. Candidates must also not leave during the last ten minutes of the examination and must remain seated until all the examination scripts have been collected and checked by the invigilators. If a candidate has completed his/her paper before the specified time and wishes to leave, he/she must do so as quietly as possible, so as not to disturb the other candidates. Such a candidate will not be allowed to re-enter the examination room. Permission to leave at any time must be requested from the supervisor.

4.469 Illness During Examination
Candidates who fall ill during the examination should inform the supervisor or invigilator who shall act or advise as appropriate.

4.470 Misconduct
The following will be construed as misconduct in an examination:

a) Taking into the examination room, or possessing or using whilst in that room any unauthorised materials or items. Misconduct is presumed from the fact of possession unless an innocent explanation is obvious or is established by the candidate.

b) Aiding or attempting to aid, obtaining or attempting to obtain aid from another candidate. Misconduct is presumed from the fact of communication unless an innocent explanation is obvious or is established by the candidate.

c) Consulting or trying to consult during the examination any books, notes or other unauthorised materials, or another candidate while temporarily outside the examination room.

d) Impersonating another candidate or allowing oneself to be impersonated.

e) Attempting to influence the examiners or other University officials.

f) Failing to obey or comply with any of the examination regulations, or instructions of the supervisor/invigilator acting within the scope of his/her authority. Such repeated behaviour as may in the view of the supervisor prejudice the performance of other candidates. It should be noted that the supervisor is empowered to discontinue the examination of a candidate suspected of misconduct and to expel him/her from the examination room.

4.471 End of the Examination
Candidates will be told to stop writing at the end of the examination by the supervisor. Candidates in the room should then remain seated until they have filled all the details required on the answer book and the scripts have been collected. It is the responsibility of the candidate to ensure that all the additional loose sheets, charts or papers and supplementary answer books are enclosed in the first answer book. Candidates may not take any examination materials, used or unused, out of the examination room other than:

a) The material they brought into the examination room;

b) The question paper (where permissible).

4.472 Penalties for Infringement of Examination Regulations
All candidates will be assumed to have read the above Regulations. The following steps will be taken to impose penalties on any candidate who infringes upon examination regulations:

i) Any candidate who is considered by the invigilator to be committing an infringement of the rules will be warned that his/her conduct will be considered improper examination performance:

ii) When it is determined that the student has committed misconduct calculated to affect improper examination performance:

a) He/she may be refused credit for any courses or examinations completed or attempted;

b) The results may be withheld;

c) He/she may be suspended from writing the examinations;

d) He/she may be dismissed from the University for repeated misconduct;

iv) A candidate who wishes to appeal shall follow the procedure set out in the Disciplinary Regulations.
Academic Appeals and Procedures

A. Continuous Assessment
Appeals student may request a review of continuous assessment mark(s) and decisions during the course of the year.

Steps in the Process of an Assessment Appeal
1. Course Instructor
First discuss concern with the course instructor promptly upon receipt of the assessment mark or decision in an attempt to resolve any differences. The student has the right to take the matter directly to the Head of Department if need be.

2. Department/Programme
If the complaint has not been satisfactorily resolved at Step 1, the student may approach the Head of Department (or Dean if the Head of Department is the instructor, or DVC/AAD if the Faculty/Department is the instructor) for review, mediation or resolution. The student should attach to the written complaint all relevant evidence as is available to substantiate the complaint. The Head of Department shall investigate and may endeavour to resolve the matter, or may seek further advice/recommendation from the Departmental Board or other persons as he/she thinks fit. The Head of Department may direct that corrective action be taken when justified.

3. Faculty/Department
If the complaint is not resolved at Step 2, either the Head of Department or the student will refer the written complaint to the Dean of the Faculty/Department for investigation, review and resolution. The Dean will review the appeal, discuss with the student, the Head of Department, and any other persons concerned, and may refer it to the Faculty/Department Executive for further advice/recommendation. The Dean may direct that corrective action be taken when justified. He/She will report his/her decision to the student and the instructor.

4. Academic Appeals Committee
Should the complaint not be satisfactorily resolved at Step 3, either the student or Dean may refer the written appeal to the Senate Academic Appeals Committee for review and resolution. The Committee will review the appeal and the appeal decisions made at earlier steps of the appeals process. The Committee shall determine its own procedure. The student(s) and the instructor concerned may attend the hearings to hear and answer the appeal and decide whether the appeal is valid.

5. The Committee may refuse to proceed with an appeal or complaint if it concludes that the appeal or complaint is vexatious or malicious. 6. Appeals which challenge the professional academic judgment of individual examiners or Boards of Examiners on the examination performance of students will not be permitted.

7. The Committee may refuse to proceed if the examination performance of students will not permit. Victimisation or harassment of students who lodge complaints is prohibited. Procedures relating to Sexual Harassment are dealt with separately below.

8. No fee shall be paid.

B. Examination Appeals
Students may request a review of their examination marks, results and academic decisions. However, examination appeals against externally moderated examination marks will not normally be considered unless evidence exists that errors/omissions/irregularities had occurred or new evidence exists which necessitates a review of the mark, result or decision.

Appeals are heard on the following grounds:
1. New evidence: i.e. evidence of circumstances affecting the student's examination performance that, through no fault of the student, could not reasonably have been presented at an earlier date.
2. Procedural or other irregularities in the conduct of the examination.
3. Procedural irregularities in the marking of the examination, e.g. evidence that the scripts have been insufficiently or incorrectly marked.
4. Evidence of prejudice or bias on the part of one or more examiners.
5. Inappropriate advice from members of administrative or academic staff on matters affecting the student's examination candidature or performance.
6. Failure of the University to implement its agreed procedures and regulations.

Grades for appeal must be specific. Reasons such as 'I deserved a better grade', or 'I thought I did better' are unclear and unhelpful. Appeals which challenge the professional academic judgment of examiners on the student's examination performance will not be considered. Appeals or representations are allowed as a way of ensuring that as far as possible all relevant circumstances surrounding examination performance are brought to light and taken into account in formulating results and decisions. Appeals should be lodged with the relevant Head of Department. Examination appeals must state clearly the grounds for appeal and should include all relevant information. The burden of proof is on the student, and the written appeal should state and support with available evidence the grounds for appeal. The Examinations Appeals Committee will consider the details of the appeal and decide whether the appeal is valid, and if so, what relief should be provided. The Committee does not usually hold hearings. The examination script may be re-marked only if the Committee so directs; there is no automatic re-marking/grading of scripts. However, for all appeals and queries received from students, the marks and/or results will be checked for errors, omissions and conformity with regulations, and a correction made where necessary. The Committee's decision is final and takes effect when issued. Examination scripts and the marks awarded for individual examination questions/answers are not shown to students.

Procedure for Handling Queries and Appeals on Final Course Grades and Marks
1. Students shall submit queries and appeals within one month from the official date of the publication of Cumulative GPAs and academic results. Queries and appeals received after the deadline date will not be processed except where the delay was caused by factors reasonably beyond the student's control.

2. If a student feels that a final course grade/mark is inaccurate, the student may lodge a query with the Dean of the Academic Department/Unit concerned. The Examiner(s) will check the continuous assessment and examination marks for errors and omissions, and if an error is detected, submit to the Head of Department a change of course grade or mark in the approved Course Grade/Mark Change Form.

3. If the student feels that a final course grade/mark was unfairly assigned, the student may submit a written appeal of the grade/mark to the Head of the Department (HoD) concerned. The HoD shall process the appeal within one week of receipt of the written appeal.

4. If the complaint is not resolved, the HoD shall forward the student's appeal to the Deputy Dean. The Deputy Dean shall process the appeal within one week of receipt of the written appeal.

5. If the complaint is not resolved, the Deputy Dean shall forward the student's appeal to the Secretary of the Senate Academic Appeals Committee. The Committee shall process the appeal within two weeks of receipt of the written appeal and its decision is final.

6. The HoD or Deputy Dean or Appeals Committee may refuse or accept the appeal. If the appeal is accepted, the appellant's examination script shall be re-marked. The original marker or a second marker shall be asked to review the examination script along with a representative sample of all the examination scripts in the course. The appellant's script shall be identifiable. If the review leads to a lower grade/mark the original grade/mark shall not be lowered.
C. Complaints Relating to Individual Course Instructors

A student who has a grievance relating to a course instructor (e.g. unsatisfactory teaching, unsatisfactory relationship with the course instructor) may follow these steps:

1. Raise concern with the course instructor as soon as the problem or difficulty arises. Most grievances can be resolved amicably and quickly in this manner. The student may take the matter directly to the Head of Department if need be.

2. Concerns related to an instructor or that cannot be resolved at Step 1 should be discussed with the Head of Department (or Faculty Dean, if the Department Head is the instructor, or DVC/AA if the Dean is instructor).

3. If the complaint is not resolved at Step 2 above, the student may follow the Steps as in 1.3 through 1.5 under Section 1 above. The complaint review process is accomplished in a collegial nonjudicial atmosphere rather than an adversarial one and allows the parties involved to participate as appropriate. Complaints must be raised and resolved promptly and as soon as they arise during the course of the year. The student and instructor may enlist the aid of a neutral third party (e.g. counsellor, academic advisor) to assist.

For further details of the appeals procedure, please contact the:

Department of Academic Services,
Tel: (+267) 355 2018/2016
Fax: (+267) 3585 103.
University of Botswana
NO
Faculty of BUSINESS

DEAN
C. R. Sathyamoorthi, BCom (Kerala), MCom (Calicut)

DEPUTY DEAN
Dr N. Moeti, BCom(UB), DBA,MBA, PhD (Birmingham)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
Mr J.J. Tsimako, BA, PGDE MLMED (New Castle)
B. Ndaba, BCom, MBA (UB), MA Development Studies (UB)

COORDINATOR, SMALL BUSINESS CLINIC
E. D. M. Odirile, BA Economics & Statistics (UBS), PG Dip Economics & Statistics, MA Economics (East Anglia, UK), MBA (UB)

ASSISTANT SUPPORT MANAGER
Tefo Kebitseng, BSc Comp. Sc.

IT TECHNICIAN
L. Dube, Diploma in Computer Studies (UB), Honours Degree in Systems Engineering (BAC, Sunderland)
The Faculty of Business comprises the following Departments:

**ACCOUNTING & FINANCE MANAGEMENT, MARKETING TOURISM & HOSPITALITY**

Programmes are categorized as follows:

**Part-time**
- Diploma in Accounting & Business Studies

**Full-time and Distance mode**
- Bachelor of Accountancy
- Bachelor of Finance
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Management)
- Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing)
- Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems)
- Combined Major in Accounting as part of BA combined Degree
- Bachelor of Tourism & Hospitality Management

**Full-time and Part-time**
- Master of Business Administration

**Special Regulations for the Faculty of Business**
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 00.0 to 20.4, the following special regulations shall apply.

**Entrance Requirement**

*a) Admission shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulations 20.2, 20.21 and 20.22 with the specific requirement of a grade C (60 percent) in English and Mathematics. Subject to the General Regulation 00.52 in respect of the Mature Age Entry Scheme, applicants to the Bachelor of Accountancy, Bachelor of Finance, Bachelor of Information Systems (Business Information Systems), Bachelor of Business Administration (Management) and Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing), Tourism & Hospitality Management shall undergo an aptitude test."

*b) Students with a Diploma in Accounting and Business Studies (DABS) or equivalent with a cumulative GPA of 2.00 or above can be admitted in the first semester of the Degree programme. Subject to the Departmental Regulations, a student with DABS or equivalent can be admitted in the third semester of the Degree programme of the Faculty, provided he/she has secured a cumulative GPA of 2.8 or above in the DABS or equivalent examination.

**Assessment**
Subject to General Academic Regulation 00.8 to 00.9. The Faculty of Business shall normally be 2:3.

**Programme Structure**
The programme will extend over a period of six semesters. Students will take four courses in each semester. Except the General Education Courses, all courses of this programme are core courses which must be taken and passed for the award of the certificate. Each core course consists of 3 credits and each General Education Course consists of 2 credits. The total number of credits for the entire programme is 68.

**Assessment**
1. Two pieces of continuous assessment tests for each semester course.
2. The continuous assessment to final examination is in the 2:3 ratio.
3. There will be a two-hour end-of-semester examination for each course.

**Progression from one Level to the next**
1. The General Academic Regulations 00.9 will apply in this case.

**Award of the Certificate**
1. A student must pass all the courses in three levels with a minimum GPA of 2.0
2. The Classification of results will be in accordance with general regulation 10.4

**Bachelor of Accountancy Degree Programme**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>Semester 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAB111</td>
<td>Business Mathematics and Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB112</td>
<td>Basic Accounting (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111</td>
<td>Communication and Study Skills (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC121</td>
<td>Computing and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Semester 2 |
| DAB113    | Principles of Management (3) |
| DAB114    | Introduction to Marketing (3) |
| GEC112    | Communication and Study Skills II (2) |
| GEC122    | Computing and Information Skills II (2) |

**Total Credits Semesters 1 & 2=20**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 200</th>
<th>Semester 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAB211</td>
<td>Intermediate Accounting (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB212</td>
<td>Microeconomics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB213</td>
<td>General Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB214</td>
<td>Business Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total Credits Semesters 3 & 4 = 24**

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**
- DAB311 Quantitative Methods for Business (3)
- DAB312 Financial Management (3)
- DAB313 Cost Accounting (3)
- DAB314 Management Information Systems

**Semester 6**

A – Accounting Stream
- DAB315 Financial Accounting (3)
- DAB316 Management Accounting (3)
- DAB317 Auditing (3)
- DAB318 Financial Institutions & Markets (3)

B – Marketing Stream
- DAB319 Human Resource Management (3)
- DAB320 Organisational Design and Development (3)
- DAB321 Small Business Management (3)
- DAB322 Fundamentals of Materials Management (3)

C – Marketing Stream
- DAB323 Sales Management (3)
- DAB324 Consumer Behaviour (3)
- DAB325 Marketing Management (3)
- DAB326 Purchasing Management (3)

**Total Credits Semesters 5 & 6=24**

**NOTE:** 1. The students will choose one of the above streams A or B or C in the 6th Semester at DABS Level 300

**DEPARTMENT OF ACCOUNTING & FINANCE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>Semester 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEC111</td>
<td>Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC121</td>
<td>Computing and Information Skills I (2, GEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO111</td>
<td>Basic Microeconomics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT100</td>
<td>Principles of Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY101</td>
<td>Introduction to Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA101</td>
<td>Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA116</td>
<td>Introduction to Statistics (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 2**

**Core Courses**
- GEC112 Communication and
Study Skills II (2, GEC)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC100)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-reg., STA114, STA116)
GEC Area 3

Core Courses

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3, pre-reg., ACC200)
ACC301 Introduction to Management Accounting (3, pre-reg., ACC203)
ACC302 Auditing I (3, pre-reg., ACC200)
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3) GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Semester 6
Core Courses
ACC303 Management Accounting Applications (3, pre-reg., ACC301)
ACC304 Auditing II (3, pre-reg., ACC302)
BIS309 Accounting Information Systems (3, pre-reg., BIS205, ACC200)
FIN300 Financial Management (3, pre-reg., FIN200)
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, MGT 203) GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7 or Elective

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC400 Financial Accounting III (3, pre-reg., ACC300)
ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3, pre-reg., ACC300)
ACC443’ Industrial Attachment (3)
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-reg. MGT 301) Option GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Semester 8
Core Courses
ACC403 Financial Accounting IV (3, pre-reg. ACC400)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC401)
ACC405 Accounting Theory (3, pre-reg. ACC400)
ACC444 Research Project (4, pre-reg. MGT 302) Elective or Option GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
ACC406 Public Sector Accounting (3)
BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
BIS417 Information Systems Auditing (3)
FIN301 Financial Institutions and Markets I (3, pre-reg. FIN200)

Optional Courses
Students to choose one of the following:
ACC 204 Government Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)
ACC 205 Special Topics in Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ACC311 Introduction to Company Accounts (3, pre-reg. ACC206)
ACC309 Principles of Auditing (3, pre-reg. ACC206)
FIN 300 Financial Management (3, pre-reg. FIN200)
LAW251 Introduction to Company Law (4)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)

Core Courses

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC411 Financial Reporting (3, pre-reg. ACC 311)
ACC404 Taxation Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC 305)
ACC443 Industrial Attachment (3)
MGT400 Strategic Management (3) Elective (3)

Core Courses

Level 400
Semester 8
Core Courses
ACC408 Management Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC 308)
ACC409 Current issues in Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC311)
ACC412 Accounting For Groups (3, pre-reg. ACC411)
Bachelor of Finance Degree Programme

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
- STA101 Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
- STA116 Fundamentals II (2, GEC)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
- GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
- ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
- STA102 Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
- STA114 Fundamentals III (2, GEC)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
- ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC100)
- ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
- FIN200 Business Finance (3)
- LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
- MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-reg. STA114, STA116)
- GEC Area 3

Semester 4
Core Courses
- ACC200 Financial Accounting I (3, pre-reg. ACC100)
- ACC201 Cost Accounting Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC201)
- BIS205 Information Technology (3, pre-reg. GEC122)
- ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3, pre-reg. ECO112)
- MGT200 Organisational Design and Development (3)
- GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
- ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3, pre-reg. ACC200)

Optional Courses
- BIS301 Decision Support Systems I (3)
- FIN301 Principles of Risk Management and Insurance (Pre-reg. FIN200)
- FIN302 Principles of Real Estate Finance (3, pre-reg. FIN200)
- ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3, pre-reg. ACC300)
- ACC404 Taxation Applications (3, pre-reg. ACC401)
- FIN407 International Trade Finance (3, pre-reg. FIN300)

Bachelor of Business Information Systems Degree Programme

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
- GEC121 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
- PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
- STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
- STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- GEC122 Computing and Information Skills, Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
- GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
- ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3, pre-reg. ACC100)
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
- STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
- STA114 Business Statistics I (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
- BIS200 Systems Development I (3, pre-reg. GEC122)
- BIS201 Foundations of Business Information Systems (3, pre-reg. GEC122)
- CSI241 Structured Programming (4, pre-reg. GEC122)
- FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-reg. ACC 100)
- LAW 251 Foundations of Business Law (3)
- MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3, pre-reg. STA114, STA116)
- Option GEC Area 3

Semester 4
Core Courses
- BIS204 Data Organisation Methods (3, pre-reg. BIS201)
- CSI252 Operating Systems Concepts (3)
- CSI272 Computer Communications Networking Fundamentals (2)
- MGT200 Organisational Design & Develop. (3)
- Option GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
- BIS301 Business Process Re-engineering (3)
- BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
- BIS303 Electronic Commerce 1 (3)
Bachelor of Arts Degree (Double Major)
(Courses offered through the Department)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Course
ACC100 Intro to Accounting (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
ACC201 Intro to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC 100)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req. ACC 100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ACC300 Financial Accounting II (3, pre-req. ACC 200)
ACC301 Introduction to Management Accounting (3)
ACC302 Auditing I (3, pre-req. ACC 200)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
ACC400 Financial Accounting III (3, pre-req. ACC 300)
ACC401 Introduction to Taxation (3, pre-req. ACC 300)

Level 500
Semester 9
Core Courses
ACC500 Advanced Accounting (3, pre-req. ACC 400)
ACC501 Advanced Taxation Applications (3, pre-req. ACC 401)

General Education Courses (Area 7)
GEC110 Accounting for Non-Business Majors (2)
GEC271 Basic Cost Accounting and Control (2)
Faculty of Business

Stream A: General Management

Levels 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4)
MGT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req. MGT 200)
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT 200)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (6)

Semester 6
Core Courses
BIS304 Management Information Systems (3)
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, pre-req. MGT203)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3, pre-req. MGT 202)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Levels 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT301)
MGT412 Foundations of Leadership and Teamwork (3, pre-req. MGT300)
MGT443 Industrial Attachment (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
MGT410 Negotiations and Conflict Management (3, pre-req. MGT301)
BIS 420 Strategic Information Systems (3, pre-req. BIS 307)
MGT444 Research Project (4, MGT 302)
MGT413 Practicum in Human Resources Management
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Optional Courses
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3, pre-req. MGT 202)
MGT306 Public Sector Management (3, pre-req. MGT200)
MGT402 Operations Management (3)

Stream C: Project and Logistics Management

Levels 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3, pre-req. MGT200)
MGT311 Principles and Concepts of Project Management (3, pre-req. MGT200, MGT203)
MGT 310 Purchasing and Supply Chain Management
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation
MGT302 Business Research Methods (3, pre-req. MGT203)
BIS 304 Management Information Systems (3)
MGT312 Management of Logistics Systems (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Levels 400
Semester 7
MGT400 Strategic Management (3, pre-req. MGT301)
MGT409 Project Implementation, Monitoring Evaluation, and Analysis (3)
BIS 410 Manufacturing Information Systems (3)
MGT443 Industrial Attachment (3)
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
MGT411 Practicum in Project Management (3, pre-req. MGT409)
MGT420 Strategic Information Systems (3)
MGT444 Research Project (4, MGT 302)
MGT408 Project Financing
GEC Areas 3/4/5/6/7
Option (3)
Elective (3)

Optional Courses
MGT306 Public Sector Management (3, pre-req. MGT200)

2.0 General Education Course (GEC)
The Department offers the following General Education Course (in Area 7: World Economy and Business Skills):
GEC371 Small Business Entrepreneurship (2)

DEPARTMENT OF MARKETING

Bachelor of Business Administration (Marketing) Degree

Entrance Qualifications
The requirements for admission into BBA Marketing Degree Programme are as stipulated in the General Academic Regulations 00.0 to 20.4 and the Faculty special Regulations 1.0 to 1.3

Course Requirements
Students pursuing the Bachelor of Business
Administration (Marketing) Degree
Programme are required to take and pass the following courses at Levels 100, 200, 300, 400: MKT 100 is a prerequisite for all MKT courses.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, GEC)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

GEC/Elective (3)
Options (6)

Level 200
Semester 3
MKT202 Distribution Management (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting (3, pre-req, ACC 100)
FIN200 Business Finance (3, pre-req, ACC 100)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3)

Semester 4
MKT204 Integrated Marketing Communication strategy (3)
MKT201 Consumer Behaviour theory and practice (3)
STA 114 Business Statistics I (3) GEC/Option/Elective (6)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MGT300 Human Resource Management (3, pre-req, MGT100)
MKT300 International Marketing (3) Options (6) GEC / Elective (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
MKT310 Marketing Research Methods (3)
MKT315 Pricing Strategy (3) Option (6) GEC / Elective (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
MKT443 Industrial Attachment (3)
MKT409 Brand Management (3) Options (6) GEC / Elective (3)

Semester 8
MKT444 Research Project (4, Prereq. MKT 310)
MKT410 Marketing Management and Strategy (3)
MKT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Development (3, Prerequisite MGT202) Options (6) GEC/Elective (3)

Optional Courses
Students can take any of the under-listed optional courses at levels 2, 3 or 4. The number of optional courses offered shall depend on availability of staff.

MKT201 Purchasing and Materials Management (3)
BIS205 Information Technology (3), GEC 121, GEC 122
MGT200 Organizational Design & Development (3)
MGT203 Quantitative Methods for Business (3)
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics For Business (3)
MKT303 Strategic Sales Management (3)
MKT304 Advertising Management (3, Prerequisite MKT 204)
MKT309 Internet Marketing (3)
MKT311 Strategic Retail Management (3, Prerequisite MKT 202)
MKT312 Public Relations Strategy (3, Prerequisite MKT 204)
MK 313 Services Marketing Theory and Practice (3)
MKT314 Business to Business Marketing Practice (3)
MKT406 Marketing Ethics (3)
MKT408 Contemporary Issues in Marketing (3)
MKT 411 Global Business Strategy (3)
MKT412 Managing Marketing Relationships (3)
MKT413 Applied Marketing Research (3) (Prerequisite MKT 310)
MKT414 Social Marketing (3)
MKT415 Tourism and Hospitality (3)

DEPARTMENT OF TOURISM AND HOSPITALITY

Bachelor of Business Administration in Tourism and Hospitality Management Degree Programme

1. Objectives of the Programme
The following are the objectives of the Bachelor of Business Administration in Tourism and Hospitality Management degree programme:
(i) To produce graduates with the necessary knowledge and practical skills to be able to efficiently and effectively operate business enterprises in the tourism and hospitality industries.
(ii) To produce graduates who can cope with the demands of a dynamic and highly competitive tourism and hospitality environment and who can innovate and manage change.
(iii) To produce graduates who can be managers in tourism and hospitality organisations or consultants in tourism and hospitality management.
(iv) To develop entrepreneurial skills in graduates so that they can be entrepreneurs in their own right in the tourism and hospitality industries.

2. Regulations
2.1.1 Entrance Qualifications
2.1.2 Normal Entry Scheme
Admission shall be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 20.2 for Bachelors Degree Programmes, with the specific requirement of a grade C (60%) in English and Mathematics.

2.1.3 Mature Age Entry Scheme
Admission shall be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 00.52.

2.1.4 Articulation
The new articulation policy as may be approved by Senate will apply.

2.2 Assessment
2.2.1 Assessment will be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 00.8.
2.2.2 There will be variations in the mode of assessment in order to allow for more flexibility. In practical-based courses, continuous assessment shall have a higher weighting than the final examination.
22.3 A student shall undergo three periods of supervised Industrial Training: May- July (10 weeks) during the vacation between Levels 100 and 400.
2.2.4 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:
THM111 Industrial Training I (duration 10 weeks, 4 credits, core course)
THM222 Industrial Training II (duration 10 weeks, 4 credits, core course)
THM333 Industrial Training III (duration 10 weeks, 4 credits, core course)
2.2.5 During the course of Industrial Training, students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.
2.2.6 Subject to the Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees, and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and Regulation 2.2.5 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the course of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.
2.2.7 During the course of the Industrial Training period, each student shall be visited twice at the location of placement to be assessed by the Faculty of Business staff.
2.2.8 A student's performance will be assessed by means of:
a) Continuous assessment by the industrial based supervisor and an assessor from the Faculty of Business.
b) Industrial Training report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period, and
c) Oral Presentation.

2.2.9 THM 111: Industrial Training I and THM 222: Industrial Training II shall be assessed as based on Regulations 2.2.8 (a) and (b). The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report shall be 1:2.

2.2.10 THM 333: Industrial Training III shall be evaluated as specified in Regulation 2.2.8. The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report to oral presentation shall be 1:2:1.

2.2.11 THM 444: Research Project shall be assessed according to Faculty of Business Research Project regulations.

2.3 Progression from Semester to Semester

In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative Grade Point Average (GPA), which is in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.9.

2.4. Duration of the Bachelor’s Programme

The normal duration of the proposed degree programme will be as stipulated in the General Academic Regulation 20.4.

2.5. Award of Degree

To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the requirements of General Academic Regulation 00.85.

2.6 Degree Classification

The degree classification will be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.4.

Programme Structure

Level 100

Semester 1

Core Courses

THM101 Principles of Tourism (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics I (4)
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, GEC)

Semester 2

Core Courses

ACC100 Introduction to Accounting (3)
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA114 Business Statistics (3)
THM102 Introduction to Hospitality Management (3)
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
THM111 Industrial Training (4)

Level 200

Semester 3

Core Courses

THM 201 Accommodation Management 1 (3)
THM 202 Tour Operations Management (3)
ENV202 Ecotourism and Sustainable Development (3)
HIS 102 Introduction to the Study of History (2)
Option/Elective (3) GEC 2/3

Semester 4

Core Courses

THM 203 Food and Beverage Management 1 (3, pre-req. THM 101 and THM 102)
MKT100 Principles of Marketing (3)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3)
THM204 Heritage Interpretation (3, pre-req. THM 101)
THM222 Industrial Training II Option/Elective GEC Area 4/5/6/7

Level 300

Semester 5

Core Courses

THM301 Accommodation Management 2 (3, pre-req. THM 201)
THM302 Food and Beverage Management 2 (3, pre-req. THM 203)
THM303 Research Methods (3) Option/Elective (3) GEC Area 4/5/6/7/3

Semester 6

Core Course

BIS 326 Tourism and Hospitality Information Systems (3)
MKT405 Tourism and Hospitality Marketing (3)
THM304 Events and Conference Management (3, pre-req. THM 101)
THM306 Tourism Business Law and Ethics (3)
THM333 Industrial Training III (4) Option/Elective (3) GEC Area 4/5/6/7/2

Semester 7

Core Courses

MGT 400 Strategic Management (3, MGT 301)
ENV428 Wildlife Conservation and Management (3, pre-req. THM 101)
ENV 408 Tourism and Development (2 pre-req. THM 101, ENV 202) Option (3) Elective (3) GEC Area 4/5/6/7 (2)

Semester 8

Core Courses

THM403 Food and Beverage Control (3)
THM405 Tourism in Southern Africa (3, pre-req. THM 101)
THM444 Research Project (4) Option (3) Elective (3) GEC Area 4/5/6/7 (2)

Menu of optional courses

FRE114 Basic French Language
FRE115 Oral and Written Comprehension
MKT200 Marketing Communications
FIN200 Business Finance
ACC201 Introduction to Cost Accounting
PHR312 Leisure and Tourism Development
THM308 Basic Taxation
MGT301 Organisational Behaviour
MGT300 Human Resource Management
PAD307 Human Resource Development
MGT308 Total Quality Management
MGT304 Industrial Relations
MKT308 Services Marketing
MKT305 Public Relations
ARC417 Heritage Management
PHR411 Recreation and Leisure
ENH322 Food Safety and Hygiene
ENH323 Occupational Health, Safety and Hygiene
ENV418 Environmental Policy
ENV 412 Environmental Impact Assessment
ENV312 Sustainable Development
ENV 301 Environmental Issues
ENV310 Medical Geography
ENSG373 Botswana Literature
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning Techniques
URP205 Land Use Planning
HEE445 Quantity Food Production
HEE446 Food Service Equipment and Facility Layout
HEE343 Food Service Management
HEE344 Menu Planning and Design
GEC148 Health and Wellness
GEC141 Physical Fitness Through Selected Activities
GEC145 Introduction to Swimming
Faculty of EDUCATION

DEAN
Professor. R. Tabulawa, BA, PGDE (UB), MA, PhD (Birmingham)

DEPUTY DEAN
Dr. G. Tsayang, BA, CDE (UBS), MEd (UB), EdD (Bristol) (on secondment to Faculty of Ed. Management)

TEACHING PRACTICE COORDINATOR
Dr. P.P Monyatsi, BA, CCE (UBS), MA (Bath), EdD (UNISA)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
Mr. G. F. Gaogane, BAcc (UB), PGDAcc., MSc (Birmingham)

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGER
Mr N.A.Nkanga, BA, MLIS (UB) MSc HRM (Cardiff)
The following Departments are housed in the Faculty of Education:

**Department of Adult Education**
The Department of Adult Education is responsible for the training of adult educators through full-time and part-time programmes. Programmes of study are Diploma in Adult Education, Diploma in NGO Management, Bachelor of Education, Master of Education, MPhil and PhD. In addition to academic programmes, the department also offers in-service training including the Botswana Extension Service Training (BEST) course.

**Department of Educational Foundations**
The Department of Educational Foundations offers courses in General Methods, Psychology, Philosophy, History and Sociology of Education, Educational Research and Evaluation, and Planning and Administration in selected career areas such as Teacher Education. The department also offers training in Counseling, Gender Education, Curriculum and Instruction and Special Education, and the education component of the Design and Technology Education Program. The programmes of study are: Bachelor of Education in Special Education, Bachelor of Education in Counseling, Post Graduate Diploma in Education and Master's and Doctoral Programmes in Counseling and Human Services, Curriculum and Instruction, Educational Management, Gender Education, and Research and Evaluation.

**Department of Educational Technology**
The Department of Educational Technology provides guidance and assistance in the design and implementation of teaching methods and materials, and offers courses in the use and development of educational resources for other departments of the Faculty of Education.

**Department of Home Economics Education**
The Department of Home Economics Education is responsible for the training of Home Economics specialists to teach in the formal education system, as well as to serve in extension and other non-formal education programmes. The programme of study is the Bachelor of Education in Home Economics.

**Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education**
The Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education offers undergraduate, postgraduate diploma and graduate level courses in the areas of Languages and Social Sciences Education. There are two graduate programmes: M.Ed (Religious Education) and M.Ed (Social Studies). Plans are underway to introduce M.Ed (Moral Education) and M.Phil/PhD (Social Studies).

**Department of Mathematics and Science Education**
The Department of Mathematics and Science Education provides programmes in computer studies, mathematics and science. It offers a wide range of courses including: The theory and practice of teaching school computer studies, mathematics and science education; curriculum development, research and evaluation; contemporary issues in computer, mathematics and science; issues in computer, mathematics and science pedagogical content knowledge; the impact of ICT on teaching-learning processes; and the philosophy and psychology of computer, mathematics and science teaching. The programmes of study are the Bachelor of Education (Science), Master of Education, MPhil, and PhD. The department offers service courses for Bachelor of Education (Secondary) and Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE). Also the department has an in-service unit that provides workshops and seminars to school teachers and supports schools to strengthen the structure of computer, mathematics and science departments in these schools.

**Department of Physical Education, Health & Recreation**
The aim of the Department of Physical Education is to produce qualified Physical Education, Sport, and Recreation specialists who will either teach, coach or administer Physical Education, Sport, and Recreation programmes in primary and secondary schools, teacher training colleges, sports councils, rehabilitation and recreation centres in the country. The Programme of study is the Bachelor’s Degree in Physical Education. An MEd in Physical Education will be offered soon. Areas of concentration include teacher education and preparation, sport and athletic administration, research training and coaching, with an emphasis on recreation and tourism, pedagogical, scientific (Exercise, Physiology, Biomechanics, Kinesiology, Adapted Physical Education), and the psychological and sociological dimensions of human performance.

**Department of Primary Education**
The Department of Primary Education provides in-service programmes to upgrade the skills of primary and secondary teacher educators, such as teacher training college tutors, education officers, members of the school management teams and teachers. The Department offers a Bachelor of Education (Primary) and a Bachelor of Education (Educational Management) Degree. Masters of Education degrees in Arts and Music Education are still on hold pending recruitment of senior staff.

10.0 Faculty Regulations
All programmes in the Faculty shall be governed by the University General Academic Regulations. Any other relevant information pertaining to the programmes shall be as stipulated under the appropriate department in the following pages.

10.20 Teaching Practice/Practicum
All pre-service students enrolled in a Bachelor of Education Programme shall undergo teaching practice as specified in the Faculty Teaching Practice/Practicum Regulations, obtainable from the Teaching Practice office and Faculty website.

10.30 Entrance Requirements
The University General Regulations shall apply.

10.40 Assessment
For courses taught by the Faculty of Education, continuous assessment shall comprise a minimum of 2 components of work per course per semester. Each course shall be examined by an associated paper of duration between 1 to 3 hours. Some courses will be assessed by continuous assessment only, depending on the nature of the course. The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 1:1. For courses taken in other Faculties, the ratio of continuous assessment to examination results shall be as determined by the Faculties concerned.

10.50 Progression
The University General Academic Regulations shall apply.

10.60 Award of Degree
The University General Academic Regulations shall apply.

**DEPARTMENT OF ADULT EDUCATION**

1.0 Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Adult Education
2.0 Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

1.1 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance requirements shall be as follows:
- a) For Level 100, a minimum of 5 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent or requirements as specified in General Regulation 10.21, with preference given to those with some experience in Adult Education.
- b) For Level 200, a Certificate in Adult Education or its equivalent in a related field.

1.2 Programme Structure
1.2.1 The Programme shall extend over two full academic years.

1.2.2 Course Listings
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses:
DAE100 Principles of Adult Education (3)
DAE101 Introduction to the Psychology of Adult Education (3)
DAE102 Introduction to Planning Programmes for Adult Learners (3)

Optional Courses:
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)

General Education Courses
Two 2-credit GECs are to be taken from the university wide menu:
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester 2
DAE103 Adult Education and Society (3)
DAE104 Adult Education in Practice (3)
EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research (3)

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE212 Participatory Development Methods (3)
DAE213 Adult Basic Education and Training (3)
DAE215 Computer Applications in Adult Education (3)
DAE217 Lifelong Learning (3)

General Education Courses
Two 2-credit GECs are to be taken from the university wide menu:
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
DAE200 Historical and Philosophical Foundations of Adult Education (3)
DAE201 The Psychology of Adult Learning (3)
DAE202 Programme Planning and Evaluation in Adult Education (3)
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education (3)

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
EFR220 Introduction to Educational Research (3) (new entrants only)

Semester 4
Core Courses
DAE203 Teaching Methods for Adult Education (3)
DAE204 Gender Issues in Adult Education (3)
DAE205 Adult Education and the World of Work (3)
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE209 Integrated Skills Project (3)

Electives
One 3-credit elective, to be chosen from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required (except for new entrants).

General Education Courses
For new entrants two 2-credit GEC courses are to be taken from the university wide menu. These should be GEC111 and GEC121.

1.3 Assessment
1.3.1 The performance of each student shall be assessed at the end of each semester with a 2-hour examination unless otherwise stated in the course outline.
1.3.2 The ratio between continuous assessment and formal exam shall be 1:1.
1.3.3 Continuous assessment for Adult Education courses shall be based on extended Assignments and tests as well as other forms of assessment, such as periodic tests, projects and presentations.

1.4 Award of Diploma
The award of the diploma shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulations 00.85
1.5 Progression to the Bachelor of Education Programme (Adult Education)
A student who successfully completes Levels 100 and 200 of the Diploma Programme may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

2.0 Departmental Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Education Degree in Adult Education
Subject to the provision of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

2.1 Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance qualifications shall be the following:
a) For Level 100, a minimum of 5 credits in the BGCSE or its equivalent, with credit in English Language, or as specified in General Regulations 2.2.2 and 2.2.3. Preference will be given to those applicants with some experience in adult education;
b) For Level 200, requirements will be as stipulated in General Regulation 2.2.4.
c) For Level 300, the requirement is a Diploma or its equivalent in Adult Education or a related field.

2.2 Programme Structure
2.2.1 Level 100 courses shall be as stipulated in Departmental Special Regulations 1.2.2.

Electives
One 3-credit elective is to be chosen from the university wide menu.

Optional Courses
One optional course from the following:
DAE206 Supervising Adult Education Programmes (3)
DAE208 Integrated Extension (3)
DAE210 Psychology and the Adult Learner (3)
DAE211 Promoting Community Enterprises and Economic Projects (3)
DAE214 Vocational Education and Training (3)
DAE216 Adult Education and Special Groups (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
DAE203 Teaching Methods for Adult Education (3)
DAE204 Gender Issues in Adult Education (3)
DAE205 Adult Education and the World of Work (3)
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE209 Integrated Skills Project (3)

Electives
One 3-credit elective is to be chosen from the university wide menu.

Optional Courses
One optional course from the following:
DAE209 Integrated Skills Project (3)
DAE207 Community Project Planning and Management (3)
DAE213 Adult Basic Education and Training (3)
DAE215 Computer Applications in Adult Education (3)
DAE212 Participatory Development Methods (3)
DAE217 Lifelong Learning (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
DAE300 Organization and Management in
Adult Education (3)
DAE301 Leadership in Adult Education (3)
DAE306 Issues in International Adult Ed. (3)

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE312 Evaluation Methods in Adult Education
DAE313 Instructional Media and Materials Development in Adult Education
DAE314 Counseling in Lifelong Learning
DAE315 Organizational Development in Adult Education
DAE316 Issues in Adult Education
DAE317 Adult Education and Sustainable Development

Semester 6 Core Courses
DAE302 Principles of Human Resource Development
DAE303 Research Design in Adult Education
DAE304 Practicum in Adult Education Methods

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE418 Urban Adult Education
DAE419 Topics in Adult Literacy
DAE420 Adult Education, Democracy, Peace and Human Rights
DAE421 Development Policies and Adult Education
DAE422 Entrepreneurship Skills Development

Level 400 Semester 7 Core Courses
DAE406 Political Economy of Adult Education and Development
DAE410 Adult Education Research Project (6)
DAE411 Training and Development General

Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE312 Evaluation Methods in Adult Education
DAE313 Instructional Media and Materials Development in Adult Education
DAE314 Counseling in Lifelong Learning
DAE315 Organizational Development in Adult Education
DAE316 Issues in Adult Education
DAE317 Adult Education and Sustainable Development

Semester 8 Core Courses
DAE407 Management of Community Economic Projects
DAE408 Policy Development for Lifelong Learning
DAE409 Adult Education and Social Exclusion

General Education Courses
One 2-credit GEC is to be chosen from the university-wide menu.

Electives
One 3-credit elective from any course outside the Department of Adult Education, for which students are eligible, is required.

Optional Courses
Students shall choose one of the following:
DAE418 Urban Adult Education
DAE419 Topics in Adult Literacy
DAE420 Adult Education, Democracy, Peace and Human Rights
DAE421 Development Policies and Adult Education
DAE422 Entrepreneurship Skills Development

2.3 Assessment
Assessment shall be in accordance with Departmental Special Regulations 1.3.1 to 3.3.

2.4 Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.9

2.5 Award of the Degree
Award of the Degree shall be in accordance with General Academic Regulations 00.85

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATIONAL FOUNDATIONS

Introduction
The Educational Foundations Department provides both foundational courses as well as offers full-fee edged programs. The Department is organized into disciplines as follows: Curriculum Studies plus Design & Technology Education

Educational Management
Education Education Research and Evaluation
Education Psychology
Counselling and Human Services
History and Philosophy of Education Sociology of Education
Special Education
Gender Education

The department houses the following programs:
Diploma Programs
A one year full time preservice Post Graduate Diploma in Education

First Degree Programs
A two year in-service/four year pre-service Bachelor of Education in Special Education Program
A two year in-service/four year pre-service Bachelor of Education in Counselling Program

Programs and Courses Offered in the Department
Department Regulations
B.Ed (Special Education) Double Major

Aim
The aim of the B.Ed (Special Education) double major is to equip students with relevant intellectual and professional skills for providing specialized services to exceptional learners in schools and other institutions such as rehabilitation and resource centres. In more specific terms the program will raise the awareness level of the student in respect to the causes, prevention and intervention strategies of the various forms of impairment. Produce knowledgeable and skilful special education teachers for secondary schools. Produce knowledgeable and skilful special education teachers for primary schools. Produce teachers who have the skills to teach school subjects to both disabled and non-disabled persons

Entry Requirements
For Level One
A minimum overall aggregate of Second class in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or its equivalent, including at least six subjects taken in not more than two sittings. Obtain a minimum of grade C in English for candidates wishing to take a teaching subject in humanities. Obtain a minimum grade of C in mathematics and a pass in English for candidates wishing to take a teaching subject in the sciences. Or as specified in General Regulation 20:22. In-Service Teachers’ Entry Requirements Current: Level Two Entry for In-service Candidates
Applicants for the Bachelor’s in Special Education would be required to have a Diploma in Education or its equivalent from any recognised university/institution. For
example, Diploma in Physical Education, Home Economics, etc. Preference will be given to teachers with more than two years teaching experience in special education. The Diploma referred to shall normally be of duration of two or more years and one acceptable to UB. Refer to General Regulation 20.24, Entry on the basis of a Diploma of less than two years duration may be considered if the applicant has a previous related Certificate qualification in the Special Education field, and experience of not less than five years. Such candidates will start at the 1st year to receive tuition in some foundation courses in education and in special education. This would allow them to bridge the gap due to the endorsement they hold.

### Level One: B.Ed Content

#### Level One

- **Course Type:**
  - Semester One
  - Semester Two

- **Total cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPED Core &amp; Area</th>
<th>Courses</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core</td>
<td>3 (1) 9 (3) 12 (4)</td>
<td>3 (1) + 9 (3) + 12 (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Second Major - Primary Education/Sec. Education**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electives</th>
<th>Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **NOTE:** Articulation is done for B.Ed Special Education (Primary) in both content and Special Education. Articulation for the B.Ed (Special Education) secondary is only possible in Special Education and not content.

#### Level One, Semester 1

- **Semester 1 (18)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Double Major: Special Education and Primary Education CORE</th>
<th>EFS101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENV101 Introduction to Physical and Human Environment (3)</th>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EPE100 Introduction to Algebra (3)</td>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPE102 Introductory Science (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication study skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
<td>Plus one course from the following (3 credits):</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
<th>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus one course from the following (3 credits):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
<th>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus one course from the following (3 credits):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
<th>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus one course from the following (3 credits):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
<th>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus one course from the following (3 credits):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
<th>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plus one course from the following (3 credits):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</th>
<th>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)</td>
<td>Special Education Humanities (English and African Languages) (18-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)</td>
<td>GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D. Practical Subject Concentration

Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12-14
Electives - - - - - -
Options 3 (1) 3 (1) 6 (2)
6 (2) 6 (2) 12 (4)
General Education Courses
Second Major- Pri. Ed /Sec. Ed. 3 (1) 3 (1) 6 (2)
18 4-6

Semester 3

Course Type

Level Two: Diploma and B.Ed

Semester 1

Level 2

Faculty of Education

Plus optional course. Choose two
EPE212
Introduction to Language Arts (3)

A. Language Concentration

CORE

EPE212
Introduction to Language Arts (3)

Plus optional course. Choose two Courses Relevant to teaching subject taken in level 1.
ENG211
The Pronunciation of English (2)

ALL121
Introductions to the study of Language and Linguistics (2)

B. Math and Science concentration

CORE

EPML226
Algebra and Trigonometry (3)

EPML228
Foundations of Chemistry and Biology (3)

C. Social Studies/Religious Education Concentration CORE

EPE211
Language across the curriculum (3)

EPS200
Intro to Social Studies Education (2)

ENV214
Element of the physical environment (3)

D. Practical Subject Concentration

Take i, ii or iii

i. Art Education
EPP201
Introduction to Art (4)

EPP217
Intro to Philosophy of music Education and Fundamentals of music (4)

iii. Home Economics Education
(Take one)

HEE114
Introduction to Nutrition (3) OR Family studies Foundations (3) Plus optional course choose one (for Practical Subjects concentration)

EPE211
Language across the curriculum (3)

EPS200
Intro to Social Studies Education (2)

Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 3 or 4

Bachelor of Education
(Special Education)

Special Education and Primary Education (18-21 credits)

CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS 201
Psychology of exceptional children (3) Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization

Students from colleges of Education are to take GEC 441,111 and 121

EFS220
Braille Reading and Writing for the Visually Impaired(3)

EFS230
Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS240
Curriculum and Instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)

EFS240
Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3 credits) Plus one Core and Optional course in relevant Primary Education concentration chosen in level 1.

A. Language Concentration

CORE

MAT211
Introductory set and number theory (3)

MAT221
Calculus (3) To be taken by in-service students

ESM 261
Basic Teaching Methods in Sch.

Mathematics (3)

ESM 203
Inset Algebra (3)

ESM 213
Inset Differential Calculus (3)

B. Science Core

ESS261
Basic Teaching Methods in Sec.

Sch. Science (3) Plus one optional course in I, II, III

I, Biology

BIO211
Cell Biology (3)

BIO213
Plant Structure and Functions (3)

BIO215
Principles of Ecology (3)

BIO217
Animal Diversity (3) Choose One Plus Corresponding Lab I, Chemistry

CHE211
Introduction to analytical Chemistry (2)

CHE213
Analytical chemistry lab (1)

CHE221
Atomic Structure Bonding and Hair Group chem. (2)

CHE223
Inorganic chemistry lab (1) Choose One Plus Corresponding Lab II, Physics

PHY211
Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)

PHY219
Physics practical 2.1(11)

PHY212
Properties of matter and thermo dynamics (2)

PHY219
Physics Practical 2.1(1) Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 2/3/4/5 Special Education and Environmental Science (18-21 credits)

EFS201
Psychology of exceptional children (3)

ELG290
Theory of geography teaching (3)

ENV215
Introduction to special analysis (3) Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization. Students from colleges of Education are to take an additional 3 credits other than area of specialization

EFS220
Braille Reading and Writing for the Visually Impaired(3)

EFS230
Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS240
Curriculum and Instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)

EFS250
Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties Plus A or B A. Mathematics Core

ESM 261
Basic Teaching Methods in Sec. Sch. Mathematics. (3) Plus one optional course. Choose: To be taken by pre-service students

MAT211
Introductory set and number theory (3)

MAT221
Calculus (3) To be taken by in-service students

ESM 261
Basic Teaching Methods in Sch.

Elements of human geography I (3)

ENV103
Elementary quantitative techniques in geography (3)

ENV214
Elements of physical geography (3) Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 4 or 6 Special Education and Humanities (English/African Languages) (18-21 credits) CORE (to be taken by all)

EFS201
Psychology of exceptional children (3) Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
Students from colleges of Education are to take GEC 441, 111 and 121.

**EFS220** Braille Reading and Writing for the Visually Impaired (3)

**EFS230** Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

**EFS240** Curriculum and Instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)

**EFS250** Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (Plus)

**ELL290** Language Education Issues (3)

Plus optional course. Choose two. Courses Relevant to teaching subject taken in level 1.

- **ENG211** The Pronunciation of English (2)
- **ENG213** Prose Literature of Southern Africa (2)
- **ENG223** The Drama of Southern Africa (2)
- **END212** Introduction to English Literature: the Novel (2)
- **ALL221** Sound systems in African languages (2)
- **ALL241** History and structure of the Setswana Novel (2)
- **ALL232** Language instructions III (ALL 134 Pre required) (2)
- **ALL251** Folk Speech in Africa (2)
- **ALL252** Rites of Passage: A study of social dreams (2)

Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 2 or 4 Special Education and Humanities (History) (18-21 credits)

**CORE** (to be taken by all)

- **EFS201** Psychology of Exceptional Children (3)

Plus one course relevant to SPED Specialization. Students from colleges of Education are to take GEC 441, 111 and 121.

**EFS220** Braille Reading and Writing for the Visually Impaired (3)

**EFS230** Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

**EFS240** Curriculum and Instructional Methods for Students with Mild to Moderate Mental Retardation (3)

**EFS250** Diagnostic Teaching in Basic Skills for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (Plus)

**PLUS**

- **ELR290** Theory of Teaching Religious Education (3)

Plus optional course. Choose one from the following.

- **TRS203** African Traditional Religions in Botswana (2)
- **TRS204** Theologies of Gender (2)
- **TRS206** Beginning Biblical Greek 1: New Testament Greek (2)
- **TRS207** Intro to Christian Theology (2) Plus 6 credits of GEC Area 1 or 3 or 4

**LEVEL 3** (17-21 credits depending on teaching subject concentration) (Holder of UB Diploma)

Double Major: Special Education & Primary Education

**CORE** (to be taken by all)

- **EFS 201** Psychology of Exceptional Children (3)

Plus one course in SPED concentration Visual Impairment

**Visual Impairment**

- **EFS 320** Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

**Hearing Impairment**

- **EFS 330** Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

**Mental Retardation**

- **EFS 340** Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)

**Learning Disabilities / Difficulties**

- **EFS 350** Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Plus 6 credits from a, b, c or d.

- **a. Language concentration**
  - **ENG 311** Modern English Grammar (2)
  - **ALL 221** Sound Systems in African Languages (2)

Plus optional courses. Choose one from the following:

- **ALL 241** History and Structure of Setswana Novel (2)
- **ALL 152** Style in Writing (2)
- **b. Mathematics/Science concentration**
- **EPM 326** Introduction to Probability and Statistics (3, pre-req. EPM 227)
- **EPM 328** Principles of Chemistry and Physics (3)
- **EPM 331** Social Studies in the Primary Schools (3)
- **c. Social Studies Concentration**
- **Core**
- **EPS 322** Social Studies and Curriculum Development (3)
- **EPS 331** Social Studies in the Primary Schools (3)
- **d. Practical subjects concentration**
  - Take i, ii or iii
  - **i. Art Education**
  - **EPP 301** Appropriate Art Methods and Materials for Primary School (4)
  - **ii. Music Education**
  - **EPP 327** Introduction to Ethnomusicology Education (4)
  - **iii. Home Economics**
  - **HEE 229** Child development Pre-natal through Early Childhood (3)
  - **PLUS** Take one course in the area chosen at Level 3. Semester 1

**LEVEL THREE B.ED**

Course Type

Semester 5 Semester 6 TOTAL

- **cr. hrs courses** cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses
- **SPED Core & Area**
  - **Courses**
  - 6 2 6 2 12 4
  - Second Major: Pri. Ed./Sec.Ed.
  - 6 2 6 2 12 4
  - General Education Courses
  - 3 1 -- 3 1
  - Options 3 1 3 1 6 2
  - Electives -- 3 1 3 1
  - Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12
  - level 2 from the following:

- **ALL 221** Sound systems in African Language(2)
- **ENG 311** Modern English Grammar (2)
- **EPM 326** Introduction to Probability and Statistics (3)
- **EPM 328** Principles of Chemistry and Biology (3credit)
- **EPM 330** Science Education (3)
- **EPS 322** Social Studies and Curriculum Development (2)
- **HEE 238** Orientation to Teaching home Economics (3)

Elective: EFR 200 Intro to Measurement in Education (3credits) GEC Area 4 (2credits)

Double major: Special Education & Primary Education Core (To be taken by all)

**EFS301** Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)

Plus one area course in SPED specialization. Visual Impairment

**EFS 320** Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EFS 330</td>
<td>Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 340</td>
<td>Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 350</td>
<td>Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities / Difficulties (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 340</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO 211</td>
<td>Cell Biology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO 218</td>
<td>Biology of Flowering Plants (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO 212</td>
<td>Genetics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO215</td>
<td>Principles of Ecology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO214</td>
<td>Intro. To Mammalian Physiology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS 391</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Teach Sch. Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE211</td>
<td>Analytical Chemistry (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE213</td>
<td>Analytical Chemistry Lab (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE234</td>
<td>Organic Chemistry Laboratory 1 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESM391</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Teach Sch. Maths (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT381</td>
<td>Calculus for Teachers (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT383</td>
<td>Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS391</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Teaching School Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY211</td>
<td>Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY212</td>
<td>Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY 219</td>
<td>Physics Practicals 2.1(1) GEC 2 credits area 4 or 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 301</td>
<td>Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV 301</td>
<td>Introduction to Environmental Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV 304</td>
<td>Environmental Issues (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC302</td>
<td>Gender Issues in Social Studies (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 301</td>
<td>Historical Research Methods (3 credit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 303</td>
<td>Historiography of Botswana (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 301</td>
<td>Educational Assessment. Education for Self-reliance (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 333</td>
<td>Intro to Foreign Policy, Dipl and Inter Rela 1800-1945 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 343</td>
<td>Trade &amp; Politics in Central African Kingdoms (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 341</td>
<td>African Diaspora in the Islamic World &amp; Asia (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIS 343</td>
<td>Trade and Politics in Central African Kingdoms (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS 304</td>
<td>African Philosophy and Culture (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFS 350</td>
<td>Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities / Difficulties (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV 302</td>
<td>Concepts and Principles in Population Geography (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV 305</td>
<td>Rural Geography (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV 307</td>
<td>Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELR 301</td>
<td>Theories of Religious Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS 304</td>
<td>African Philosophy and Culture (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hearing Impairment**

- **EFS 330**: Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)
- **EFS 340**: Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)
- **EFS 350**: Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities / Difficulties (3)
  - Optional Courses. Choose one from the following:
    - **ENV 302**: Concepts and Principles in Population Geography (2)
    - **ENV 305**: Rural Geography (2)
    - **ENV 307**: Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2)
  - Plus one GEC area 4 or 5 course

**Mental Retardation**

- **EFS 330**: Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)

**Visual Impairment**

- **EFS 320**: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
- **EFS 330**: Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)
- **EFS 340**: Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)
- **EFS 350**: Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities / Difficulties (3)
- **EFS 330**: Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)
- **EFS 320**: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

**Mental Retardation**

- **EFS 340**: Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3)

**Visual Impairment**

- **EFS 320**: Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
- **EFS 330**: Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

EFS 330 Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 340 Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3) Learning Disabilities / Difficulties

EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3) Plus optional courses: choose one from the following.

TRS 301 Christology (2)

TRS 302 Missionaries in the 19th century South Africa (2)

TRS 303 Creation and the Bible (2)

TRS 309 Psychology of Religion (2) Plus one GEC area 3 or 5 GEC

Elective:

EFR 200 Intro. To Measurement in Education (3) Double major: Special Education & Science CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 301 Educational Assessment and Identification of students with Disabilities (3) Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3) Hearing Impairment

EFS 330 Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 340 Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3) Learning Disabilities / Difficulties

EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3) Plus Core and Options in teaching subject Mathematics Core

ESM 361 Teaching Strategies for School Mathematics (3)

MAT 321 Real Analyses 1 (3)

MAT 311 Abstract Algebra 1 (3, pre-req: MAT 212) Plus one from the following

MAT 323 Vector Calculus (3, pre-req: MAT 222)

MAT 251 Vectors & Introductory mechanics (3) Biology Core

ESB 361 Teaching Strategies for School Biology (Choose)

BIO 316 Plant Physiology (3)

BIO 317 Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (3) Plus one from the following:

BIO 307 Biochemistry (revised) (3)

BIO 216 General Microbiology (pre-req: BIO 310, BIO 312) (3) Chemistry Core

ESC 361 Teaching Strategies of School Chemistry (3)

CHE 321 Coordination in Chemistry (2)

CHE 322 Inorganic Chemistry Lab 11 (1) CHE 331 Structure and Survey of Functional Group (3)

CHE 341 Application Thermodynamics & Electro Chemistry (2)

CHE 343 Physical Chemistry Lab 111 (1)

Physics Core

ESP 361 Teaching Strategies of School Physics (3)

PHY 311 Mechanics (2)

PHY 312 Quantum Mechanics (2)

PHY 319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

PHY 314 Electronics 1 (2) Plus 2 credits GEC area 5 GEC Double major: Special Education & Home Economics (Secondary In-Service) CORE (To be taken by all)

EFS 301 Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities, (3) Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

Visual Impairment

EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3) Hearing Impairment

EFS 330 Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Mental Retardation

EFS 340 Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3) Learning Disabilities / Difficulties

EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3) Home Economics Take All

HEE 229 Child Care and Development (3)

HEE 238 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3) Area of concentration (Choose One from 1 To 4)

Food and Nutrition (take all)

HEE 320 Community Nutrition (3)

HEE 343 Food Service management (3) 2. Human Development and Family Studies (take all)

HEE 316 Family Health Education (3)

HEE 348 Risk and Resiliency in Child Devt. (3) 3. Clothing and Textile (Take all)

HEE 353 Analysis & Evaluation of Textile Performance (3)

HEE 356 Apparel Design & Product Devt. (3) 4. Housing and Interior Design (Choose 2)

HEE 359 Design Fundamentals (3)

HEE 360 Building Construction and Envir. Systems (3) Plus one from the following:

BIO 307 Biochemistry (revised) (3)

BIO 216 General Microbiology (pre-req: BIO 310, BIO 312) (3) Chemistry Core

EFS 301 Educational Assessment and Identification of Students with Disabilities, (3) Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

EFS 320 Advanced Mobility and Orientation for Students with Visual Impairment (3) Hearing Impairment

EFS 330 Communication Processes for students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 340 Methods in Teaching School Subjects to Students with Mental Retardation (3) Learning Disabilities / Difficulties

EFS 350 Developmental Approaches and Behavior Management of Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3) Home Economics Take All

HEE 229 Child Care and Development (3)

HEE 238 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3) Area of concentration (Choose One from 1 To 4)

Food and Nutrition (take all)

HEE 320 Community Nutrition (3)

HEE 343 Food Service management (3) 2. Human Development and Family Studies (take all)

HEE 316 Family Health Education (3)

HEE 348 Risk and Resiliency in Child Devt. (3) 3. Clothing and Textile (Take all)

HEE 353 Analysis & Evaluation of Textile Performance (3)

HEE 356 Apparel Design & Product Devt. (3) 4. Housing and Interior Design (Choose 2)

HEE 359 Design Fundamentals (3)

HEE 360 Building Construction and Envir. Systems (3)
Level Four
Course Type
Semester 7
Semester 8 Total cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses cr. hrs courses
SPED Core Courses 6 2 9 3 15 5
Second Major: Pri. Ed/Sec. Ed. 6 2 6 2 12 4
General Education Courses
Options 3 1 – 3 1
Electives 3 1 3 1 6 2
Student Load 18 6 18 6 36 12
Morphology (2 credits)
Plus Practical Area Subject and the optional course
(i) Art Education
EPP 406 Contemporary Issues in Art Education (4)
(ii) Music Education
EPP 447 Basic Instrumental Skills (4)
(iii) Home Economics
HEE 328 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3)
Optional Course (Choose one)
PHR 309 Adapted Physical Education (2)
HEE 338 Consumer Protection (2)
HEE 337 Human Development across the Life Span (2)
EFP 301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)
S. Special Topics concentration Students in this concentration shall continue with the area chosen at Level 200.
ALL 321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)
ENG 421 Approaches to Syntax (2)
EPM 426 Introduction to Derivatives and their Applications (3)
EPM 428 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Chemistry (3)
ENV 307 Human Settlement: Principles and Morphology (2)
Plus one from the following areas and the optional Guidance and Counselling
EHF 403 Program Development in CHS (3)
Infant Education
EPI 431 Management of Early Childhood Program (3)

Environmental Education
EPI 442 Environmental Conservation Strategies (3)
ONE optional course
EPP 301 Adult-child Intervention and Cognitive Development (3)
Elective or GEC “2–3 credits” Retake courses (if any)
Semester 1 (17 credits) Pre-service Double major: Special Education and Science
SPED: CORE
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with Disabilities (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

EFS 440 School & Community-Based Programs for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties across the Life Span (3)

Second Major: CORE courses
1. Biology
ESB 461 Critical Debates in Biology (3)
BIO 311 Plant Systematics (3)
BIO 315 Invertebrate Biology (3)
2. Chemistry
ESC 461 Further Issues in Chemistry
CHE 321 Coordination Chemistry (2)
CHE 323 Inorganic Chemistry Lab II (1)
CHE 341 Applications of thermodynamic & Electrochemistry (2)
CHE 343 Physical Chem. Lab III (1)
3. Mathematics
ESM 461 Advanced Teach. Methods in Sch. Maths. (3)
MAT 483 Real Analysis for Teachers I (3)
MAT 485 Number Theory & Abstract algebra for Teac. (3)
4. Physics
ESP 461 Advanced Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)
PHY 311 Mechanics (2)
PHY 312 Quantum Mechanics (2)
PHY 319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)
Optional course. Choose one from the following in your teaching subject:
ESM 441 Intro. to Inform & Commun. Tech. In Maths Education (3)
ESM 471 Contemporary Issues in Maths Education (2)
ESS 441 Intro. to Inform & Commun. Tech. In Science Education (2)
ESS 471 Contemporary Issues in Science Education (2) GEC (2) Special Education and Environmental Science (19 credits)
SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with Disabilities (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 440 School & Community-Based Programs for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties across the Life Span (3)

Second Major: CORE courses
EEL 401 Environmental Education Conservation Strategies (3)
ENV 402 Natural Resource Conservation and Management (3)
Plus two from the following:
ENV 404 Rural Development Theory and
Practice (2)

ENV 424 Industry and Environment (2)
ENV 406 Regional Development studies (2)
ENV 408 Tourism and Development (2)
ENV 425 The African Environment (3)
ENV 407 Eco-tourism (2)
ENV 447 Environmental Hazards (2)
Electives (3) a course outside special education and second major Retake courses (if any)

Semester 1 (18 Credits) Pre-Service Double major: Special Education and Humanities
(English: African languages)

SPED: CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with Disabilities (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 440 School & Community-Based Programs for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties across the Life Span (3)
Second major: Two CORE courses and one Optional course in Teaching subject

1. Home Economics
HED 449 Seminar in Human Development (2)
HED 451 Public Policy for children and Families (3)
Optional Course, Choose one
HED 362 Housing and Services for Families with Special Needs (2)
HED 454 Family Counselling (3)

2. Social Studies
ELC 300 Socialization Issues (3)
ELC 403 Economic Cooperation and Integration (3)
Optional Course, Choose one
ELC 431 Civic education (3)
ELC 421 Global Perspectives & Materials in Social Studies (3)
ELC 451 Resource Management in Africa (3)
ELC 461 Human Rights Issues (3)

3. Theology & Religious Studies
ELR 401 Teaching Religious Education in Sec. Sch. (3)
TR5 401 New Religious Movements (2)
TR5 402 Religion and Politics (2)
Optional course. Choose one
TR5 403 The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (2)
TR5 404 Intermediate Hebrew I (2)
TR5 406 Intermediate Arabic I (2)
TR5 407 Islam's Socio-Cultural, Legal & Political structures (2)
TR5 409 African Christian Theologies (2)
TR5 411 Political & Development of Biblical thought (2)
TR5 412 Ecumenical Theology (2)
TR5 413 Hinduism (2)
Electives (3) One course outside of Special Education and the second major

Special Education and Humanities: Home Economics/Social Studies/Religious Studies - Specials (18 credits)
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with Disabilities (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 440 School & Community-Based Programs for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties across the Life Span (3)
Second major: Two CORE courses and one Optional course in Teaching subject

4. Home Economics
HED 337 Human Development Across the Life Span (3)
HED 340 Home Economics Teach. Methods and Evaluation (3)
Optional Course. Choose one

5. Social Studies
ELC 300 Socialization Issues (3)
ELC 403 Economic Cooperation and Integration (3)
Optional Course. Choose one
ELC 431 Civic education (3)
ELC 421 Global Perspectives & Materials in Social Studies (3)
ELC 451 Resource Management in Africa (3)
ELC 461 Human Rights Issues (3)

6. Theology & Religious Studies
ELR 401 Teaching Religious Education in Sec. Sch. (3)
TR5 401 New Religious Movements (2)
TR5 402 Religion and Politics (2)
Optional course. Choose one
TR5 403 The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (3)
TR5 405 Intermediate Hebrew I (2)
TR5 406 Intermediate Arabic I (2)
TR5 407 Islam's Socio-Cultural, Legal & Political structures (2)
TR5 409 African Christian Theologies (2)
TR5 411 Political & Development of Biblical thought (2)
TR5 412 Ecumenical Theology (2)
TR5 413 Hinduism (2)
Electives (3) One course outside of Special Education and the second major

Financial research Methods (3)
Special Education and Theology and Religious Studies (20 credits)
SPED CORE (To be taken by all)
EFS 401 Rehabilitation and Transition of Children with Disabilities (3)
Plus one course relevant to SPED specialization
EFS 420 Teaching Students with Low Vision (3)
EFS 430 Educating Students with Hearing Impairment (3)
EFS 440 School & Community-Based Programs for Individuals with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 450 Educational Services for Individuals with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties across the Life Span (3)
Second major: CORE course
ELR 401 Teaching Religious Education In Secondary Schools (3)
TRS 401 New Religious Movements (2)
TRS 402 Religion and Politics (2)
Plus optional courses, choose two from the following:
TRS 403 The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (2)
TRS 404 Metaphysics IV: Personal Identity (2)
TRS 407 Islam's Sociocultural, Legal and Political Structures (2)
TRS 409 African Christian Theology (2)
TRS 411 Politics and Development of Biblical Thoughts (2)
TRS 412 Ecumenical Theology (2)
TRS 413 Hinduism (2)
Electives (3) One course outside of special education and second major Bachelor of Education (Special Education)
Special Education and Primary Education (19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
MAT 122 Introduction to Mathematics II (5)
Plus 4 credits from any one of the following courses
BIO 112 Diversity of Plants and Animal (4)
CHE 102 General Chemistry II (4)
PHY 121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (3)
PHY 121 Electricity and Magnetism Physics (3)
PHY 110 Physics Practical 1, 2 (1)
Plus 2 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Science (Environmental Science) (19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ENV 102 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments II (2)
ENV 104 Elementary Quantitative Techniques in Geography II (3)
ELC 202 Social Studies and Nation Building (3)
Plus 2 credits of GEC
Special Education and Humanities (English) (19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature Drama & Poetry (2)
Plus one course from the following
ALL 122 The Characteristics of Human Languages (2)
ALL 142 The Study of Drama (2)
ALL 154 Theory of Humour in Africa (2)
SOC 133 Social Change in Botswana (2)
Plus 4 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Humanities (African Languages) (19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ALL 122 The Characteristics of Human Languages (2)
ALL 142 The Study of Drama (2)
Plus one course from the following
ALL 153 Introduction to African Novel (2)
ALL 154 Theory of Humour in Africa (2)
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Humanities (Theology & Religious Studies) (19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
TRS 108 History of Philosophy I Classical Greek Philosophy (2)
TRS 111 Epistemology I Theory of Knowledge (2)
TRS 109 Biblical Interpretation (2)
Plus 4 credits of GEC
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Special Education and Humanities (History) (17-19 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
EFS 102 Service Delivery Approaches in Special Education (3)
EFS 103 Medical Aspects of Disability (3)
EFS 104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)
ELC 202 Social Studies and Nation Building (3)
Plus one from the following
HIS 102 Introduction to the Study of History (2)
HIS 202 Africa in the Era of Atlantic Slave Trade C1500 to C1800 (3)
GEC 112 Communication & Study Skills II (2)
GEC 122 Computer & Information Skills II (2)
Level 2
Semester 2
B Ed Special Education (Double Major) Special Education and Primary Education (15-18 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)
Plus all courses relevant to SPED specialization
Visual Impairment
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
Mental Retardation
EFS 241 Program Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in
School Subjects for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Language Concentration
ENG 221 English Linguistics (2)
ALL 153 Introduction to African novel (2)
ALL 122 African Languages and Linguistics (2)
ALL 142 African Languages and Literature (2)

Math and Science Concentration
EPM 227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3)
EPM 229 Foundations of Bio & Earth Sciences (3)
TRS 107 African Traditional Religion (2)
ENV 102 Introduction to the Physical and Human (2)

Practice Subjects Concentration Take one of the following:

Art Education
EPP 202 Practical Arts Skills for the Classroom Teacher (4)

Music Education
EPP 218 Listening, Composing and Performing (4)

Home Economics Education
HEE 116 Introduction to Consumer Education (3 credits)

Project Method
EPE 214 Theory & Practice of the Project Method (3)

EPM 230 Technology in Teaching Primary School Maths (3)

EPI 225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education (3)

Special Education and Math/Science (17–18 credits)

Special Education and Humanities (English Literature) (18 credits)

Core (to be taken by all)

ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Mathematics & Science
MAT 212 Introduction to Algebra (3, pre-req.: MAT 111) or A-Level
MAT 206 Inset Algebra II (3)
MAT 216 Inset Integral Calculus (3)
Optional: Choose one from the following
MAT 222 Calculus II (3, pre-req. MAT 221)
MAT 242 Computing I (3)

Biology
ESS 262 Practicum in Secondary School Science (3)

Choose two from the following:
BIO 211 Cell Biology (3)
BIO 213 Plant Structure & Function (3, pre-req. for BIO 316)

Chemistry – (take all)
ESS 262 Practicum in Secondary School Science (3)
CHE 232 Structure Survey of Functional groups (2)
CHE 234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
CHE 242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
CHE 244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Physics – (take all)
PHY 221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
PHY 222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY 223 Physics Practical 2.2 (1)
ESS 262 Practicum in Secondary School Science (3)
Special Education and Environmental Science (17 credits)

CORE (to be taken by all)

ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Visual Impairment
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 241 Program Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 242 Early Intervention Programs for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Program for Student with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Mathematics
ESM 262 Practicum in Secondary School Mathemati (3)

Special Education and Humanities (English Literature) (18 credits)

Elements of Human Geography II (3)
Elements of Physical Environment II (3)
Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

Special Education and Humanities (English/Languages) (18 credits)

Core (to be taken by all)

ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Visual Impairment
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 241 Program Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 242 Early Intervention Programs for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Program for Student with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Environmental Science Take
EEL 302 Environmental Education Methodology (2)

School Subjects for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Language Concentration
ENG 221 English Linguistics (2)
ALL 153 Introduction to African novel (2)
ALL 122 African Languages and Linguistics (2)
ALL 142 African Languages and Literature (2)

Math and Science Concentration
EPM 227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3)
EPM 229 Foundations of Bio & Earth Sciences (3)
TRS 107 African Traditional Religion (2)
ENV 102 Introduction to the Physical and Human (2)

Practice Subjects Concentration Take one of the following:

Art Education
EPP 202 Practical Arts Skills for the Classroom Teacher (4)

Music Education
EPP 218 Listening, Composing and Performing (4)

Home Economics Education
HEE 116 Introduction to Consumer Education (3 credits)

Project Method
EPE 214 Theory & Practice of the Project Method (3)

EPM 230 Technology in Teaching Primary School Maths (3)

EPI 225 Environmental Issues, Policies and Education (3)

Special Education and Math/Science (17–18 credits)

Special Education and Humanities (English Literature) (18 credits)

Core (to be taken by all)

ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Mathematics & Science
MAT 212 Introduction to Algebra (3, pre-req.: MAT 111) or A-Level
MAT 206 Inset Algebra II (3)
MAT 216 Inset Integral Calculus (3)
Optional: Choose one from the following
MAT 222 Calculus II (3, pre-req. MAT 221)
MAT 242 Computing I (3)

Biology
ESS 262 Practicum in Secondary School Science (3)

Choose two from the following:
BIO 211 Cell Biology (3)
BIO 213 Plant Structure & Function (3, pre-req. for BIO 316)

Chemistry – (take all)
ESS 262 Practicum in Secondary School Science (3)
CHE 232 Structure Survey of Functional groups (2)
CHE 234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
CHE 242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
CHE 244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Physics – (take all)
PHY 221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
PHY 222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY 223 Physics Practical 2.2 (1)
ESS 262 Practicum in Secondary School Science (3)
Special Education and Environmental Science (17 credits)

CORE (to be taken by all)

ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)

Visual Impairment
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 241 Program Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 242 Early Intervention Programs for Young Children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Program for Student with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 241 Program Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 242 Early Intervention Programs for Young Children with Mental Retardation

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Program for Student with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

History Take
ELC 321 Social Studies Methods (3)
HIS 213 Agriculture & Industrialization in World Economy 1945 (3)
ELH 290 Theory of Teaching History (3)
Plus any one courses from the following
HIS 202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade C. 1500-C.1800 (3)
HIS 212 Catastrophe and Survival in 20th Century Europe (3)

Special Education and Humanities (Theology and Religious Studies) (17-18 credits)
CORE (to be taken by all)
ETP 200 Teaching Practice (3)
Plus all courses relevant to SPED specialization
EFS 221 Instructional Methods for Students with Visual Impairment (3)
EFS 223 Mobility and Orientation for the Visually Impaired (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 231 School Audiometry and Evaluation of Hearing (3)
EFS 233 Development of Education for the Hearing Impaired (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 241 Program Development for Students with Mental Retardation (3)
EFS 242 Early Intervention Programs for Young Children with Mental Retardation

Learning Disabilities
EFS 251 Remediation Techniques in School Subject for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)
EFS 253 Secondary School Program for Student with Learning Disabilities/Difficulties (3)

Primary Education Teaching subject Cluster:

a. Language concentration
ENG 321 Usage in English Language (2)
EPL 300 Theory and Practice of Second Language (3)

Optional Courses (one out of the following)
EPA 303 Planning and management (3)
ALL 263 The sociology of literature (2)
b. Mathematics & Science concentration
EPM 331 Teaching School Maths (3)
EPM 329 Principles of Physics & Earth Science (3)
c. Social Studies & Religious Education
EPS 323 Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
ELR 302 Practicum in Religious Education (3)
d. Practical subject concentration
i. Art Education
EPP 302 Practical Skills in Planning & Teaching Arts in the Primary School (4)

ii. Music Education
EPP 328 Teaching Methods in Music Education (4)

iii. Home Economics
HED 227 Foundations of Food Preparation & meal Management (3)
Optional course: Choose one from the following:
EPA 303 Planning and Management (3)
Bachelor Of Education
Semester 2
Level 4

Special Education & Environmental Science
Plus 2 credits GEC area 5

Visual Impairment
EFS 321 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS 331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS 341 Society and children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS 351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)

Take
EEL302 Environmental Education Methodology (3)
ENVT311 Environment, Population and Development (3)
ENVT316 Agricultural Development (2)
EFS302 Education of the Gifted and talented (3)

Visual Impairment
EFS231 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS341 Society and children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)

Visual Impairment
EFS231 Communication and Language Development for Students with Visual Impairment (3)

Hearing Impairment
EFS331 Advanced Communication Processes for Students with Hearing Impairment (3)

Mental Retardation
EFS341 Society and children with Mental Retardation (3)

Learning Disabilities
EFS351 Career Education for Students with Learning Disabilities/ Difficulties (3)

Take
ELL302 Environmental Education Methodology (3)
ENVT311 Environment, Population and Development (3)
Optional Course: Choose one
ENVT316 Agricultural Development (2)
EFS302 Education of the Gifted and talented (3)

ETP300 Teaching Practice in Special Education & Second Major (3)

Plus one area course relevant to SPED specialization

ETP 300 Teaching Practice in Special Education & Second Major (3).
EFS403  Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
EFS404  Education of Children with ADHD (3)

**Second Major Content**

Primary Education Teaching Subject Cluster:
1. Reading English/Setswana
   EPL411  Teaching Reading in the Primary Schools (3)
   ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2)
   ENG411  Form, Function and Variation (2)

2. Mathematics and Science
   EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)
   EPM427  Calculus II (3)
   Plus EPE411  Educational Management and Curriculum Development (3)

3. Social Studies and Religious Education
   HIS414  Chiefs, Commoners, and the Impact of Colonial Rule (3)
   TRS315  Sociology of Religion (3)
   ENG320  Botswana Environment (2)
   4. Practical Subjects. Continue with area chosen at level 200
   Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200)
   Semester 1
   **i. Art Education**
   EPP405  Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4)
   **ii. Music Education**
   EPP449  Movement in Music (4)
   **iii. Home Economics**
   HEE311  Clothing Design and Construction (3)
   HEE453  Family Resource Management (3)
   Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200)
   ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2) OR
   ENO411  Form, Function and Variation of English (2) OR
   EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Physics and Earth Science (3) OR
   EPP405  Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4)
   **Economic Education**
   EPP449  Movement in Music (4)
   **Elective Courses (3 credits) a course outside of Special Education and second major.**
   Plus one from the following courses:
   - EFS403  Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
   - EFS404  Education of Children with ADHD (3)
   **Second Major**
   **Biological Science**
   HIS414  Chiefs, Commoners, and the Impact of Colonial Rule (3)
   TRS315  Sociology of Religion (3)
   ENG320  Botswana Environment (2)
   4. Practical Subjects. Continue with area chosen at level 200
   Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200)
   Semester 1
   **i. Science**
   EPP405  Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4)
   **ii. Music Education**
   EPP449  Movement in Music (4)
   **iii. Home Economics**
   HEE311  Clothing Design and Construction (3)
   Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200)
   ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2) OR
   ENO411  Form, Function and Variation of English (2) OR
   EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Physics and Earth Science (3) OR
   EPP405  Integrated Arts Education in Cultural Context (4)
   **Economic Education**
   EPP449  Movement in Music (4)
   **Elective Courses (3 credits) a course outside of Special Education and second major.**
   Plus one from the following courses:
   - EFS403  Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
   - EFS404  Education of Children with ADHD (3)
   **Second Major**
   **Mathematics**
   ESM412  Mathematics and Society (2)
   ESM442  Information and Communication Technology in Mathematics Education (2)
   Plus a course in the following areas (Continue with area chosen at level 200)
   ALL342  African Oral Narratives (2) OR
   ENO411  Form, Function and Variation of English (2) OR
   EPM427  Calculus II (3)
   EPM429  Advanced Concepts in Physics and Earth Science (3) OR
   TRS315  Sociology of Religion (3) and Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule (3)
   Plus: (Choose one)
   - EPE411  Educational Management and Curriculum Development (3)
   - ENV320  Botswana's Environment (3)
   - Special Education and Science (Specials) (3)
   - SPED: CORE (To be taken by all)
   - EFS400  Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)
   - EFS402  Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)
   - Plus one from the following courses:
   - EFS403  Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
   - EFS404  Education of Children with ADHD (3)
   **Second Major**
   **Physical Science**
   EPH412  Educational Management and Curriculum Development (3)
   EPH421  Solid State Physics I (2)
   EPH422  Micro-Computing for Physics (2)
   EPH425  Physics Practicals 4.2 (2)
   Special Education and Environmental Science (15-18) (To be taken by all)
   Plus one from the following courses:
   - EFS400  Project: Contemporary Issues and Concerns in SPED (3)
   - EFS402  Strategies for Helping Families of Students with Disabilities (3)
   - Plus one from the following courses:
   - EFS403  Speech Correction for Students with Communication Disorders (3)
   - EFS404  Education of Children with ADHD (3)
   **Second Major**
   **English**
   ENG411  Form, Function and Variation in English (2)
   ENG431  Introduction to Discourse Analysis (2)
   ELL402  Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)
   Plus one from the following courses:
   - ENS451  Introduction to Semantics (2)
   - ENG443  The African Novel II (2)
   - ENG452  Shakespearean Drama (2)
   - ENG462  Shakespearean Poetry (2)
   - ENG481  Language and Gender (2 credit)
African Languages
ALL423  Bantu and Khoean Languages of Southern Africa (2)
ALL442  Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (2)
ALL443  Oral Poetry in Botswana (2)
ELL402  Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)

Plus one from the following courses:
ALL434  Introduction to Applied Linguistics (2)
ALL435  Language Instruction VIII (2)
ALL454  Children’s Traditions & Dramatics (2)
ALL455  Post Colonial Theory and Literature (2)
ALL456  Introduction to African Thoughts (2)

Theology and Religious Studies
ELR 402  Curriculum Design in Religious Education (3)
TRS 415  Twentieth Century Theologians (2)
TRS 416  Religion and Modernity (2)

Plus one from the following courses
TRS 417  Paul’s Epistles (2)
TRS 418  Contemporary African Philosophy (2)
TRS 426  Religions, Rituals and Sacred Places (2)
TRS 428  Religious Pluralism (2)

Social Studies
ELC 411  Curriculum Development for Social Studies Teachers (3)
ELC 412  Development of Social Studies Instructional Materials (3)

Plus one from the following courses
ELC 422  Social Studies Teacher Preparation (3)
ELC 432  Skills in Map Interpretation (3)
ELC 441  Social Studies and Affirmative Action (3)
ELC 442  Values Education (3)
ELC 462  Social Classroom Environment (3)

HEE 421  Management and Administration of Home Economics Programs (3)
HEE 453  Family Resources Management (3)
HEE 464  Housing and Environment for children (3)

Plus one from the following courses
HEE 460  Clothing for people with special needs (3)
HEE 444  Issues in Food and Nutrition (3)
HEE 448  Food Laws and Regulations (3)

Assessment
Performance in each course shall be assessed by a combination of coursework and two hour final examination in the ratio 1:1, unless otherwise stated in the Course Description.

Award Of Diploma and Degree
Subject to General Regulation 00.852:
To be awarded the Diploma in Special Education a student must complete a minimum of 72 credits; to be awarded the B.Ed (Special Education), a student must complete a minimum of 144 credits.

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATIONAL TECHNOLOGY

1.3 Course Listings
1.3.1  Kindly consult the Department for the list of courses on offer
1.3.2  Courses offered by the Department of Educational Technology have been awarded the Department’s code (EDT) as follows:
EDT310  Producing Instructional Materials for Primary Education (3 credits – Sem 2)
EDT543  Planning and Producing Instructional Materials (3 credits – Sem 1 and 2)
EDT411  Educational Technology Basics (3 credits – Semester 1 Only)

DEPARTMENT OF HOME ECONOMICS EDUCATION

Bachelor of Home Economics Education Degree Programme

Entry Requirements
In addition to satisfying the requirements of General Regulations 20.21, candidates shall be required to have a credit in Biology, and/or Chemistry, or related Science Combination at Ordinary Level or its equivalent. A pass in any Home Economics subject shall be an added advantage.

Alternative Entrance Qualifications
Applicants with a Diploma in Home Economics Education, or a Diploma in Secondary Education from Colleges of Education, shall be admitted into Level 200 or 300 of the Degree Programme on the basis of accumulated credits in the area of Home Economics.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
HEE114  Introduction to Nutrition (3)
HEE115  Family Studies Foundations (3)
BIO122  Anatomy, Physiology and Biochemistry (3)
CHE107  Chemistry Applied to Home Economics (3)
ECO111  Basic Microeconomics (3)
GEC111  Communication and Study Skills I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
HEE116  Introduction to Consumer Education (3)
BIO123  Introduction to Microbiology and Stored Product Entomology (3)

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
HEE229  Child Development: Prenatal through Early Childhood (3)
HEE230  Introduction to Housing (2)
HEE232  Introductory Textiles – (pre CHE 107 (3)
HEE233  Food Science – (pre BIO 123, CHE 107, PHY 162 (3)
HEE234  Social and Psychological Aspects of Clothing (2)
HEE235  Foundations of Home Economics Extension (3)
HEE238  Orientation to teaching Home Economics (3)

Elective courses are to be chosen from any other course outside of the Home Economics programme for which students are eligible.

Semester 2
Core Courses
HEE218  Fundamentals of Clothing Production – (pre HEE 232) (3)
HEE227  Foundations of Food Preparation and Meal Management – (pre HEE 233) (3)
HEE236  Methods of Teaching Home Economics Extension (3)
HEE237  Home Economics Internship (3)
EFR200  Teaching Practice (3)
EFR220  Introduction to Educational Research(3)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
HEE337  Human Development Across the Lifespan (2)
HEE338  Consumer Protection (2)
HEE339  Housing in World Perspective – (pre HEE 230) (3)
HEE367  Research Methods in Home Economics (3)

EFH 201  Counseling and Care of the Elderly (3)

HEE340  Community Nutrition – (pre HEE 114) (3)
HEE343  Food Service Management – (pre-req. HEE 227) (3)
HEE345  Food Technology – (pre-req. HEE 233) (3)
HEE347  Curriculum Development in Early Childhood Education (3)
HEE348  Risk and Resiliency in Child Care Development (3)
HEE355  Fashion Merchandising & Marketing (3)
HEE356  Apparel Design and Product Development (3)
Housing and Services for Families with Special Needs (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
HEE325 Programme Planning in Home Economics Extension (3)
HEE326 Community Mobilization and Group Dynamics (3)
HEE340 Home Economics Instruction in Secondary Schools – (pre HEE 238) (3)
ETP300 Teaching Practice (3)
EFC200 Introduction to Curriculum Development (3)
Options (Offered when available. Please check with department)
HEE342 Nutrition in the Life Cycle – (pre HEE 114) (3)
HEE344 Menu Planning and Design – (pre HEE 233) (3)
HEE346 Food Quality Control – (pre HEE 233) (3)
HEE349 Parenting and Socialization Process in the Family (3)
HEE351 Developmental Assessment and Intervention with Young Children (3)
HEE 352: Theory and practice in interacting with young children (3)
HEE357 Apparel Production (3)
HEE 354 Textile Design and Product Development (3)
HEE358 Fashion and Society (3)
HEE361 Housing Policy and Management (3)
HEE363 Interior Space Design– (pre HEE 360) (3)
HEE364 Residential Space Planning – (pre HEE 362, HEE 363) (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
HEE441 Research Project – (pre HEE 340) (3)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3)
Options (Offered when available. Please check with department)
HEE443 Clinical Nutrition – (pre HEE 114) (3)
HEE445 Quantity Food Production – (pre HEE 227, HEE344) (3)
HEE451 Public Policy for Children and Families (3)
HEE454 Family Counseling (3)
HEE455 Textiles and Technology – (pre HEE 232) (3)
HEE459 Tailoring – (pre HEE 357) (3)
HEE462 Housing and the Social Environment (3)
HEE464 Housing and Environments for Children (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
HEE421 Management and Administration of Home Economics Programmes – (pre-HEE 340) (3)
HEE442 Managing Extension Programmes (3)
Options (Offered when available. Please check with department)
HEE444 Issues in Food and Nutrition – (pre HEE 114, HEE 345) (3)
HEE447 Food Product Development – (pre HEE 233) (3)
HEE448 Food Laws and Regulations – (pre HEE 345) (3)
HEE450 Issues and Trends in Early Childhood Education (3)
HEE453 Family Resource Management (3)
HEE456 Fashion Merchandising, Analysis and Strategies (3)
HEE458 Fashion Merchandising Presentation (3)
HEE461 Commercial Space Planning – (pre HEE 362, HEE 363, HEE 364) (3)
HEE463 Community Housing Assessment (3)

Assessment
Student’s performance in each course shall be assessed in accordance with the provision of the University General Regulations 00.8. Courses offered in other faculties/departments shall be governed by their relevant regulations.

Progression from semester to semester
Progression from semester to semester shall be in accordance with provisions of the University General Regulation 00.9.

Award of Degree
Shall be in accordance with provision of the University General Regulations 00.85, subject to completion of 6 credits of Teaching Practice (School Specialization) or 6 credits of Internship.

DEPARTMENT OF LANGUAGES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES EDUCATION

Programmes
Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Humanities
Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Postgraduate Diploma in Education

Entry Requirements
The normal Entry Requirements shall be as stipulated in the University of Botswana General Regulations – Entrance Qualifications


Bed (Secondary): Humanities Specialisation
Semester 5
Level 3
African Languages and Literature
ALL321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)
ALL322 The Structure of Meaning (2)
ALL341 Introduction to Literary Theory (2)
ENG311 Modern English Grammar (2)
ENG317 African Drama (2)
ENG373 Botswana Literature (2)
English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
EL301 Curriculum and policy issues in language education (3)

Environmental Education
EEL301 Introduction to Environmental Education (2)

Home Economics
HEE229 Childcare and Development (3)
HEE238 Orientation to Teaching Home Economics (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses
ELM301 Theory of Moral Education (3)
Religious Education Courses
ELR301 Theory of Religious Education (3)

Social Studies
ELC300 Education for Self-reliance (3)
ECL301 Gender issues in Social Studies (3)

Theology and Religious Studies
TRS301 Christology (2)
TRS302 Missionaries in the 19th Century South Africa (2)

Semester 6
Level 3
African Languages and Literature
ALL323 Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (2)
ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2)
ALL343 Introduction to African Popular Theatre (2)

English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses
ELL301 Curriculum and policy issues in language education (3)

Social Studies
ELC300 Education for Self-reliance (3)

Home Economics
HEE340 Home Economics instruction in Secondary School (3)

Moral Education Curriculum Courses
ELM302 Practice of Moral Education (3)

Religious Education Curriculum Courses
ELR302 Practice of Religious Education (3)

Social Studies
ELL302 The Teaching of Literature at Secondary School (3)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ELC311</td>
<td>Multicultural Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC312</td>
<td>Conflicts and Conflicts Resolutions (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theology and Religious Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS314</td>
<td>Christian Moral Theology (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS315</td>
<td>Sociology of Religion (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optional Course for Semester 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>African Languages and Literature</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL332</td>
<td>Language Instruction V (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL351</td>
<td>Politics and Southern African Poetry (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL352</td>
<td>Emergent Literary Genres (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL341</td>
<td>Epic Performance in Africa (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL334</td>
<td>Introduction to Modern Theories inGrammatical Analysis (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL335</td>
<td>Language Instruction VI (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL354</td>
<td>African Oral Literature and the Media (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL355</td>
<td>The Contemporary Setswana Novel (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG312</td>
<td>Milton (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG343</td>
<td>Modern African Poetry (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG324</td>
<td>Twentieth Century American Literature (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG327</td>
<td>Practical Drama (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG321</td>
<td>Usage in English (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG341</td>
<td>Introduction to Socio-linguistic (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Economics</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE344</td>
<td>Menu Planning and Design (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE346</td>
<td>Food Quality Control (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE355</td>
<td>Fashion Merchandising and Marketing (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE357</td>
<td>Apparel Production (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Social Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC321</td>
<td>Social Studies Methods (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC322</td>
<td>Evaluation in Social Studies (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theology and Religious Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS317</td>
<td>Theodicy: The Co-existence of God and Evil (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS318</td>
<td>Beginning Biblical Hebrew II (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS319</td>
<td>Philosophy of Religion (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS320</td>
<td>Theories of Truth (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS321</td>
<td>Metaphysics III (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS322</td>
<td>History of Christianity in Southern Africa (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS325</td>
<td>Foundational Structures of Islam (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS303</td>
<td>Creation and the Bible (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Semester 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4</th>
<th>Core courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Research Project Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELP490</td>
<td>Research Methodology in Languages and Social Sciences Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL421</td>
<td>African Languages and Literature (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL422</td>
<td>A Socio-linguistic Study of Southern Africa (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL441</td>
<td>World Literature in Setswana Translation (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG421</td>
<td>Approaches to Syntax (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG441</td>
<td>Introduction to Pragmatics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ELL401 Foundations of Multicultural Literacy Education (3)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Economics</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE337</td>
<td>Apparel Design and Product Development (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moral Education Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELM401</td>
<td>Teaching Moral Education in Secondary Schools (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Religious Education Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELM402</td>
<td>Teaching Religious Education in Secondary Schools (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL401</td>
<td>Foundations of Multicultural Literacy Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Social Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC401</td>
<td>Socialisation Issues (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC403</td>
<td>Economic Cooperation &amp; Integration (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theology and Religious Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS401</td>
<td>New Religious Movements (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS402</td>
<td>Religion and Politics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optional Courses for Semester 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>African Languages and Literature</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL431</td>
<td>Introduction to Psycho-linguistics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL432</td>
<td>Language Instruction VII (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL451</td>
<td>Studies in African Aesthetics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL452</td>
<td>Popular Culture in Africa (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL453</td>
<td>Women's Literature in Botswana (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG412</td>
<td>Introduction to Shakespeare (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG413</td>
<td>The African Novel I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG471</td>
<td>Introduction to Literary Stylistics (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL403</td>
<td>Literacy, education, culture (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL404</td>
<td>Reader-response Theories in the Secondary School Classroom (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environmental Education</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEL401</td>
<td>Environmental Conservation (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Economics</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE338</td>
<td>Consumer Protection (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE339</td>
<td>Housing in World Perspective (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE348</td>
<td>Risk and Resiliency in Child (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Religious Education Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELM492</td>
<td>Evaluation of Moral Education Curriculum in Botswana Secondary Schools (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELM493</td>
<td>Contemporary Moral Issues in Religion Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL403</td>
<td>Literacy, education, culture (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ELC421** Global Perspectives and Materials in Social Studies (3)
**ELC431** Civic Education (3)
**ELC451** Resource Management in Southern Africa (3)
**ELC461** Human Rights Issues (3)
**Theology and Religious Studies**
**TRS403** The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (2)
**TRS405** Intermediate Hebrew I (2)
**TRS406** Intermediate Arabic I (2)
**TRS407** Islam's Socio-cultural, legal and Political Structure (2)
**TRS409** African Christian Theologies (2)
**TRS411** Politics and Development of Biblical Thought (2)
**TRS412** Ecumenical Theology (2)
**TRS413** Hinduism (2)

**Semester 8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4</th>
<th>Core courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Research project courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELP491</td>
<td>Research Project in Languages and Social Sciences Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>African Languages and Literature</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL423</td>
<td>Bantu and Khoi-San Languages of Southern Africa (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL442</td>
<td>Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL443</td>
<td>Oral Poetry in Botswana (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG411</td>
<td>Form, Function and Variation in English (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG431</td>
<td>Introduction to Discourse Analysis (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>English Language and Literature Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL402</td>
<td>Interdisciplinary Approaches to Literacy Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Economics</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE421</td>
<td>Management and Administration of Home Economics Programmes (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moral Education Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELM402</td>
<td>Curriculum Design in Moral Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Religious Education Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELM402</td>
<td>Curriculum Design in Religious Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setswana Language and Literature Curriculum Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL402</td>
<td>Interdisciplinary Approaches in Literacy Education (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Social Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC411</td>
<td>Curriculum Development for Social Sciences Teachers (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC404</td>
<td>Development of Social Studies Instructional Materials (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theology and Religious Studies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS415</td>
<td>Twentieth Century Theologians (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS416</td>
<td>Religion and Modernity (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optional Courses for Semester 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One course (2-3 credits) to be selected from the menu below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>African Languages and Literature</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL434</td>
<td>Introduction to Applied Linguistics (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Faculty of Education

Core (3)
Principles of Management, MGT100

Basic Microeconomics, Core (3)

Semester 1
Level 100:
Religious Pluralism (2)
TRS428
Religions Rituals and Sacred Places (2)
TRS426
The Theology of the Reformation (2)
TRS425
Buddhism (2)
TRS424

TRS423
History of Philosophy IV (2)
Empiricism (2)
TRS422
and Contemporary (2)
TRS419
Intermediate Hebrew I (2)
TRS418

TRS417
Paul’s Epistles (2)

Level 300: Semester 6
Marketing and Management Specialization

Level 100:
Semester 2

Level 200:
Semester 3
ELB201 Introduction to Business Education, Core (3)
FIN200 Business Finance, Core, 3

MKT100 Principles of Marketing, Core (3)

ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics, Core (3)

STA100 Introduction to Accounting, Core (3)

STA102 Math for Business & Social Sciences II, Core (3)

GEC112 Communication & Study Skills 2, GEC (2)

GECD121 Computing & Information Skills 2, GEC (2)

GEC122

Level 300:
Semester 5
[Marketing and Management Specialization]

ELB301 Practice of Business Education, Core (3)

GEC300 Human Resource Management, Core (3)

ELC300 Education and Self Reliance, Optional (3) Elective (3)

MKT301 Pricing Strategy, Core (3)

MKT301 Pricing Strategy, Core (3)

MGT303 Entrepreneurship & New Business Formation, Core (3)

BIS304 Management Information System, Core (3)

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulation 00.8.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from Semester to Semester shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per the General Regulations 00.85

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND SCIENCE EDUCATION

1.0 General Information
1.0.1 The Department of Mathematics and Science Education offers courses to students in Degree and Non-Degree Teacher Education Programmes in the following teaching subjects:
• Biology
• Chemistry
• Physics
• Computer Studies
• Mathematics

1.0.2 Courses are also offered in the following specialized areas:
• Science/Mathematics/Computer Studies and Society
• Information and Communication Technology and the School Mathematics/Science Curriculum
• Theory and Practice of Teaching Computer Studies/Mathematics/Science

1.0.3 Regulations, course details and/or pre-req. are listed for the following Programmes:
• Bachelor of Education (Science)
• Bachelor of Education (Secondary)
• Post Graduate Diploma in Education

1.0.4 The Bachelor of Education Programme in Science commenced in 1984 and now prepares graduates to become Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science (Biology, Chemistry and Physics) teachers.

1.0.5 The Bachelor of Education Programme in Secondary Education was designed to accommodate both the diploma of the Department and the Colleges of Education.
It began in 1996 and in 1998 replaced the Bachelor of Education Programme in Science Education, which began in 1987. The PGDE is offered as a teaching qualification to holders of Bachelor of Science Degrees to prepare aspiring Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science teachers for their teaching careers.

1.0.6 Optional courses may be taken in other departments by students who have met the appropriate programme requirements.

1.0.7 Courses are assessed in a variety of ways, including written assignments, tests and projects as approved by the Senate.

1.0.8 The Department reserves the right not to offer optional courses in a given semester.

1.1 Bachelor of Education Degree in Science

The aim of the Bachelor of Education Combined Major Degree Programme in Science is to significantly contribute, in collaboration with the Faculty of Science, to national manpower development by producing high quality Computer Studies, Mathematics and Science teachers for the national education sector. Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 00.0 and 20.00 and to the Faculty of Education Special Regulations, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Mathematics and Science shall apply:

1.2 Entrance Requirements

1.2.1 Admission into Level One of the Programme shall be governed by General Regulation 20.2.

1.2.2 Minimum requirements are a BGCSE (Advanced Level, or equivalent qualifications to the approval of the relevant Head of Department, be awarded credits and exempted from the Faculty of Science Education courses listed below; Biology, Chemistry, Computer Studies, Mathematics and Physics. During the Programme, each student will be required to take thirteen (13) of these courses.

1.3.1 Levels One and Two (Semesters 1 to 4) In Level 1, students shall follow a common Level One Programme with the Bachelor of Science students. In Level Two, all Education courses are core courses and the Department prescribes four of these to be taken by all students.

1.3.2 Levels Three and Four (Semesters 5 to 8)

a) In Level Three, the Department prescribes four core courses for all students and one optional course which students can choose from a menu of Computer Studies Education, Mathematics Education or Science Education courses in line with the proposed areas of specialization in the Department.

b) In Level Four, the Department prescribes two core courses for all students and two optional courses, which students can choose from a menu of Computer Studies Education, Mathematics Education or Science Education courses as a follow-up to choices in Level Three.

1.4 Levels One and Two

Level One

Core Courses (6 courses/26 credits)

Semester 1

MAT111 Introduction to Mathematics I (4)

Plus:

Two of the following courses:

BIO111 Principles of Biology (4)

CHE101 General Chemistry I (4)

PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3) and

PHY119 Physics Practical I.1 (1)

Semester 2

MAT122 Introduction to Mathematics II (4)

Plus:

Two of the following courses:

BIO102 Diversity of Animals and Plants (4)

CHE102 General Chemistry II (4)

PHY121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (2) and:

PHY129 Physics Practicals 1.2 (1)

General Education Courses (4 courses/8 credits)

GEC121S Computer and Information Skills I (2)

GEC122 Computer and Information Skills II (2)

GEC115S Communication and Study Skills I (2)

GEC112S Communication and Study Skills II (2)

Level Two

Core Courses (6 to 10 courses/16 to 20 credits)

The two teaching subjects taken and passed at Level One shall be selected as follows:

a) Courses for the Major teaching subject are to be selected from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed below;

b) One 3-credit course per semester is to be selected from the approved Faculty of Science Minor teaching subjects listed below.

Option A

Students shall select courses from any two of the following teaching subjects: Biology; Computer Science; Chemistry; Physics.

Option B

Students shall take courses in Pure Mathematics and 1 of the following teaching subjects: Applied Mathematics; Biology; Chemistry; Computer Science; Physics.

Semester 3

Biology

BI0212 Genetics (3)

BI0214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (3)

Chemistry

CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)

CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

CHE232 Structure and survey of Functional Groups (2)

CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

Computer Science

CSI241 Structured Programming I (4)

CSI261 Machine Organization (3)

Applied Mathematics

MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)

MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Pure Mathematics

MAT211 Intro. Set and Number Theory (3)

MAT221 Calculus I (3)

Physics

PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)

PHY212 Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)

PHY219 Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)

Semester 4

Biology

BI021 Cell Biology (3)

BI0213 Plant Structure and Function (3)

Chemistry

CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2)

CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)

CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Computer Science

LIS208 Principles of Data Communication (3)

CS125 Operating Systems Concept (3)

Applied Mathematics

MAT242 Computing I (3)

MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Pure Mathematics

MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)

MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Physics

PHY211 Electricity and Magnetism (2)

PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)

PHY229 Physics Practicals 2.2 (1)

Core Courses (5 courses/15 credits) Students shall select courses from the approved Faculty of Education courses listed below:

Semester 3

EFF100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3) plus:
One of the following courses:

- ESE261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Computer Studies (3)
- ESM261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Mathematics (3)
- ESS261 Basic Teaching Methods in Secondary School Science (3)

Semester 4

- EFF220 Historical, Philosophical and Sociological Foundations of Education (3) plus:

One of the following courses:

- ESE262 Practicum in Secondary School Computer Studies Teaching (3)
- ESM262 Practicum in Secondary School Mathematics Teaching (3)
- ESS262 Practicum in Secondary School Science Teaching (3)

Winter Course

- ETP200 Teaching Practice I (3)
  - General Education Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
  - Students shall choose GECs from the University-wide menu.
  - 1.5 Levels Three and Four (Semesters 5 to 8)
  - 1.5 Level Three
  - Core Courses (6 to 9 courses/16 to 18 credits)

- ETP300 Teaching Practice II (3)
  - Winter Course

Semester 5

- Biology
  - BIO316 Plant Physiology (3)
  - BIO317 Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (3)
  - BIO307 Biochemistry (3)
  - BIO216 General Microbiology (3)

- Chemistry
  - CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2)
  - CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
  - CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (3)
  - CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamics and Electrochemistry (2)
  - CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (1)

- Computer Science
  - CS341 Introduction to Software Engineering (3)
  - CS351 Web Technology and Applications (3)
  - CS361 Computer Architecture (3)

- Mathematics
  - MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
  - MAT321 Real Analysis I (3) plus:
  - One of the following courses:
    - MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
    - MAT232 Vector Calculus (3)

- Physics
  - PHY311 Mechanics (2)
  - PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
  - PHY319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)
  - PHY314 Electronics I (2)

Semester 6

- Biology
  - BIO311 Plant Systematics (3)
  - BIO215 Principles of Ecology (3)
  - BIO306 Developmental Biology (3)
  - BIO318 Chordates (3)

  - Chemistry
    - CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)
    - CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
    - CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3)
    - CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2)
    - CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)

  - Computer Science
    - CS362 Database Concepts (3)
    - CS392 Human Computer Interaction (3)
    - CS393 Multimedia Computing (3)

  - Mathematics
    - MAT324 Differential Equations (3)
    - Plus: Two of the following courses:
      - MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)
      - MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)
      - MAT424 Computing II (3)
      - MAT444 Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)

  - Physics
    - PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
    - PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
    - PHY323 Vibrations, Waves and Optics (2)
    - PHY329 Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

  - Semester 6
    - Students will choose one of the following:
      - ESB362 Advanced Practicum in School Biology Teaching (3)
      - ESC362 Advanced Practicum in School Chemistry Teaching (3)
      - ESE362 Advanced Practicum in School Computer Studies Teaching (3)
      - ESP362 Advanced Practicum in School Physics Teaching (3)
      - ESM362 Advanced Practicum in School Mathematics Teaching (3) and:
      - ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)

Winter Course

- ETP300 Teaching Practice II (3)
  - Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)

Semester 6

- Biology
  - BIO421 Entomology (3)
  - BIO427 Evolution (3)
  - BIO431 Plant Response to Environmental Stress (3)
  - BIO450 Research Project (6)

  - Chemistry
  - CHE421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3)
  - CHE431 Heterocyclic Chemistry, Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3)
  - CHE441 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3)

  - Computer Science
  - Students shall select two of the following:
    - CSI421 Operating Systems (3)
    - CSI423 Systems Programming (3)
    - CSI441 Software Engineering (3)

  - Mathematics
    - MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
  - MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3)

  - Physics
    - PHY411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
    - PHY412 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)
    - PHY419 Physics Practicals 4.1 (2)

  - Semester 8
  - Biology
    - BIO416 Immunology (3)
    - BIO423 Exercise Physiology (3)
    - BIO424 Vertebrate Structure (3)
    - BIO430 Post-Harvest Physiology (3)
    - BIO434 Plant Ecology (3)
    - BIO450 Research Project (Cont) (6)

  - Chemistry
Students shall select two of the following:
CHE412 Sample Handling and Biochemical Analysis (3)
CHE432 Secondary Metabolites and Bionomolecules (3)
CHE442 Advanced Physical Chemistry II (3)

Mathematics
Students shall select two of the following:
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT412 Number Theory (3)
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT426 Partial Differential Equations (3)

Pharmacy
Students shall select two of the following:
PHY421 Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY422 Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY429 Physics Practicals 4.2 (2)

Semester 7
Core Courses (2 courses/5 credits)
Students shall choose one course from the approved Faculty of Education courses listed below:
ESE461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Computer Studies (3)
ESM461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Mathematics (3)
ESB461 Critical Debates in Biology Education (3)
ESC461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge (3)
ESP461 Advanced Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)
Plus one of the following courses:
ESE441 Enrichment Topics in Computer Studies Education (2)
ESM441 Introduction to ICT in Mathematics Education (2)
ESS441 ICT for the Science Teacher Science (2)

Optional Courses (3 courses/6 credits)
Students shall choose one of the following:
ESE471 Contemporary Issues in Computer Studies Education (2)
ESM471 Contemporary Issues in Mathematics Education (2)
ESS471 Contemporary Issues in Science Education (2)
ESR481 Research Project in Mathematics/Science Education (2)

Semester 8
Students shall choose two of the following:
ESE412 Introduction to Web Design, Development and Publishing for Teachers (2)
ESE442 ICT and e-Learning (2)
ESM412 Mathematics and Society (2)
ESM442 Information and Communication Technology in Mathematics Education II (2)
ESS412 Introduction to the History and Philosophy of Science (2)

Mathematics
Students shall select two of the following:
ESM442 Further Issues in ICT for the Science Teacher (2) or:
Approved options from other DMSE courses Plus One of
EFC 400 Curriculum Theory and Instruction (3)
EFF420 Contemporary Issues in Teacher Education in Botswana (3)
General Education Courses (4 courses/9 credits)
Students shall select GECs from the University wide menu.
E elective Course (1 course/2 credits) One elective course is to be chosen from any course offered outside the Department of Mathematics and Science Education for which students are eligible.

1.6 Assessment
1.6.1 Courses offered by the Department of Mathematics and Science Education shall normally be assessed through continuous assessment (CA) and final examination. Courses offered in other Faculties/Departments shall be governed by their relevant regulations.
1.6.2 Continuous assessment shall take a variety of forms including written assignments, tests, practicals, presentations and reports.
1.6.3 Continuous assessment shall normally comprise a minimum of 3 pieces of assessed work. The components of continuous assessment shall be equally weighted.
1.6.4 Courses which include a final examination in their assessment shall be examined by a 2-hour paper.
1.6.5 The ratio of continuous assessment to final examination shall be 1:1.
1.6.6 The overall grade in a course shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.84.

1.7 Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.9.

1.8 Award of Degree
The Degree shall be awarded in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.85, subject to completion of 6 credits of Teaching Practice.

2.0 Bachelor of Education in Secondary Education (Biology, Chemistry, Mathematics, Physics)
For all Regulations governing the Bachelor of Education Degree in Secondary Education, consult the Handbook of the Department of Languages and Social Sciences Education.

2.1 Level Two Core Courses (8 to 10 courses/24 to 29 credits)
Students shall select two teaching subjects from the following subjects:
- Applied Mathematics
- Biology
- Chemistry
- Mathematics
- Physics

Semester 3
Applied Mathematics
ESM201 INSET Introductory Mechanics I (3)
ESM214 INSET Introductory Computer Studies (3)

Biological
ESB201 Introduction to Biological Principles and Processes for Teachers I (3)
ESB211 Introduction to Biological Principles and Processes for Teachers II (3)

Chemistry
ESC201 Introductory Chemistry for Teachers (3)
ESC211 The Chemistry of Selected Elements for Teachers (3)

Mathematics
ESM203 INSET Algebra I (3)
ESM213 INSET Differential Calculus (3)

Physics
ESP201 Mechanics for Teachers (3)
ESP211 Waves and Optics for Teachers (3)

Ancillary Mathematics for the Sciences
ESM221 Pre-Calculus for Science Teachers (3)

Semester 4
Applied Mathematics
ESM204 INSET Introductory Mechanics II (3)
ESM211 INSET Introductory Mathematical Statistics (3)

Biology
ESB204 Introduction to Diversity in the Plant Kingdom for Teachers (3)
ESB214 Introduction to Diversity in the Animal Kingdom for Teachers (3)

Chemistry
ESC204 Chemical Equilibria for Teachers (3)
ESC214 Chemical Energetics and Kinetics for Teachers (3)

Mathematics
ESM206 INSET Algebra II (3)
ESM216 INSET Integral Calculus (3)

Physics
ESP204 Magnetism and Electricity for Teachers (3)
ESP214 Electronics and Modern Physics for Teachers (3)

Ancillary Mathematics for the Sciences
ESM222 Calculus for Science Teachers (3)

On completion of Level Two, students will be at a level equivalent to Level One of the Bachelor of Science Programme in two of the following:
BIO111/112; CHE101/102; MAT11/112; PHY111/112
General Education Courses (3 courses/7 credits)
Students shall select GECs from the University wide menu.
2.2 Level Three Core Courses (6 to 10 courses/16 to 20 credits)
Students shall select courses based on their pre-determined teaching subjects from the approved Faculty of Science courses listed
below:

Semester 5
Applied Mathematics
MAT387 Mechanics for Teachers I (3)
MAT389 Linear Programming and Game Theory for Teachers (3)

Biology
BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
BIO214 Introduction to Mammalian Physiology (3)

Chemistry
CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2)
CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Mathematics
MAT381 Calculus for Teachers I (3)
MAT383 Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)
PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
PHY212 Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)
PHY219 Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

Semester 6
Applied Mathematics
MAT384 Computing for Teachers (3)
MAT388 Mechanics for Teachers II (3)
BIO213 Plant Structure and Function (3)
BIO215 Principles of Ecology (3)

Chemistry
CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2)
CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1)
CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2)
CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1)

Mathematics
MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)

Physics
PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY229 Physics Practicals 2.2 (1)

Core Courses: Faculty of Education (2 courses/6 credits)

School Science II (3) plus:
ESR362 Introduction to Research Methods in Mathematics and Science Education (2)
Optional Courses (1 course/2 credits)

Semester 6
Students shall choose one course from the following:
ESM312 Philosophy and Psychology of Mathematics Teaching (2)
ESM372 Mathematical Problem Solving (2)
ESS352 Human Impact on the Environment (2)
ESS372 Development and Evaluation of Investigative Work in School Science (2)

General Education Courses (2 courses/4 credits)
Students shall choose GECs from the University-wide menu.

Semester 7
Biology
BIO316 Plant Physiology (3)
BIO317 Comparative Vertebrate Zoology (3)

Chemistry
CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2)
CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2)
CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (1)

Mathematics
MAT483 Real Analysis for Teachers (3)
MAT485 Number Theory and Abstract Algebra for Teachers (3)

Physics
PHY311 Mechanics (2)
PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

Semester 8
Biology
Any two of:
BIO306 Developmental Biology (3)
BIO311 Plant Systematics (3)
BIO314 Conservation Biology (3)

Chemistry
CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2)
CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1)
CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2)
CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II(1)

Mathematics
MAT324 Differential Equations (3) plus:
One of the following courses:
MAT482 Geometry for Teachers II (3)
MAT484 Introduction to Probability and Statistics for Teachers (3)

Physics
PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
PHY329 Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

Semester 7
Core Courses
Faculty of Education
(1 course/3 credits)

Students shall choose one of the following courses:
ESB461 Critical Debates in Biology Education (3)
ESC461 Further Issues in Chemistry Pedagogical Content Knowledge (3)
ESM461 Advanced Teaching Methods in School Mathematics (3)
ESP461 Advanced Pedagogic Strategies for School Physics (3)

Optional Courses (3 courses/6 credits)

Students shall choose one of the following:
ESM441 Introduction to Information and Communication Technology in Science Education (2)
ESS471 Contemporary Issues in Science Education (2)
ESR481 Research Project in Mathematics/Science Education (2)

Semester 8
Students shall choose one of the following:
ESM412 Mathematics and Society (2)
ESM442 Information and Communication Technology in Mathematics Education II (2)
ESS412 Introduction to the History and Philosophy of Science (2)
ESS442 Information and Communication Technology in Science Education II (2) plus:
1 optional course offered by the Department of Educational Foundations.

General Education Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
Students shall select GECs from the University-wide menu.

Elective Courses (2 courses/6 credits)
Students shall select two electives from any courses offered outside the Department of Mathematics and Science Education for which they are eligible.

3.0 Post Graduate Diploma in Education

For all Regulations governing the PGDE, consult the Handbook of the Department of Educational Foundations. All students shall take eight Foundation courses and four courses from their respective teaching specializations, which shall be one of Biology, Chemistry, Computer Studies, Mathematics or Physics. The Diploma will thus comprise twelve (12) courses all of which are core plus a 3 - credit Winter Course of Teaching Practice.
DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICAL EDUCATION, HEALTH & RECREATION
Bachelor of Education Degree in Physical Education

Entry Requirements
The normal entry requirements shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 20.20 and Departmental Regulations ED 9.2 and ED 9.3.

Level 100

Semester 1
Core Courses
- PHR130 Introduction to Volleyball (2)
- PHR131 Introduction to Swimming (2)
- PHR135 Introduction to Adapted Physical Education (2)
- PHR136 Practical Coaching and Officiating Techniques in Sports and Games (2)
- PHR138 Foundations of Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2)
- EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
- GEC121 Computer and Information Skills I (2)
- GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- Elective Course (2 credits)

Semester 2
Core Courses
- PHR139 Athletics: Track (2)
- PHR140 Athletics: Field (2)
- PHR141 Recreation and Leisure (2)
- PHR142 Organization and Administration of Physical Education and Sports (2)
- EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)
- GEC122 Computer and Information Skills II (2)
- GEC112 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- Elective Course (2 credits)

Level 200

Semester 3
Core Courses
- PHR260 Netball (2)
- PHR262 Introduction to Skills and Techniques of Tennis (2)
- PHR264 Human Anatomy Applied to Sports and Games (2)
- PHR268 Teaching Physical Education in Secondary Schools (2)
- PHR269 Motor Learning and Human Performance (2)
- PHR210 Psychology of Sport (2)
- GEC Courses (4 credits)
- 1 Elective (2 credits)

Semester 4
Core Courses
- PHR261 Introduction to Skills and Techniques of Soccer (2)
- PHR263 Table Tennis (2)
- PHR265 Accident Prevention, First Aid and Care of Sports Injuries (2)
- PHR266 Human Physiology Applied to Sports and Games (2)
- PHR267 Teaching Physical Education In Pre- Primary School (2)
- GEC Courses (6 credits)
- Elective Course (2 credits)

Level 300

Semester 5
Core Courses
- PHR300 Advanced Swimming (2)
- PHR302 Softball (2)
- PHR313 Nutrition and Sports Performance (2)
- PHR314 Biomechanics (2)

Optional Courses
- PHR305 Physical Education Teaching Methods (2)
- PHR306 Community Recreation (2)
- PHR307 Introduction to Biochemistry of Exercise and Sport (2)
- PHR309 Adapted Physical Education I (2)
- PHR310 Principles of Sport Management (2)
- GEC Courses (5 credits)

Semester 6
Core Courses
- PHR301 Gymnastics and Body Management Skills (2)
- PHR303 Basketball (2)
- PHR304 Test and Measurement in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2)
- ETP200 Teaching Practice

Optional Courses
- PHR308 Scientific Basis of Coaching and Officiating (2)
- PHR312 Leisure and Tourism Development (2)
- PHR315 Adapted Physical Education II (2)
- PHR316 Sport Marketing (2)
- PHR317 Sport and Culture (2)
- ETC300 Introduction to Curriculum Development (3)
- GEC Courses (5 credits)

Level 400

Semester 7
Core Courses
- PHR400 Track and Field Athletics and Theory of Games and Sports (2)
- PHR402 Badminton (2)
- PHR404 Cricket (1)
- PHR409 Research Methods in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2)
- PHR411 Research in Physical Education/Sport/Recreation I Project I (2)
- EFS404 Education of Children with Attention Deficit/Hyper-Activity Disorders (3)
- PHR412 Research in Physical Education/Sport/Recreation II Project II (2)

Optional Courses
- PHR406 Physiology of Exercise I (2)
- PHR415 Facility Management (2)
- PHR416 Kinesiology (2)
PHR419 Supervision of School Physical Education (2)
PHR420 Leisure and Youth (2)
PHR422 Sociology of Sport (2)
PHR424 Movement and Creative Dance Technique (2)

Semester 8
Core Courses
PHR401 Advanced Volleyball (1, pre-req. PHR130)
PHR403 Handball (1)
PHR405 Hockey (1)
EHF 407 Consultation Schools and Community Settings (3)
EFP300 Teaching Practice (3)

Optional Courses
PHR407 Motor Development and Movement Experiences for Young Children (2)
PHR408 Mechanical Analysis of Sports and Games (2)
PHR413 Issues in Physical Education, Sport and Recreation (2)
PHR414 Prevention and Care of Sports Injuries (2)
PHR417 Physiology of Exercise II (2)
PHR418 Psychological Basis of Physical Activity (2)
PHR421 Principles and Methods of Coaching (2)
PHR423 Sports Medicine (2)
Elective Course (2 credits)

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Regulation 00.8.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall be as per General Regulation 00.9.

Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.85

DEPARTMENT OF PRIMARY EDUCATION

B.Ed (Primary Education); 4 years

Entry Requirements
(a) Applicants with a Diploma in Primary Education or equivalent shall enter at Level 300 of the degree programme. Relevant work experience in an educational setting shall be an added advantage.
(b) Holders of a Certificate in Primary Education or its equivalent plus BGCSE with at least three grades at a minimum of grade C shall be admitted into Level 200 of the programme. Relevant work experience in an educational setting shall be an added advantage.
(c) Holders of a Certificate in Primary Education or its equivalent who do not meet the requirements above but who have experience in an educational setting will be admitted into Level 100 of the degree programme. Applicants seeking admission through this route shall submit recommendation letters and proof of experience in teaching and evidence of prior learning.

Level 100
Semester 1
Major: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)
ENV101 Introduction to the Physical & Human Environments I (2)
EPE100 Introduction to Algebra (3)
EPE102 Introduction to Science (3)
EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
GEC111E Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
GEC121E Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2, GEC)

Semester 2
Major: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)
EPE101 Algebra and its applications (3, pre-req. EPE100)
EPE103 Principles of Science (3)
EPE114 Introduction to Education in Botswana (3) 1 Elective Course (3)
GEC112E Communication and Study Skills II (2, GEC)
GEC122E Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)

In Level 200-400, in addition to the major Primary Education, choose one of the following areas of concentration to make the second major:
1. Languages concentration
2. Maths & Science concentration
3. Social Studies/Religious Education concentration
4. Special Topics concentration
5. Practical Subjects concentration

Level 200
Semester 3
Major I: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)
EPE215 Fundamental Issues in Developmental Psychology (3)
EPE211 Language Across the Curriculum (3) Or EPE212: Introduction to Language Arts (3)
(Take EPE211 if not chosen the language concentration).

Major II: Choose one of the following areas of concentration. This choice will be followed throughout the course of the degree programme.

1. Languages concentration
ALL141 Introduction to African Oral Literature (2)
ALL121 Introduction to the study of language and linguistic (2)
ENG211 The pronunciation of English (2)

1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFA100 School Organisations (3)
EPA203 Theories of Leadership & Supervision (3)

3. Social Studies/Religious Education concentration
ELC202 Social Studies and Nation building (3)
EPS200 Introduction to Social Studies (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (take ONE of the following areas as a teaching subject)
English
ENG211 The pronunciation of English (2)
Setswana
ALL121 Introduction to the study of language and linguistics (2) and ALL141 Introduction to African Oral Literature (2)

Mathematics
EPM226 Algebra and trigonometry I (3)
Science
EPM229 Foundations of Biology & Earth Sciences (3) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Social Studies
EPS200 Introduction to Social Studies (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition choose any 2 special topic areas from the following list:
Guidance/Counselling
EHF201 Counselling over a life span (3)
Infant Education
EPI228 Foundations of Early Childhood Education (3)
Environmental Education
EPI224 Foundations of Environmental Education (3)

Special Education
EFS101 Introduction to Exceptional Children (3)
5. Practical Subjects Concentration (take ONE of the following areas as a teaching subject)
English
ENG211 The pronunciation of English (2)
Setswana
ALL121 Introduction to the study of language and linguistics (2) and ALL141 Introduction to African Oral Literature (2)
Mathematics
EPM226 Algebra and trigonometry I (3)
Science
EPM229 Foundations of Biology & Earth Sciences (3)

Social Studies
EPS200 Introduction to Social Studies (2) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, choose ONE of the following areas:

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF200 Group Work in Counselling (3)

Infant Education
EPI229 Theories and Principles of Infant Education (3)

Environmental Education
EPI225 Environmental Policies, Issues and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Special Education
EFS104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of disabilities (3)

Elective Courses (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG221 English Linguistics (2)

Setswana
ALL142 The study of Drama (2)

Mathematics
EPM227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3, pre EPM 226)

Science
EPM228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)

Social Studies
EPS201 Theories & Practice of Values in Education (2)

Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF200 Group Work in Counselling (3)

Infant Education
EPI229 Theories and Principles of Infant Education (3)

Environmental Education
EPI225 Environmental Policies, Issues and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Special Education
EFS104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of disabilities (3)

Elective Courses (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG221 English Linguistics (2)

Setswana
ALL142 The study of Drama (2)

Mathematics
EPM227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3, pre EPM 226)

Science
EPM228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)

Social Studies
EPS201 Theories & Practice of Values in Education (2)

Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF200 Group Work in Counselling (3)

Infant Education
EPI229 Theories and Principles of Infant Education (3)

Environmental Education
EPI225 Environmental Policies, Issues and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Special Education
EFS104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of disabilities (3)

Elective Courses (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG221 English Linguistics (2)

Setswana
ALL142 The study of Drama (2)

Mathematics
EPM227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3, pre EPM 226)

Science
EPM228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)

Social Studies
EPS201 Theories & Practice of Values in Education (2)

Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF200 Group Work in Counselling (3)

Infant Education
EPI229 Theories and Principles of Infant Education (3)

Environmental Education
EPI225 Environmental Policies, Issues and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Special Education
EFS104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of disabilities (3)

Elective Courses (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

English
ENG221 English Linguistics (2)

Setswana
ALL142 The study of Drama (2)

Mathematics
EPM227 Introduction to functions and the domains (3, pre EPM 226)

Science
EPM228 Foundations of Chemistry and Physics (3)

Social Studies
EPS201 Theories & Practice of Values in Education (2)

Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

Guidance/Counselling
EHF200 Group Work in Counselling (3)

Infant Education
EPI229 Theories and Principles of Infant Education (3)

Environmental Education
EPI225 Environmental Policies, Issues and Education for Sustainable Development (3)

Special Education
EFS104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of disabilities (3)

Elective Courses (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)
**English**

- **ENG311** Modern English Grammar (2)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Setswana**

- **ALL221** Sound systems in African language  
  (2)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Mathematics**

- **EPM326** Introduction to probability and statistics (3)
- **EPM328** Principles of Chemistry and Physics (3)
- **EPM330** Science Education (3)

**Science**

- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)
- **EPM328** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
- **EPM331** Multicultural Education (3)  
  1 Elective Course (3)

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**English**

- **EPL300** Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
- **ENG321** Usage in English Language (2)

**Setswana**

- **ALL222** The structure of words in African Languages (2)
- **EPL312** Breakthrough to literacy (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

**Mathematics**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

**Science**

- **EPM329** Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Social Studies**

- **EPS323** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)  
  1 Elective Course (3)

In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in semester 1

**Guidance/Counselling**

- **EFH305** Teaching Guidance & Counselling (3)  
  In Schools & Other Settings (3)

**Infant Education**

- **EPI321** Curriculum Development in Early Childhood Education (3)

**Mathematics/Science Concentration**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)  
  Pre EPM 327

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**English**

- **EPL300** Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
- **ENG321** Usage in English Language (2)

**Setswana**

- **ALL222** The structure of words in African Languages (2)
- **EPL312** Breakthrough to literacy (3)

**Mathematics**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)

**Science**

- **EPM329** Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Social Studies**

- **EPS323** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)  
  In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1

**Languages Concentration**

- **ALL222** The structure of words (2)
- **ENG311** Modern English Grammar (2)
- **EPL312** Breakthrough to Literacy (3)  
  Pre EPL 312

**Optional courses (Choose one):**

- **ENG321** Usage in English (2)
- **ENG361** Morphology of English (2)
- **EPA300** Action Research (2)
- **EPA301** Leadership styles & organizational behaviour (3)
- **ALL253** The sociology of literature (2)

**Mathematics/Science Concentration**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)  
  Pre EPM 331
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)  
  Pre EPM 327

**Optional courses (Choose one):**

- **EPM302** Geometry for Primary school teachers (3)
- **EPS300** Culture & Citizenship Education (3)
- **EPS323** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)
- **ELC311** Multicultural Education (3)  
  Pre EPM 327

4. Special Topics Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**Mathematics**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)  
  Pre EPM 327

**Science**

- **EPM329** Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Social Studies**

- **EPS323** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)  
  In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1

**Special Education**

- **EFS251** Remediation Techniques in school subjects with learning Disabilities (3)  
  Pre EFS 251

5. Practical Subjects Concentration (continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**English**

- **EPL300** Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
- **ENG321** Usage in English Language (2)

**Setswana**

- **ALL222** The structure of words in African Languages (2)
- **EPL312** Breakthrough to literacy (3)

**Mathematics**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)  
  Pre EPM 327

**Science**

- **EPM329** Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Social Studies**

- **EPS323** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)  
  In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1

**Languages Concentration**

- **EPL300** Theory and Practice of Second Language Teaching (3)
- **ENG321** Usage in English Language (2)

**Setswana**

- **ALL222** The structure of words in African Languages (2)
- **EPL312** Breakthrough to literacy (3)

**Mathematics**

- **EPM331** Teaching School Mathematics (3)
- **EPM327** Introduction to Limits and Tangents (3)  
  Pre EPM 327

**Science**

- **EPM329** Principle of Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Social Studies**

- **EPS323** Social Studies and Pedagogy (3)  
  In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1

**Optional courses (Choose one):**

- **EFS240** Curriculum and instructional methods or students with mild to moderate Mental Retardation (3)
- **ALL331** Introduction to translation (2)
- **EFF301** Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)

1. **Mathematics/Science Concentration**

**EPM426** Introduction to Derivatives and their application (3)  
  Pre EPM 426

**EPM429** Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

- **EFS240** Curriculum and instructional methods or students with mild to moderate Mental Retardation (3)
- **EFP301** Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)

1. **Mathematics/Science Concentration**

**EPM426** Introduction to Derivatives and their application (3)  
  Pre EPM 426

**EPM429** Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

- **EFS240** Curriculum and instructional methods or students with mild to moderate Mental Retardation (3)
- **EFP301** Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)

**Social Studies/Religious Education**

**Concentration**

- **EPS401** The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)
- **ELC421** Global Perspectives & Materials in Social Studies (3)  
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):

- **HIS201** African Cultures & Civilizations (3)
- **ELR301** Theories of Religious Education (3)
- **EPI442** Environmental Conservation Strategies I (3)
4. Special Topics Concentration
(continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**English**
- ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (2)
- ALL321 The Structure of the Sentence (2)
- Mathematics
  - EPM426 Introduction to Derivatives and their Applications (3, Pre EPM327)
- Science
  - EPM429 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)

**Social Studies**
- EPS401 The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)
  In addition, continue with the two special topic areas chosen in Semester 1 Guidance/Counselling
- EPH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)

**Infant Education**
- EPI431 Management of Early Childhood Programme (3)

**Environmental Education**
- EPP442 Environmental Conservation Strategies I (3)

**Special Education**
- EFS350 Developmental Approach and Behavioural Management of students with learning disabilities (3, pre EFS101)
  Optional courses (Choose one):
  - EFS240 Curriculum and instructional methods for students with mild to moderate Mental Retardation (3)
  - EFP301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)
- EFS351 The Contemporary Setswana Novel (3, pre EFS101)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

5. Practical Subjects Concentration
(continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**English**
- ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (2)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Setswana**
- ALL321 The Structure of the Sentence (3)
  Mathematics
  - EPM426 Introduction to Derivatives and their applications (3)
- Science
  - EPM429 Advanced Concepts in Biology and Earth Science (3)

**Social Studies**
- EPS401 The Role of Democracy in the Teaching of Social Studies (3)
  In addition, continue with the area chosen in Semester 1
  
  **Levels 400**
  **Semester 8**
  **Major I Primary Education (15-18 Credits)**
  - GECE41 Special Education (3) - for students who have not chosen EFS101
  - EFS404 Education of Children with Attention Deficit Hyper Disorder (3) - for students who have chosen EFS101
  - EPE442 Research Project - continues from Semester 1 - (2)
  - EFF410 Philosophy of Education (3) Major II: Primary Education (15-18 Credits)

  Continue with the area of concentration chosen in Semester 1.

1. **Languages Concentration**
- ENG411 Form, Function and Variation English (2)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

2. **Mathematics/Science Concentration**
- EPM427 Calculus II (3, pre EPM426)
  Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

3. **Social Studies/Religious Education Concentration**
- EPM428 Advanced Concepts in Physics and Chemistry (3) Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

- EPS300 International Organisations & Governance (3)
  Optional courses (Choose one): TRS315 Sociology of Religion (3)
  EPA300 Action Research (2)
  HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule on Botswana, Lesotho et Swaziland (3)
  ENV116 Agricultural Development (2)

4. **Special Topics Concentration**
(continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**English**
- ENG411 Form, Function and Variation English (2)
- Setswana
  - ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2)
  - Plus 1 Elective Course (3)

**Mathematics**
- EPM427 Calculus II (3, pre EPM426)
- EPM428 Advanced Concepts in Physics and Chemistry (3)
- EPS400 Contemporary Issues in Teaching Primary Social Studies (3)
- EPS403 International Organisations & Governance (3)
  Optional courses (Choose one):
  - TRS315 Sociology of Religion (3)
  - EPA300 Action Research (2)
  - HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners and the Impact of Colonial Rule on Botswana, Lesotho et Swaziland (3)
  - ENV116 Agricultural Development (2)

5. **Practical Subjects Concentration**
(continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**Environmental Education**
- EPP443 Environmental Conservation Strategies II (3)

**Special Education**
- EFS351 Career Education for students with learning difficulties (3, pre EFS101)

6. **Special Topics Concentration**
(continue with the area chosen as a teaching subject in Semester 1)

**Assessment**
- All courses except EPE214, EPA300, EPA304, EPA419, EPA431, EPA433, EPA434, EPA405, EPA406 and EPE442 shall be assessed as stipulated in general regulation 00.8. EPE214 would be assessed by practical presentations. For EPA304 assessments shall be based on tests/assignments (40%) and the research proposal (60%). EPE442 assessments shall be based on the research report only. EPA419 and EPA300 would be assessed by tests/ assignments and Project Work. EPA331 & EPA431 would be assessed by assignments and presentations. Failure without a good cause to submit continuous assessment work within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty
of percentage marks. Failure to submit work within 48 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 50% percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.85

B.Ed (Educational Management); 4 years.

Entry Requirements
(a) Applicants with a Diploma in Educational Management shall enter at Level 300 of the degree programme. Relevant work experience in an educational setting shall be an added advantage.
(b) Applicants with a Diploma in Education or its equivalent shall be admitted into either Level 200 or 300 of the Degree Programme on the basis of accumulated credits in the area of educational management.
Relevant work experience in an educational setting shall be an added advantage.
(c) Holders of a Teaching Certificate plus BGCSE with at least three grades at a minimum of grade C will enter at level 100.
Relevant work experience in an educational setting shall be an added advantage.
(d) Holders of a Teaching Certificate or its equivalent who do not meet the requirements above but who have experience in an educational setting will be admitted into level 100. Applicants seeking admission through this route shall submit recommendation letters and proof of experience in teaching and evidence of prior learning.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPA101 Introduction to Educational Planning (3)
EPA110 Introduction to Resources Management (3)
EFA100 School Organization (3)
GEC111E Communication and Study Skills I (2, GEC)
GEC112E Communication and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFH100 Introduction to the History of Education (3)
EFH110 Introduction to the History of Botswana (2)
EFH120 Foundations of Guidance and Counselling (3)

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPE114 Introduction to Education in Botswana (2)
EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)
EFA200 Managing Quality Schools (3)
GEC112E Communications and Studies Skills II (2, GEC)
GEC112E Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2, GEC)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFH104 Helping Relationship Skills (3)
EFP101 Foundations of Developmental Psychology (3)
EFS104 Introduction to Procedures for Assessment of Disabilities (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPA200 Personnel Policies and Decision Making (3)
EPA203 Theories of Leadership & Supervision (3)
MGT100 Principles of Management (3 credit)
1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFH201 Counselling over a Life Span (3)
MGT202 Small Business Management (3)
EFS210 Historical, Philosophical & Sociological Foundations of Education (3)

Level 200
Semester 4
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPA201 Classroom Management (3)
EPA202 Managing Educational Resources (3)
MGT200 Organizational Design & Development (3)
1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFH200 Group Work in Counselling (3)
EPR200 Introduction to Measurement in Education (3)
EFS210 Introduction to Sociology of Education (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EFP410 Philosophy of Education (3)
EPA302 Introduction to Educational Research (3)
EPA303 Planning & Management in Education (3)
1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
MGT300 Human Resource Management (3)
EFS301 Cognitive Development (3)
EDT310 Instructional Material Production (2)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPA304 Advanced Investigation in Education (3)
EPA301 Leadership Styles & Organizational Behaviour (3)
DAS302 Principles of Human Resource Management (3)
1 Elective Course (3)

Optional courses (Choose one):
EFP301 Adult-Child Interaction and Cognitive Development (3)
EPA300 Action Research (3)
EFS310 Citizenship, Human Rights, Democracy, and Education: Critical Issues (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPE411 Computer Applications in Primary Schools (2)
EPE412 Research Projects (2)
EPA400 Staff Development in Education (3)
EPA402 Contemporary Issues in Education Management (e.g., HIV/AIDS, Sexual Abuse, Access, Equity, Gender), (2)
1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
MGT400 Strategic Management (3)
EFH400 Substance Abuse Counselling (3)

Level 400
Semester 8
Core Courses (15 – 18 Credits)
EPE412 Research Projects (2)
EPE411 Educational Management & Curriculum Development (3)
MGT410 Negotiations and Conflict Management (3)
EPA406 Policy Development, Analysis, Implementation and Evaluation in Education (3)
1 Elective Course (3)
Optional courses (Choose one):
EFP420 Contemporary Issues in Teacher Education in Botswana (3)
EFC400 Curriculum Theory and Instruction (3)

Assessment
All courses except EPE214, EPA300, EPA304, EPE419, EPM331, EPM431, EPP302, EPA405, EPA406 and EPE442 shall be assessed as stipulated in general regulation 00.8. EPE214 would be assessed by practical presentations. For EPA304 assessments shall be based on tests/assignments (40%) and the research proposal (60%). EPE442 assessments shall be based on the research report only. Tests/assignments and Project Work would assess EPE419 and EPA300. EPM331 & EPM431 would be assessed by assignments and presentations. Failure without a good cause to submit continuous assessment work within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of percentage marks. Failure to submit marks within 48 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 50% percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9
Award of Degree
The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.85
Faculty of ENGINEERING & TECHNOLOGY

ARCHITECTURE AND PLANNING
CIVIL ENGINEERING
ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING
INDUSTRIAL DESIGN AND TECHNOLOGY
MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

DEAN
Prof. A.B. Ngowi, BSc. (Dar es Salaam), MSc (Chalmers), Ph.D (Witwatersrand), MCIOB, Pr.CPM.

J. Chuma, BEng (Nottingham), M.Sc, (Essex) Ph.D, (Essex) IEEE,IEE,BIE

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
Mrs. B. Barrows, BA (UB) MSc, HRM (Cardiff)

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING COORDINATORS
J. Marumo, BSc. (Florida A&amp;M), PGD (UMIST) ASS.

ASSISTANT INDUSTRIAL TRAINING COORDINATOR
Mr. R. Sehurutshi, BEng (Hons), MOMS UK, AVT – Industrial (Germany)
The Faculty of Engineering and Technology (FET) is dedicated to the following aims:

1. To produce high quality engineering graduates who can adapt to the work environment and discharge their duties to the satisfaction of their employers;
2. To be responsive to the needs of the industry in all sectors of the Botswana economy. This will be accomplished mainly by providing study programmes designed to meet the need for highly trained manpower in required areas of technology and the environment;
3. To respond to the needs of industry through research, consultancy, advisory and related services;
4. To maintain a continuous dialogue with industry and other relevant bodies to determine and fulfill any needs which may be raised by industry from time to time;
5. To provide access, with proper theoretical and practical backing, to recent developments in the technology sector and to prepare graduates for professional responsibilities;
6. To prepare FET graduates to pursue further studies in their relevant Engineering and Technology disciplines.

Academic Departments and Programmes

The Faculty of Engineering and Technology consists of five Departments:
- Department of Architecture and Planning
- Department of Civil Engineering
- Department of Electrical Engineering
- Department of Industrial Design and Technology
- Department of Mechanical Engineering

The Faculty of Engineering and Technology offers MPhil/PhD programmes which are interdisciplinary. The Faculty also offers undergraduate programmes as follows:

- The Departments of Civil Engineering, Electrical Engineering, and Mechanical Engineering offer Bachelor of Engineering Degree programmes in Civil Engineering, Construction Engineering and Management, Geomatics, Mining Engineering, Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Mechanical Engineering, and Industrial Engineering. The Department of Industrial Design and Technology offers Bachelor of Design Degree programmes in Industrial Design, and Design and Technology Education. The Department of Architecture offers Bachelor of Architecture Degree programme in Architecture, and a Bachelor of Science Degree in Urban and Regional Planning. Details of the requirements for admission into the various programmes are outlined in the following pages under each relevant Department.

110 Special Regulations for the Diploma in Engineering

Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply to students in the following programmes:

- Diploma in Mining Engineering.

11.10 Entrance Requirements

11.11 The minimum entrance qualifications to the Diploma programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent, with credits in Mathematics and either Physics or Physical Science or any other subject as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.12 Alternative entry qualifications may be considered at the discretion of the Departmental Board. Mature entrants with evidence of relevant prior learning shall be admitted according to the General Regulations 00.52.

11.13 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Engineering Certificate may be admitted directly into the second year of the Diploma Programme.

11.20 Programme Structure

11.21 Diploma programmes will normally extend over 4 semesters of full-time study, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.22 The courses offered in the programme shall be as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.23 Industrial and/or site visits may be arranged to supplement learning, as specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.24 The availability of optional courses offered shall be at the discretion of the Department.

11.30 Assessment

11.31 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination marks shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Special Departmental Regulations.

11.32 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 1:1:2.

11.33 For continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to assignment and/or laboratory report marks shall be 1:1.

11.34 The final project report must be submitted to the co-ordinator at least 2 weeks before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.

11.35 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per working day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

11.36 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

11.37 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

11.38 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by a 3-hour, end-of-semester examination.

120 Industrial Training Regulations for the Diploma in Engineering

Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations 000 and 100, the following Special Regulations shall apply to students in the following programmes:

- Diploma in Mining Engineering.

12.10 Programme Structure

12.11 A student shall undergo a single period of supervised Industrial Training for 8 weeks and shall be undertaken at a time specified by the Faculty.

12.12 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

ITD100 Industrial Training (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course)

12.13 During the course of Industrial Training a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

12.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and Regulation 12.13 above, a student who receives a final warning during the course of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Disciplinary Regulations.

12.20 Assessment

12.21 During the course of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited at least once at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

12.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

12.22a) Continuous assessment by the industrial based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology;

12.22b) Industrial Training report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.

12.23 ITD100 shall be assessed as based on Regulations 120.22 a) and 120.22 b). The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report shall be 1:2.

12.24 A student who has an incomplete grade shall be allowed to complete Industrial Training at a time recommended by the Faculty.

210 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Engineering

Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

21.10 Entrance Requirements

21.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering Degree shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 20.20.
21.12 The normal minimum requirements for admission to Level 200 of the Degree programme shall be satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) Degree of the Faculty of Science with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics.

21.13 Applicants in possession of an appropriate 'A' level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and Physics may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.

21.14 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree programme.

21.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the appropriate Degree programme.

21.20 Programme Structure

21.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.

21.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following core courses:

Semester 3

- DTR211 Workshop Technology I (2)
- MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
- CCB211 Engineering Materials (2)
- CCB212 Statics (2)
- EEB211 Electrical Principles I (2)
- MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3, pre-req. MAT111, MAT122)

Semester 4

- DTR221 Workshop Technology II (2)
- MMB221 Manual and Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)
- MMB222 Dynamics (2)
- CCB221 Strength of Materials (2)
- EEB221 A.C. Circuit Principles II (2)
- MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3, pre-req. MAT291)

21.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Engineering programme shall undergo two periods of Industrial Training: 8 weeks and 20 weeks as specified in Faculty Special Regulation 22.10.

21.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulations 00.2124. Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.

21.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the relevant Department.

21.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree programme in the fifth semester.

21.27 A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work or seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation period.

21.30 Assessment

21.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, laboratory reports/field reports.

21.32 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

21.33 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 1:1:2.

21.34 For continuous assessment, the ratio of marks for tests to assignments and/or laboratory marks shall be 1:1.

21.35 Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least two weeks before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.

21.36 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

21.37 Courses with a practical component or drawing included in a written examination shall be examined by end of semester examination of duration 3 hours.

21.38 Industrial Training shall be assessed as specified in the Faculty Special Regulation 22.20.

21.39 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

21.40 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reasons shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

220 Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Engineering

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students in the following programmes:

- Bachelor of Engineering (Civil Engineering)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering)
- Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical Engineering)
- Bachelor of Engineering (General).

22.10 Programme Structure

22.11 A student shall undergo two periods of supervised Industrial Training: 8 weeks between Levels 200 and 300, and 20 weeks starting from the beginning of Semester 2 of Level 400 including part of the vacation between Levels 400 and 500.

22.12 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

- ITB200 Industrial Training I (duration 8 weeks, 4 credits, core course)
- ITB420 Industrial Training II (duration 20 weeks, 10 credits, core course).

22.13 During the course of Industrial Training, a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

22.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and Regulation 22.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the course of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

22.20 Assessment

22.21 During the course of the Industrial Training period, each student shall be visited twice at the location of placement to be assessed by the Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

22.22 A student's performance will be assessed by means of:

- 22.22a) Continuous assessment by the industrial based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology;

- 22.22b) Industrial Training report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period;

- 22.22c) Oral Presentation.

22.23 ITB200 shall be assessed as based on Regulations 22.22 a) and 22.22 b). The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report shall be 1:2.

22.24 ITB420 shall be evaluated as specified in Regulation 22.22. The ratio of marks for continuous assessment to Industrial Training report or oral presentation shall be 1:2.1.

230 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design

Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

23.10 Entrance Requirements

23.11 Admission into Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.

23.12 Admission into Level 100 of the BDes Degree Programme shall be minimum requirement of a BGCSE with a pass in English and a C grade in Mathematics and Physics and any one of Chemistry or Biology or a minimum of Grade BB in Science Double Award.

23.13 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in General Admission Regulations.

23.14 Admission into Level 200 of the BDes Degree Programme shall be satisfactory completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of Science General Degree of the Faculty of Science with at least C- (C minus) grades in
Mathematics and Physics.

23.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate A level qualification with at least D grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics, Chemistry or Design and Technology may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme.

23.16 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

23.17 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

23.20 Degree Structure

23.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.

23.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 3

DTB210 Elements of Design (3)
DTB211 Workshop Technology I (2)
MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
CCB211 Engineering Materials (2)
CCB212 Statics (2)
EEB211 Electrical Principles I (2)

Semester 4

DTB220 Designing Artifacts (3, pre-req. DTB210)
DTB221 Workshop Technology II (2, pre-req. DTB211)
MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)
MMB222 Dynamics (2)
CCB221 Strength of Materials (2)
DTB 222 Graphics (2)

23.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall undergo industrial training as specified under Departmental Special Regulations.

23.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulation 00.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.

23.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the Department.

23.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree Programme in the third semester.

23.27 A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

23.30 Assessment

23.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports/field reports.

23.32 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

23.33a A Design Project shall be assessed through documentation (folio, report and diary) of the Design Process and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

23.33b A Major Make and Evaluate Project shall be assessed through Product and its Evaluation and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

23.33c A Design and Make Project shall be evaluated as specified in Regulations 23.33a and 23.33b.

23.34 The Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least 2 weeks before the beginning of the end-of-semester examinations.

23.35 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit value of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and 1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

23.36 Courses having a practical component or drawing that include a written examination shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 3 hours.

23.37 Industrial Training shall be assessed as specified in the Faculty Special Regulation 35.20.

23.38 Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

23.39 A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

23.40 A student absent from a test with documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

23.41 A student absent from a test with documented valid reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

350 Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design Degree Programme

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following programmes:

- Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)
- Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)

35.10 Structure

35.11 A student shall undergo a period of supervised Industrial Training for 7 weeks between Levels 300 and 400.

35.12 In addition to the above, a student doing Industrial Design shall undergo a second period of supervised Industrial Training for 20 weeks starting from the beginning of semester.

2 of Level 400 including part of the vacation between Levels 400 and 500.

35.13 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:

DTB300 Industrial Training (duration 7 weeks, 3 credits, core course).

IDB400 Industrial Training for Industrial Design (duration 20 weeks, 10 credits, core course).

35.14 During the course of Industrial Training a student shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.

35.15 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.

35.20 Assessment

35.21 During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.

35.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:

35.22a Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.

35.22b Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.

35.22c Oral Presentation.

35.23 DTB300 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22a and 35.22b. The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training period.

35.24 IDB400 shall be assessed as based on regulation 35.22. The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook shall be 1:2.

35.25 DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE AND PLANNING

Departmental Regulations for Undergraduate Programmes General Provisions

Subject to General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programmes and Qualification Titles

The Department of Architecture and Planning offers programmes in Architecture and Urban and Regional Planning, leading to the following qualifications:

A Single Major Programme leading to a Bachelor’s Degree in Architecture for students specialising in Architecture.

A Single Major Programme leading to a Bachelor of Science Degree in Urban and Regional Planning for students following the Urban and Regional Planning Programme...
Aim and Objectives of Undergraduate Programmes

Aim

The aim of the URP programme is to train students to enable them to function and work in the fields of human settlement development and urban and regional planning. The Architecture programme is designed to equip students with the academic knowledge and skills they will need for a successful professional career in architecture. The Programmes have been carefully developed to be broad based including courses from the faculties of Science, Engineering, Humanities, Social Sciences and Business that are uniquely related to the cultural heritage of Botswana. These Programmes will benefit immensely from each other and also from other departments within The Faculty.

Objectives

The cores of the Architecture Programme are consecutive courses in design, consisting of studio work augmented by lectures and seminars in humanities, technology, environment and professional practice. At the end of the programme students should be able to:

- Deal creatively with architectural problems on analytical, conceptual, and developmental levels;
- Undertake more challenging formal architectural principles that will develop in them an aptitude for functional and programmatic accommodation, structural and technological integration, energy conscious design, and materials and methods of construction; and
- Carry out independent judgments rooted in an ever-changing context of architectural thought.

Entrance Requirements

Architecture Programme

Admission to the BArch Degree programme shall be as stipulated in General Academic Regulation 20.2. In addition to 1.4.1.1, applicants for admission to Level 100 of the programme must take courses in Physics, Chemistry and mathematics in the Faculty of Science. Applicants in possession of an appropriate ‘A’ level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics, Chemistry, Art or Design and Technology may be exempted from taking Physics, Chemistry and Mathematics in the Faculty of Science. Applicants who possess the normal entry requirements listed in the General Academic Regulation 20.2 but who do not satisfy 1.4.1.2 or 1.4.1.3 may be admitted to the programme if they: a) have assessable experience in artistic and/or design activities and/or b) submit a portfolio of drawings and design exercises (not exceeding 10) with the application. Urban and Regional Planning Programme Urban and Regional Planning (URP) is offered as a Single Major Programme only. Students who wish to register for URP must satisfy any one of the following requirements:

- Successful completion of Semesters 1and 2 in the Faculty of Science;
- Successful completion of relevant courses in Semesters 1 and 2 in the Faculty of Social Sciences;
- Appropriate passes in relevant Advanced Level subjects or equivalent qualifications from a recognised University or equivalent institution, which may be considered on their own merit. Satisfying the requirements listed above does not guarantee automatic entry into the Programme. Students with the above qualifications must also take and pass at least 2 courses in each semester from the following course listings:

  Semester 1
  **Core courses**
  - STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences
  - STA111 Elementary Statistics
  - STA116 Introduction to Statistics
  - MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I
  - DCS101 Introduction to Computing Systems
  **Semester 2**
  **Core courses**
  - STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II
  - STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research and Elements in Probability
  - MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II
  - DCS102 Data Processing and Communication and:

  Take and pass at least 2 courses in each semester from the following:

  Semester 1
  **Electives**
  - BIO111 Principles of Biology
  - CHE101 General Chemistry I
  - ENV101 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments I
  - PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves
  - PHY119 Physics Practical’s 1.1
  - ECO111 Basic Microeconomics
  - SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principle:
  - SOC122 Dominant Sociological Themes and Perspectives or:
  - SOC123 Social Structure of Society

  Semester 2
  **Electives**
  - BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants
  - CHE102 General Chemistry II
  - ENV102 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments II
  - PHY121 Electricity, Magnetism and Modern Physics
  - PHY129 Physics Practical’s 1.2
  - ECO112 Basic Microeconomics
  - SOC131 Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology or:
  - SOC132 Introduction to the Study of Human Societies or:
  - SOC133 Social Change in Botswana

  Optional Courses
  - URP200 Introduction to Town Planning (2)

- Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:

  Semester 3
  **Core Courses**
  - ARB211 Architectural Design I (6)
  - ARB212 Building Materials & Construction III (2)
  - ARB222 Building Materials & Construction IV (2)
  - ARB214 Energy Efficiency in Buildings (2)
  - ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting (2)
  - CCB217 Theory of Structures I (2)

  Semester 4
  **Core Courses**
  - ARB220 Internship I (2)
  - ARB221 Architectural Design II (6)
  - ARB223 History of Architecture I (2)
  - ARB224 History of Architecture II (2)
  - CCB227 Theory of Structure II (2)
  - URP207 Land Surveying and Cartography + Lab (3)

- Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:

  Semester 5
  **Core Courses**
  - ARB311 Architectural Design III (6)
  - ARB312 Building Services I (2)
  - ARB322 Building Services II (2)
  - CCB317 Theory of Structures III (2)
  - LAW263 Foundations of Engineering Law (2)

  Optional Courses
URP202 Infrastructure Planning & Management (20) (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
ARB320 Internship II (2)
ARB321 Architectural Design IV (6)
ARB313 History of Architecture III (2)
ARB322 History of Architecture IV (2)
CCS327 Theory of Structures IV (2)
ARB325 Interior Design (2)

Level 400 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 7
Core Courses
ARB411 Architectural Design V (6)
ARB412 Building Systems I (2)
ARB422 Building Systems II (2)
LAW452 Construction Law (2)
URP305 Research Methods (2)
ARB415 Landscape Design (2)

Optional Courses
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (2)
ENV484 Urbanisation & the Environment (2)

Level 500 shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 8
Core Courses
ARB420 Internship III (2)
ARB421 Architectural Design VI (6)
ARB413 Philosophy of Architecture I (2)
ARB423 Philosophy of Architecture II (2)
ARB424 Professional Practice I (2)
ARB514 Professional Practice II (2)

Optional Courses
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (2)

Semester 9
Core Courses
ARB511 Design Project I (8)
CCS519 Building Economics (2)
ARB524 Project Management (2)

Optional Courses
URP307 Land and Property Evaluation (2)
URP314 Land and Property Management (2)

Semester 10
Core Courses
ARB521 Design Project II (8)
ARB522 Urban & Rural Design Practice (2)
GEC Courses
GEC273 The State & Society (2)
GEC277 Law & Society in Botswana (2)
A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

Programme Structures
Urban and Regional Planning Programme
Urban and Regional Planning (URP) is a Single Major Programme offered to students registered in the Faculties of Science and Social Sciences, subject to Departmental Regulations 1.4.2.1 and 1.4.2.2. In accordance with Regulation 00.62, the URP Programme shall consist of 15 credits of both core and optional courses. Courses URP 312, URP 404 and URP 411 jointly satisfy Faculty Regulation 23.47.

Level 100
URP courses are not offered at this level

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
URP200 Introduction to Town Planning (2)
URP201 Introduction to Drawing Techniques (4)
URP202 Infrastructure Planning and Management (2)
URP203 Urban and Regional Economics (2)
URP204 Planning and History of Settlements (2)

Optional Courses
URP205 Environmental Planning (2)
URP206 Urban Morphology (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
URP207 Land Surveying and Cartography (3)
URP208 Site Planning (4)
URP209 Transport Planning and Management (2)
URP210 Planning Techniques (3)
URP211 Internship I (1)

Optional Courses
URP212 GIS for Planners (3)
URP213 Globalisation and Sustainable Cities (2)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
URP301 Urbanisation and Planning (2)
URP302 Neighbourhood Planning (4)
URP303 Housing Studies (2)
URP304 Urban Planning (2)
URP305 Research Methods and Techniques (2)

Optional Courses
URP306 Remote Sensing for Planners (3)
URP307 Land and Property Valuation (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
URP308 Planning Policy and Politics (2)
URP309 Urban Land Use Planning (2)
LAW353 Planning and Environmental Law (3)
URP311 Settlement Upgrading (4)
URP312 Project Directing Readings (1)
URP313 Internship II (1)

Optional Courses
URP314 Land and Property Management (2)
URP315 Building Technology and Materials (2)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
URP400 Philosophy and Planning (2)
URP401 Rural Land Use Planning (4)
URP402 Transport Engineering for Planners (2)
URP403 Urban Governance and Management (2)
URP404 Project Research Methodology (3)

Optional Courses
URP405 Gender and Physical Planning (2)
URP406 Public Participation in Physical Planning (2)

Semester 8
Core Courses
URP407 Planning and Social Theory (2)
URP408 Development Impact Assessment (2)
URP409 Settlement Development Planning (4)
URP410 Project Planning and Management (2)
URP411 Project Report (3)

Optional Courses
URP412 Planning Negotiation and Contracting (2)
URP413 Urban Agriculture (2)

Assessment and Examination
Performance in Urban and Regional Planning courses shall be evaluated through a combination of continuous assessment and final examination in the ratio of 2:3 for theory courses and 1:1 for practical courses. The duration of examinations will be 2 hours for all the courses irrespective of the number of credits. Courses URP211, URP312, URP313, URP404 and URP411 shall be assessed by continuous assessment only. Courses URP 401 and URP 409 shall be assessed by submissions of planning projects (part I and part II), for Architecture courses, continuous assessment shall be based on tests and/or design assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports. The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3. A project or design shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 2:1:1. Where a course includes a written final examination, the duration of the examination will be 2 hours for all the courses irrespective of the number of credits. Overall performance in a course shall be as specified in the General Regulation 00.84. There shall be no supplementary examinations. A student who fails a core or pre-req. or co-requisite course shall retake the course when offered again. A student who has failed an optional/Elective/general education course may retake the course or its equivalent.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall be accordance with General Academic
Presentation shall be 1:2:1. For both Confidential Report to Internship Concept. Therefore the assessment ratio for concept paper and an oral presentation.

Confidential reports from the organisation mean: c) Professional Training visits by an assessor; d) Students will be assessed through supervised Professional Training (Internship).

ARB220, ARB320 and ARB420. Professional Training course codes are: (Civil) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

24.10 Entrance Requirements
24.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

24.20 Programme Structure
24.21 The Programme for the Degree in Civil Engineering will be a Single Major Programme that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Civil Engineering consisting of courses shown below. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 300 Civil Engineering Semester 5 Core Courses
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3, pre-req. MAT 292) CCB313 Surveying (3) CCB311 Geomechanics I (3) CCB315 Environmental Engineering (2) In addition, all students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses: CCB312 CAD for Civil Engineers (pre-req. MMB 221) CCB316 Principles of Mining Engineering CCB314 Engineering Geology

Semester 6 Core Courses (all 3 credits)
CCB321 Structural Analysis (pre-req. CCB212, CCB221) CCB324 Construction Materials (pre-req. CCB211) CCB322 Fluid Mechanics and Hydraulics CCB323 Construction Principles

In addition, all students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses: CCB325 Geomechanics II (pre-req. CCB 311) CCB329 Architectural Design MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV (pre-req. MAT391)

Level 400 Civil Engineering Semester 7 Core Courses
CCB411 Structural Design (3) CCB412 Water Engineering (3, pre-req. CCB315) CCB413 Traffic and Highway Engineering (3, pre-req. CCB313) CCB414 Geotechnics (2, pre-req. CCB311) In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses: CCB415 Civil Engineering Construction (pre-req. CCB323) CCB416 Structural Steelwork (pre-req. CCB321, co-requisite CCB411) URP200 Introduction to Town Planning CCB418 Hydrology and Water Resources (pre-req. CCB322, CCB412) CCB419 Engineering Surveying (pre-req. CCB313)

Semester 8 I TB420 Industrial Training [Vacation, 20 weeks], (10, core, pre-req. ITB 200)

Level 500 Civil Engineering Semester 9 Core Courses
CCB514 Project I (3) CCB511 Structural Engineering (2, pre-req. CCB321) CCB512 Construction Management I (2) CCB515 Transportation Engineering (2, pre-req. CCB413) In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses: CCB516 Foundation Design (pre-req. CCB414) CCB517 Structural Dynamics (pre-req. MMB222) CCB518 Public Health Engineering (pre-req. CCB315) CCB513 Measurements and Specifications - Civil Works

Semester 10 Core Courses
CCB524 Project II (3, pre-req. CCB514) CCB522 Construction Management II (2, pre-req. CCB512)

In addition, all students shall select at least four
of the following 2 credit, optional courses:

- CCB521 Waste Water Engineering
  (pre-req. CCB412)
- CCB523 Timber and Pre-stressed Concrete Structures
  (pre-req. CCB411)
- CCB525 Advanced Transportation Engineering
  (pre-req. CCB515)
- CCB526 Foundation on Problematic Soils
  (pre-req. CCB516)
- CCB527 Construction Costs & Financial Control
- CCB528 Estimating and Tendering for Civil Works
  (pre-req. CCB 513)

25.30 Assessment
25.31 Except for CCB313 (Surveying), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.30.
25.32 For CCB313 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.

250 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree shall apply:

25.10 Entrance Requirements
25.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Construction Engineering and Management) Degree shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.10.

25.20 Programme Structure
25.21 The Programme for the Degree in Construction Engineering and Management will be a Single Major Programme that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain 1 subject called Construction Engineering and Management consisting of courses shown below.
25.22 The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulation 21.20.

Level 300
Construction Engineering and Management
Semester 5
Core Courses (all are 3 credits)

- MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III
  (pre-req. MAT292)
- CCB313 Surveying
- CCB311 Construction Technology I
- MGT100 Principles of Management

In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following optional courses:

- CBB312 History of Building (2)
- CCB312 CAD for Civil Engineers (2)
  (pre-req. MMB 221)
- CCB315 Environmental Engineering (2)
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses (all 3 credits)

- CBB321 Structural Analysis
  (pre-req. CBB212, CCB221)
- CBB324 Construction Materials
  (pre-req. CBB211)
- CBB322 Measurement and Specification I
  (pre-req. CBB311)
- LAW253 Foundation of Engineering Law
  In addition, all students shall select at least 1 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:

- CBB323 Construction Industry Economics
- CBB325 Information Technology in
  the Construction Industry
  (pre-req. MMB221)

Level 400
Construction Engineering and Management
Semester 7
Core Courses

- CBB411 Construction Economics I (3)
- CBB412 Construction Technology II (3,
  pre-req. CCB311)
- CBB413 Measurement and Specification II
  (3, pre-req. CBB322)
- CBB414 Building Services (2)
- CBB415 Health and Safety Management in
  Construction (2)

In addition, all students shall select 1 of the following optional courses:

- LAW452 Construction Law
  (3, pre-req. LAW253)
- MMB414 Engineering Management (3)

Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training II [Vacation, 20
weeks] (10, core, pre-req. ITB 200)

Level 500
Construction Engineering and Management
Semester 9
Core Courses

- CBB514 Project I (3)
- CBB515 Estimating and Tendering (3,
  pre-req. CBB413)
- CBB511 Construction Economics II (2,
  pre-req. CBB411)
- CBB512 Construction Management I (2)

In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:

- CBB513 Measurements and Specifications - Civil Works
- CCB518 Public Health Engineering
  (pre-req. CCB315)
- CBB526 Construction Disputes Resolution
  (pre-req. LAW452)

Semester 10
Core Courses

- CBB524 Project II (3, pre-req. CCB 514)
- CBB522 Construction Management II (2,
  pre-req. CBB512)
- CBB523 Construction Technology III (2,
  pre-req. CBB412)
- CBB521 Contract Administration
  (2, pre-req. CBB515 and CBB413)

In addition, all students shall select at least 2 of the following 2 credit, optional courses:

- CBB525 Property Management and Valuation
- CBB527 Facilities Management
  (pre-req. CBB414)

MMB516 Building and Factories Services (4)

25.30 Assessment
25.31 Except for CCB313 (Surveying), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.30.
25.32 For CCB313 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1.

12.0 Special Regulations for Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering)
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Faculty Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Degree shall apply.
12.10 Degree Programmes
12.11 The following degree programme is offered:

Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Degree

12.20 Entrance Requirements
12.21 Admission to the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering) Degree shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.
12.22 The normal minimum requirements for admission to level 200 for a degree program shall be satisfactory completion of level 100 of the Bachelor of Science (General) degree of the Faculty of Science or equivalent institution with at least C grades in Mathematics, Chemistry and Physics.
12.23 Applicants in possession of an appropriate 'A' level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and at least one of: Physics and Chemistry may be admitted directly to Level 200 of the programme.
12.24 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the degree programme.

12.30 Duration of the Programme
The duration of the programme shall be: A minimum of 10 and a maximum of 12 semesters on a full-time basis.

12.40 Degree Structure
12.41 The curriculum for Level 100 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.
12.42 Level 200 Mining Engineering shall consist of the following courses:

Semester 3

- MAT 291 Engineering Mathematics 1 (3)
- CCB 211 Engineering Materials (2)
- CCB 212 Statics (2)
- MIN 211 Introduction to Mining Engineering (2)
- EEB 211 DC Circuit Principles (2)
- MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
- GEC 253 Energy and Society (2)
Semester 4
Core Courses
MAT 292 Engineering Mathematics 11
(3, pre-req. MAT 291)
CCB 221 Strength of Materials (2)
MIN 221 Introduction to Mine Safety and
Health (3)
EEB221 AC Circuit Principles (2)
MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting
(2, pre-req. MMB211)
MMB222 Dynamics (2)
GEC 250 Earth processes, mineral
resources and development (2)
MIN 220 Professional Training
(4, pre-req. MIN211)

12.43 Level 300 Mining Engineering shall
consist of the following courses:

Semester 5
Core Courses
MIN 311 Introduction to Mine Surveying
(3)
MIN 312 Introduction to Geology (2)
MIN 313 Introduction to Mineral
Processing (3)
MIN 314 Computer Applications in
Mining (2)
MIN 315 Small Scale Mining (2, pre-req.
MIN211)
MIN 316 Elements of Mining Environmental
Management (2)
GEC 276 Contemporary Economic Issues (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
MIN 321 Elements of Mining Methods
(3, pre-req. MIN211)
MIN 322 Elements of Mine Safety & Health
(2, pre-req. MIN211)
MIN 323 Elements of Mine Ventilation (2)
MIN 324 Botswana Mining Law (2)
MIN 325 Introduction to Mine Supervision &
Management (2)
MIN 326 Mine Surveying (2, pre-req.
MIN311)
ECO 111 Basic Microeconomics (2)
ECO 112 Basic Macroeconomics (2)
MIN 320* Mine Tour (1)

12.44 Level 400 Mining Engineering shall be as
stipulated in the advanced mining engineering
subjects offered at the Mining Engineering
Department, University of Missouri Rolla.
12.45 Level 500 Mining Engineering shall be as
stipulated in the advanced mining engineering
subjects offered at the Mining Engineering
Department, University of Missouri Rolla.
12.46 A course may consist entirely of
fieldwork, project work, practical work, design,
and seminars. In addition to work during the
semester, a subject may include prescribed
fieldwork or assignments during the vacation
periods.

12.50 Assessment
12.51 Continuous assessment in courses shall
be based on tests and/or design, assignments,
and where applicable laboratory reports and
field reports.
12.52 The ratio of continuous assessment to
formal examination shall be 2:3.
12.53 Overall performance in a course shall be as
specified in the General Regulation 00.84.

12.60 Final Examinations
There shall be no supplementary examinations.
A student who fails a core or pre-req. or co-
requisite course shall resit the course when
offered again. A student who has failed an
optional/elective/general education course
may retake the course or its equivalent.

12.70 Progression from Semester to Semester
General Regulation 00.90 shall apply.

12.80 Award of the Degree
12.81 The UMR General Regulation for
awarding the degree shall apply.

12.90 Professional Training
Students shall undergo Professional Training
(Internship) of 8 weeks duration after levels
200 and take a 2-week Mine Tour after level
300 as specified in the Special Regulations for
the Professional Training and Mine Tour for
the Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering)
Programme.

12.91 Assessment of Professional Training
Professional Training shall be assessed as
specified in the Special Regulations for the
Professional Training and Mine Tour for the
Bachelor of Science (Mining Engineering)
Programme.

Preamble:
Subject to the provisions of the General
Regulations 000 and 200, the following
Faculty Special Regulations for the Bachelor of
Geomatics Degree shall apply.

10.20 Entrance Requirements
10.21 Admission into the Bachelor of Geomatics
Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the
General Regulations 20.2.
10.22 Admission into Level 100 of the
BGeom Degree Programme shall be a minimum
requirement of BGCSE with a D grade in English
and a C grade in Mathematics and Physics and
any one of Chemistry or Biology or a minimum
of Grade B in Science Double Award.
10.23 Admission into Level 200 of the
Bachelor of Geomatics Degree Programme
shall be as stipulated in the General Admission
Regulations.

10.24 Applicants who are in possession of
an appropriate Diploma in Geomatics, Land
Surveying, Cartography, GIS, or equivalent
and have GPA of at least 2.5 or its equivalent
may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the
Degree Programme.
10.25 Admission into Level 200 of the
BGeom Degree Programme shall be upon satisfactory
completion of Level 100 of the Bachelor of
Science General Degree of the Faculty of
Science with at least C grades in Mathematics
and Physics.

10.26 Applicants in possession of an appropriate
"A" level qualification with at least C grades
in Mathematics and Physics maybe exempted
from taking Mathematics and Physics from the
Faculty of Science and may be admitted into
Level 200 but will take Level 100 Geomatics
courses.

10.27 A student admitted directly to Level
200 Geomatics who has not completed Level
100 Geomatics courses must take them during
their first year at the University of Botswana.
The programme for the degree in Geomatics will be a single major programme that will extend over 8 semesters of full-time studies. It shall consist of a single subject called Geomatics consisting of the courses shown below:

**10.40 Degree Structure**

10.41 Level 100 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester One**
- **MAT111** Introductory Mathematics I (4 credits, core)
- **PHY111** Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3 credits, core)
- **PHY119** Physics Practical 1.1 (1 credit, core)
- **CGB111** Geomatics I (3 credits, core)

In addition, students will take the following GEC Courses:
- **GEC111** Communication and Study Skill I (2)
- **GEC121** Computing and Information Skills (2)

**Semester Two**
- **MAT122** Introductory Mathematics II (4 credits, core, pre-req. MAT111)
- **PHY121** Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (3 credits, core, pre-req. PHY111)
- **PHY129** Physics Practicals 1.2 (1 credit, core, pre-req. PHY119)
- **CGB121** Geomatics II (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB111)

In addition, students will take the following GEC Courses:
- **GEC112** Communication and Study Skills (2)
- **GEC122** Computing and Information Skills (2)

Students will also take the following winter course:
- **CGB122** Survey Camp I (2 credits, core, pre-req. CGB111, CGB121, 2 weeks)

**Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:**

**Semester Three**
- **MAT221** Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3 credits, core)
- **MAT291** Engineering Mathematics I (3 credits, core)
- **CS1241** Structured Programming (4 credits, core)
- **CGB213** Principles of Cartography (3 credits, core)
- **CGB211** Elements of Photogrammetry (3 credits, core)
- **URP200** Introduction to Town Planning (2 credits, core)

**Semester Four**
- **MAT292** Engineering Mathematics II (3, core, pre-req. MAT291)
- **CGB221** Digital Photogrammetry (3, core)
- **CGB222** Theory of survey adjustments (3 credits, core, pre-req. MAT271, CGB121)
- **CGB223** Digital Cartography (3, core, pre-req. CGB213)
- **CGB224** Programming for Geomatics (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB212)

The students will also take the following winter course:
- **ITB200** Industrial Training (4 credits, core, 8 weeks)

10.42 Level 300 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester Five**
- **MAT391** Engineering Mathematics III (3, core)
- **CGB311** Engineering Surveying (3, core, pre-req. CGB121, CGB222)
- **CGB312** Geodesy I (3, core)
- **LAW354** Land Law for Geomatics (3, core)
- **ENV330** (3, exempt from pre-req. ENV215)

**Semester Six**
- **CGB321** Introduction to Land Administration (3, core, pre-req. CGB313)
- **CGB322** Principles of GIS (3, core, pre-req. CGB213, CGB223)
- **CGB323** Satellite Positioning Systems (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB312)
- **CGB324** Geodesy II (3, core, pre-req. CGB312)
- **CSI362** Database Concepts (3, core)

In addition, students will take the following winter courses:
- **ITB300** Industrial Training II (4 credits, core, 8 weeks)
- **CGB325** Survey Camp II (2 credits, core, pre-req. CGB323, CGB324, 2 weeks)

10.43 Level 400 shall consist of the following courses:

**Semester Seven**
- **CGB411** Research Project I (3, core)
- **CGB412** Spatial Data Modelling and Analysis (3, core, pre-req. CGB322)
- **CGB413** Advanced Land Administration (3, core, pre-req. CGB321)

In addition, students will choose 2 options from the following:
- **CGB414** Remote Sensing Applications (3, option, pre-req. CGB221)
- **CGB415** Advanced Cartographic Visualisation (3, option, pre-req. CGB223)
- **CGB416** GIS Design and Implementation (3 credits, option, pre-req. CSI362 & CGB322)
- **CGB417** Digital Image Processing (3, option, pre-req. CGB221)
- **CGB418** Principles and Practice of SDI Development (3, option)

**Semester Eight**
- **CBB529** Professional Ethics (3, core)
- **CBB521** Contract Administration (2, core)
- **CGB421** Research Project II (3, core)
- **CGB422** Cadastral Surveying Practice (3 credits, core, pre-req. CGB413)
- **CGB423** GIS Applications (3, core, pre-req. CGB224)

In addition, students will choose any 2 options from the following:
- **CGB424** Special Studies in Land Administration (3 option, pre-req. CGB413)
- **CGB425** Location-based Services (2, option, pre-req. CGB224)
- **MIN326** Mining Surveying (3 option, pre-req. CGB121)

10.45 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, design, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.

**10.50 Assessment**

10.51 Continuous assessment in courses shall be based on tests and assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports and field reports. The ratio between tests and assignment shall be 1:1.

10.52 The ratio of continuous assessment to formal examination shall be 2:3.

10.53 A project shall be evaluated by continuous assessment, oral presentation and/or demonstration and a written report. The ratio of the marks for continuous assessment, presentation assessment and written report shall be 2:1:1.

10.60 Progression from Semester to Semester General Regulation 00.90 shall apply.

10.70 Award of the Degree

10.71 General Regulation 00.85, shall apply. (A minimum of 139 credits)

72.72 Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 20.4.

116 Departmental Special Regulations for the Diploma in Mining Engineering

Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and Faculty Special Regulations 110 for Diploma Programmes, the following special regulations shall apply:

116.10 Entrance Requirements

116.11 The normal minimum entrance requirements to the Diploma in Mining Engineering Programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent, with passes in Mathematics and at least 1 Science subject. 116.12 Preference will be given to candidates with relevant industrial experience.

116.13 Medical requirements are:

a) Applicants must be in possession of a satisfactory medical certificate required under University Regulations Governing Admissions (Regulation 1.41) and must also comply with the health and fitness requirements in accordance with Regulations 91 and 92 of the Mines, Quarries, Works and Machinery Regulations [CAP. 44:02];

b) A student who becomes permanently medically unfit to be employed at a mine as specified in the Mines, Quarries, Works and Machinery Regulations [CAP. 44:02] will be
required to withdraw from the Programme.

116.20 Programme Structure

116.21 The Programme will be a Single Major that will normally extend over 6 semesters of full-time study, of which 40 weeks shall be spent on Industrial Training. It shall contain 1 subject called Mining Engineering consisting of courses shown below. 116.22 Students who have been in full-time employment within the mining sector may be exempted from part or all of the Industrial Training requirements at the discretion of the Departmental Board.

Level 100
Diploma in Mining Engineering
Semester 1
Core Courses
CMD111 Introduction to Mining Engineering (2)
CBD112 Introduction to Engineering Drawing (2)
CGD111 Plane Surveying (3)
SED111 Engineering Science (2)
SMO111 Mathematics I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CMD121 Mining Methods (3, pre-req. CMD111)
GEO104 Introduction to Geology for Mining Engineering (2)
CMD123 Mining Safety and Health (2)
SMO121 Mathematics II (2)
CMD124 Introduction to Mineral Processing (2)

In addition all students shall select at least 1 from the following 2-credit options:
MED120 Engineering Materials
CMD125 Mine Ventilation

Industrial training shall be taken prior to Level 200 and shall consist of the following courses:
ITD100 Industrial Training (6 shifts/week, 48 weeks, 15, core)
CMD200 Mine Tour (1, core, pre-req. CMD 111, CMD 121)

Level 200
Diploma in Mining Engineering
Semester 3
Core Courses
CMD211 Advanced Mining Methods and Production Control (2, pre-req. CMD111, CMD121)
CMD212 Principles of Ground Control (2, pre-req. CMD111, CMD 122)
CMD213 Mining Plant, Equipment Selection and Maintenance (2)
CMD214 Explosives, Drilling and Blasting (3)
CMD215 Computer Applications in Mining Problems (2)

In addition all students shall select at least 1 from the following 2-credit options:
CMD216 Small Scale Mining (pre-req. CMD111, CMD124)
CMD217 Mine surveying (pre-req. CGD111)
CMD218 Mining Environmental Management

CBD217 Soil Mechanics I

Semester 4
Core Courses
CMD221 Mine Planning and Design (2, pre-req. CMD 211)
CMD222 Mining, Health and Safety and Environmental Laws (2)
CMD223 Mine Supervision and Management (2)
CMD224 Project (3)

In addition all students shall select at least 2 from the following options:
CMD225 Advanced Explosives, Drilling and Blasting (2, pre-req. CMD214)
CMD226 Advanced Mine Geotechnics (2, pre-req. CMD212)
CMD227 Introduction to Mine Design Software (2, pre-req. CMD121, CMD214, Co-requisite CMD221) (2)
CMD228 Extractive Metallurgy (2, pre-req. CMD124)
CMD229 Ore Reserve Management (3, pre-req. CMD122)

116.30 Assessment
116.31 All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 11.30.

DEPARTMENT OF ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING

Bachelor of Electrical and Electronic Engineering

Entrance Requirements
Admission to the B.Eng. (Electrical and Electronic) shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.20. Applicants in possession of a Higher Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, or its equivalent, with a minimum of Credit including a Credit in Mathematics, may be admitted directly into Level 200. Applicants in possession of a Higher Diploma in Electrical and Electronic Engineering, or its equivalent, with a minimum of Credit including a Credit in Mathematics, may be admitted directly into Level 300.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3 pre-req. MAT 292)
EEB311 Network Theory (4) (pre-req. EEB221 & MAT 292)
EEB315 Computer Programming (2)
EEB316 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation I, (3) (pre-req. EEB221)
EEB317 Principles of Telecommunications (3) (pre-req. MAT 292)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Course
MAT 392 Engineering Mathematics IV (3 pre-req. MAT 391)
EEB322 Digital Electronics I (3) (pre-req. EEB211)
EEB 323 Analogue Electronics (3) (pre-req. EEB221)
EEB 326 Electrical Machines I (3) (pre-req. EEB311)
EEB 327 Electromagnetic Field Theory (3) (pre-req. MAT 391)

FOR INDUSTRIAL DESIGN STUDENTS:

EEB328 Electronics for Designers (pre-req. EEB211)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core courses
EEB418 Control Theory I (3) (pre-req. EEB311 & MAT 392)
MMB414 Engineering Management (3)

Optional courses:
At least three from
EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits (3) (pre-req. EEB323)
EEB412 Digital Electronics II (3) (pre-req. EEB322)
EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT 392)
EEB 414 Electrical Machines II (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT 392)
EEB415 Digital Communication and Telephony (3) (pre-req. EEB317)
EEB416 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation II (3) (pre-req. EEB316)
EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems (3) (pre-req. EEB322)

Level 400
Semester 8
ITB400 Industrial Training II [Vacation, 20 weeks] (10 Credits, Core, pre-req. ITB 200)

Level 500
Semester 9
Core courses
EEB510 Project I (3) (pre-req. EEB316, EEB327 & EEB418) and either EEB411 & EEB412, or (EEB413, EEB414)

Optional courses:
At least three from
EEB511 Control Theory II (3) (pre-req. EEB418)
EEB512 Digital Signal Processing I (3) (pre-req. MAT392)
EEB513 Analogue Electronic System Design, (3) (pre-req. EEB323)
SB514 Process Instrumentation (3) (pre-req. EEB416 & EEB418)
EEB515 Power System Analyses (3) (pre-req. EEB413 & EEB414)
EEB516 Power Electronics (3) (pre-req. EEB323)
EEB517 Computer Aided Electrical Machine Analysis (3) (pre-req. EEB414)

Optional Course:
EEB518 Guided Waves (3) (pre-req. EEB327)

EEB 519 Computer Architecture and Design (3) (pre-req. EEB 417)

Level 500
Semester 10
Core courses
EEB 520 Project II (3, pre-req. EEB 510)

Optional courses:
At least three from
EEB522 Digital Signal Processing II (3, pre-req. EEB 412)
EEB523 Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB 512)
EEB524 Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEB 412)
EEB525 Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB 412)
EEB526 Electrical Machines and Drives (3, pre-req. EEB 516)
EEB 527 Computer Aided Power Systems Analysis (3, pre-req. EEB515)
EEB 528 Antennas and Propagation (3, pre-req. EEB518)
EEB 529 Computer Networks (3, pre-req. EEB 519)

Assessment
As per Special Faculty Regulations 21.40.

Progression
As per General Regulations 00.90.

Award of the Degree
The award of the BEng. in Electrical and Electronic Engineering shall be in accordance with the Faculty Special regulations 21.80.

Combined Bachelor of Engineering (B-Eng Major)

Degree Structure
The Major shall be a minimum of 53 credits over 8 semesters of full-time study. The minor may be combined with a major or minor. The curriculum for Level 100 shall be as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30.

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
EEB216 Electrical Principles (2)

Level 200
Semester 4
Core Courses
EEB 226 AC Circuit Principles, (2)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
A minimum of 5 credits from:
EEB311 Network Theory (4)
EEB315 Computer Programming (2)
EEB316 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation I (3)
EEB317 Principles of Telecommunications (3) (pre-req. MAT392)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Courses
A minimum of 5 credits from:
EEB322 Digital Electronics I (3)
EEB323 Analogue Electronics (3)
EEB326 Electrical Machines I (3)
EEB327 Electromagnetic Field Theory (3)

Optional courses:
At least two from
EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits, (3) (pre-req. EEB323)
EEB412 Digital Electronics II (3) (pre-req. EEB322)
EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution, (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT392)
EEB414 Electrical Machines II (3) (pre-req. EEB326 & MAT392)
EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems, (3) (pre-req. EEB322)

Level 400
Semester 8
ITB400 Industrial Training II [Vacation, 20 weeks] (10, Core)

Level 500
Semester 9
Core courses
EEB510 Project I, (3) (pre-req. EEB316, EEB327 & EEB418) and either (EEB411 & EEB412) or (EEB413 & EEB414)

Optional courses:
At least two from
EEB512 Digital Signal Processing I (3) (pre-req. MAT392)
EEB513 Analog Electronic System Design (3) (pre-req. EEB323)
EEB514 Process Instrumentation (3) (pre-req. EEB416 & EEB418)
EEB515 Power System Analysis (3) (pre-req. EEB413 & EEB414)
EEB 516 Power Electronics (3) (pre-req. EEB323)

Level 500
Semester 10
Core courses
EEB 520 Project II (3, pre-req. EEB 510)

Optional courses:
At least two from
EEB522 Digital Signal Processing II (3, pre-req. EEB 512)
EEB523 Digital Electronic System Design (3, pre-req. EEB 512)
EEB524 Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEB 511 & EEB514)
EEB525 Power Systems (3, pre-req. EEB 413)
EEB526 Electrical Machines and Drives, (3, pre-req. EEB 518)
EEB529 Computer Networks (3, pre-req. EEB 519)

Assessment
As per Special Faculty Regulations 21.40.

Progression
As per General Regulations 00.90.

Award of the Degree
The award of the BEng. in Electrical and Electronic Engineering shall be in accordance with the Faculty Special regulations 21.80.

Combined Bachelor of Engineering (B-Eng Minor)
EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits, (3)  
EEB412 Digital Electronics II (3)  
EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution, (3)  
EEB414 Electrical Machines II (3)  
EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems (3)  

Optional courses  
EEB211 Workshop Technology I (2)  
EBB221 Engineering Drawing (2)  
CCB211 Engineering Materials (2)  
ECC212 Statics (2)  
EEH211 Electrical Principles I (2)  

Level 200  
Semester 4  
Core courses  
EEH 211 Project (2)  
EEH 222 Electrical Maintenance and Repair (2)  

Optional courses  
At least three from:  
EEH223 Motor Drive Applications  
EEH224 Computer Engineering (3, pre-req. EEH 122)  
EEH225 Process Control Systems (3, pre-req. EEH 213)  
EEH226 RF Transmission and Propagation (3, pre-req. EEH 124)  
EEH227 Audio Visual Engineering (3)  
EEH228 Power System Protection (3)  
MDH225 Renewable Energy (3)  

All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Regulation 13.30.130. In addition to the above, the department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering also offers the following General Education Courses (GEC)  
GEC 255 Electrical Energy and Rural Development (2)  
GEC354 Domestic Use of Electrical Energy (2)  
GEC355 Telecommunications and Society  

DEPARTMENT OF INDUSTRIAL DESIGN AND TECHNOLOGY  

230 Special Regulations for the Degree in Bachelor of Design  
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000, 100 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:  

23.10 Entrance Requirements  
23.11 Admission into Level 100 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in the General Admission Regulations.  
23.12 Admission into Level 100 shall be possession of GCE Ordinary Level or equivalent with a minimum of grade C in English Language and a grade C in Mathematics and Physics and in any one from Biology and Chemistry or a minimum of grade C in Science Double Award or equivalent. OR  
23.13 Admission into Level 200 of the Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in General Admission Regulations.  
23.14 Admission into Level 200 of the BDes Degree Programme shall be satisfactorily completion of level 100 of Bachelor of Science with at least the equivalent of C grades in Mathematics and Physics. OR  
23.15 Applicants in possession of an appropriate A-Level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and any one of Physics, Chemistry, or Design and Technology may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR  
23.16 Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR  
23.17 For admission into Level 300 of the Degree Programme, applicants must have an appropriate Higher (or a 3 Year) Diploma with Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry and Engineering Drawing.  
23.20 Degree Structure  
23.21 Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree.  
23.22 Level 200 shall consist of the following courses:  

Semester 3  
Core Courses  
DBT210 Elements of Design (3)  
DBT211 Workshop Technology II (2, pre-req. DBT210)  
MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)  
CCB211 Engineering Materials (2)  
CCB212 Statics (2)  
ECC211 Electrical Principles I (2)  

Semester 4  
Core Courses  
DBT220 Designing Artifacts (3, pre-req. DBT210)  
DBT221 Workshop Technology II (2, pre-req. DBT211)  
MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (2, pre-req. MMB211)  
MMB222 Dynamics (2)  
CCB221 Strength of Materials (2)  
DBT 222 Graphics (2)  

23.23 Students registered for a Bachelor of Design Degree Programme shall undergo industrial training as specified under Departmental Special Regulations.  
23.24 At Levels 300, 400 and 500 each student shall register for General Education Courses as prescribed by General Regulation 00.2124, Departmental prescribed number of core, optional and elective courses per semester, unless exempted.  
23.25 The availability of optional and elective courses offered by a Department shall be at the discretion of the Department.  
23.26 A student shall register for a Single Major or a Combined Degree Programme in the third semester.  
23.27 A subject may include courses consisting entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical work, and seminars. In addition to work during the semester, a subject may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during the vacation periods.  

23.30 Assessment  
23.31 Continuous assessment in Levels 200, 300, 400 and 500 courses shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable laboratory reports/field reports.  
23.32 Except for a project and courses with 100 percent continuous assessment, the ratio of continuous assessment to end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.  
23.33 Project Assessment  
a) A Design Project shall be assessed through documentation (folio, report and diary) of the Design Process and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.  
b) A Major Make and Evaluate Project shall be assessed through Product and its Evaluation...
and presentation. The ratio of marks for documentation to presentation shall be 2:1.

c) A Design and Make Project shall be evaluated as specified in Regulations 23.33a and 23.33b.
   23.34 The Level 500 Project Report must be submitted to the co-coordinator at least 2
   weeks before the beginning of the end of semester examinations.

23.35 Where a course includes a written final examination, a course with a credit with value
   of 3 or more shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 2 hours, and
   1 hour for a course with less than 3 credits.

23.36 Courses having a practical component or drawing that include a written examination
   shall be examined by an end of semester examination of duration 3 hours.

23.37 Due Dates and Tests

   a) Failure without good cause to submit an item of continuous assessment within 24
      hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks per day. Failure to submit
      the assignment before the end of 1 week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

   b) A student who fails to sit a continuous assessment test without documented valid
      reason shall score a zero mark for that test. A student absent from a test with documented
      legitimate reason shall be entitled to a special test.

280 Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree

Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulation 230, the following
Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree shall apply:

28.10 Entrance Requirements

28.11 Admission to the Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education) Degree shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special
Regulation 23.10, i.e., 23.11 to 23.17.

28.20 Programme Structure

28.21 The Programme shall consist of the Major Subject called 'Design and Technology' and the Minor Subject called Education.
28.22 The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations.

Level 300

Design and Technology Education

Semester 5

Core Courses

DBT311 Design, Technology and Society (2)
DBT312 Aesthetics (2)
DBT313 Ergonomics (2)
DBT314 Materials Processing (3)
EDT311 Principles of Learning (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
DBT315 Internet for Designers (2)
DBT317 Textiles and Leather Technology (2)
HEE345 Food Technology (3)

Semester 6

Core Courses

DBT321 Computer Aided Design (3)
EEB328 Electronics for Designers (3)
   (pre-req. EEB211)
DBT323 Pneumatic Controls (2)
DBT324 Product Analysis (3)
EDT321 Teaching Methodology (2)
DTB300 Industrial Training

Level 400

Design and Technology Education

Semester 7

Core Courses

DBT410 Computer Based Manufacture (2)
DBT411 Hydraulic Controls (2)
DBT412 Product Design I (3)
EDT411 Educational Technology (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
DBT413 Special Human Needs (2)
DBT414 School Design and Technology Projects (2)
DBT415 Design for Sustainable Development (1)
DBT416 Interior Design 2, pre-req. DTB312

Level 500

Design and Technology Education

Semester 9

Core Courses

DBT511 Major Design Project (3)
EDT511 Research Project in DT Education (3)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
EDT512 School Organisation and Management (2)
DTB512 Design and Technology School Curriculum Innovations (2)
DBT513 Product Design III (2)
DBT514 Industrial Product Design (2)
DBT515 Microcomputer Controls (2)

Semester 10

Core Courses

DBT521 Major Make-and-Evaluate Project (3, core)
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:
DBT522 Case Studies in Designing (2)
DBT524 Environmental Factors in Design (2)
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:
EFA500 School Management (2)

Level 300

Industrial Design

Semester 5

Core Courses

DBT311 Design, Technology and Society (2)
DBT312 Aesthetics (2)
DBT313 Ergonomics (2)
IDB311 Industrial Design: Concept and Practice (2)

Level 300

Industrial Design

Semester 5

Core Courses

DBT311 Design, Technology and Society (2)
DBT312 Aesthetics (2)
DBT313 Ergonomics (2)
IDB311 Industrial Design: Concept and Practice (2)

Level 300

Industrial Design

Semester 6

Core Courses

DBT324 Product Analysis (3)
EEB328 Electronics for Designers (3)
   (pre-req. EEB211)
IDB521 Computer Aided 3-D Design (2)  
IDB522 Product Design (2)  
In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:  
IDB532 Basic Control Systems (2)  
IDB524 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)  
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formation (3)  
MGT325 Industrial Environment (2)  

Industrial Training  
DTB300 Industrial Training  
(Vacation 7 Weeks, 3 Credits)  

Level 400  
Industrial Design  
Semester 7  
IDB411 Computer Aided Manufacture (3)  
IDB412 Research Methods in Design (2)  
IDB413 Minor Project (3)  
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:  
DTB415 Design for Sustainable Development (2)  
DTB416 Interior Design (2)  
DTB414 Eco-Product Design (2)  
DTB415 Universal Design (2)  

Semester 8  
IDB400 Industrial Training for Industrial Design (20 Weeks, 10 Credits)  

Level 500  
Industrial Design  
Semester 9  
IDB511 Major Design Project (3)  
IDB512 Contemporary Issues in Industrial Design (2)  
IDB513 Advanced Product Design (2)  
In addition, all students shall select at least three of the following optional courses:  
IDB514 Design Management (2)  
IDB515 Occupational Health and Safety (2)  
IDB516 Design Studies (2)  
IDB517 Optimisation in Design (2)  

Semester 10  
IDB521 Major Make-and-Evaluate Project, (3)  
IDB522 Professional Practice (2)  
In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:  
DTB522 Case Studies in Designing (3)  
DTB522 Design for Automation (3)  
IDB524 Multimedia for Industrial Designers (3)  
IDB525 Packaging Design, (3)  

34.24 Assessment  
34.25 For DTB220, DTB300, DTB312, DTB315, ISB313, IDB321, IDB322, IDB324, IDB400, IDB411, IDB413, ISB513, ISB515, ISB516, IDB517, IDB522, IDB524 and IDB525, the assessment mode shall be continuous assessment only.  

Service Courses  
DTC 221 Entrepreneurial Skills (2): This course is available for students who are undertaking certificate or diploma programmes in FET.  
GEC 357 Advances in Technology (2):  
Examimable: CA:Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations  
GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2):  
Examimable: CA:Exam Ratio as per FET Regulations  

350 Industrial Training Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Design Preamble  
Subject to the provisions of General Regulations 000 and 200 the following Industrial Training Regulations shall apply to students on the following Programmes:  
a) Bachelor of Design (Design and Technology Education)  
b) Bachelor of Design (Industrial Design)  

35.10 Structure  
35.10.1 BDes (Design and Technology Education) and Bdes (Industrial Design) students shall undergo supervised Industrial Training for 7 weeks between Levels 300 and 400. B Des. Industrial Design students shall in addition undergo supervised Industrial Training for Industrial Design for 20 weeks from the beginning of semester 2 of Level 400 including part of the vacation between Levels 400 and 500.  

35.12 Industrial Training course codes shall be as follows:  
DTB 300 - Industrial Training (BDes Design and Technology Education)  
Duration 7 weeks, 3 credits, core course.  
IDB 400 - Industrial Training for Industrial Design (B Des. Industrial Design)  
Duration 20 weeks, 10 credits, core course.  
35.13 During the periods of Industrial Training students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules, and other regulations as applicable to the industry.  
35.14 Subject to Regulations Governing Admissions, Fees and Discipline Regulation 4.0, and regulation 35.13 above, a student who receives a final warning for misconduct during the period of Industrial Training shall be subjected to Discipline Regulations.  

35.20 Assessment  
35.21 During the periods of Industrial Training, each student shall be visited a minimum of twice at the location of placement to be assessed by Faculty of Engineering and Technology staff.  
35.22 A student’s performance will be assessed by means of:  
a) Continuous assessment by the industry based supervisor and an assessor from a relevant Department of the Faculty of Engineering and Technology.  
b) Industrial Training Report and logbook submitted by the student at the end of the Industrial Training period.  
c) Oral Presentation for IDB400 only.  
35.23 DTB300 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 (a and b). The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook shall be 1:2.  
35.24 IDB400 shall be assessed as based on regulations 35.22 (a,b and c). The ratio of marks for Continuous Assessment to Industrial Training Report and Logbook to Oral Presentation shall be 1:2:1.  

DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERING  

Introduction  
The Department of Mechanical Engineering offers the following programmes:  
• Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical)  
• Combined Degree (Major in Mechanical Engineering)  
• Combined Degree (Minor in Mechanical Engineering)  
• Bachelor of Industrial Engineering  
• MSc in Mechanical Engineering  

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical) Degree. Subject to General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical) Degree (BEng) shall apply:  

Entrance Requirements  
Admission to the Bachelor of Engineering (Mechanical Engineering) Degree Programme shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulations 21.10.  

Programme Structure  
The Programme for the Degree in Mechanical Engineering will be a Single Major that will extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall contain one subject called Mechanical Engineering consisting of courses shown below. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.20.  

Level 300  
Mechanical Engineering  
Semester 5  
Core Courses  
MAT391 Mathematics III  
MMB311 Solid Mechanics  
MMB312 Materials  
MMB313 Mechanics of Machines  
MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation  

Semester 6  
Core Courses  
MMB322 Machine Component Design  
MMB323 Thermodynamics I (3)  
MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)  

79
MMB325 Manufacturing (2)
EEB326 Electrical Machines I (3)

Level 400
Mechanical Engineering
Semester 7
Core Courses
MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design
(2, pre-req. MMB322)
MMB421 Heat Transfer
(2, pre-req. MMB323, MMB324)
MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
MMB417 Thermodynamics II
(2, pre-req. MMB323)

In addition, all students shall select at least three of the following optional courses:

MMB416 Mechatronics
(2, pre-req. MMB314)
MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics (2)
MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2, pre-req. MMB325)

Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training II [20 Weeks]
(10 credits, core, pre-req. ITB 200)

Level 500
Mechanical Engineering
Semester 9
Core Courses
MMB511 Project I (3)
MMB512 Plant Engineering (3)

In addition, all students shall select at least two of the following optional courses:

MMB513 Manufacturing Systems (4)
MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (4)
MMB515 Energy Conversion
(4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)
MMB524 Refrigeration and Air conditioning
(4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)

Semester 10
Core Courses
MMB521 Project II (3, pre-req. MMB511)
MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3, pre-req. MMB414)

In addition, all students shall select two of the following optional courses:

MMB516 Building and Factory Services (4)
MMB523 Industrial Engineering (4, pre-req. MMB414)
MMB527 Thermo/Fluid system design
(4, pre-req. MMB 421, MBB 417)
MMB526 Computational Mechanics (4)

Assessment
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing), MMB411 (Engineering Design), MMB511 (Project I), MMB521 (Project II) and MMB526 (Computational Mechanics), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211, MMB511, MMB521, and MMB526 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.

Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (General) Degree Subject to the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering Degree (Major in Mechanical Engineering) shall apply:

Programme Structure
The Combined Programme shall extend over 10 semesters of full-time study. It shall consist of one major subject (Mechanical Engineering) and 1 minor subject selected outside the major subject. The curriculum for Levels 100 and 200 shall be stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.20. At Levels 300, 400 and 500 students shall be required to follow a selected minor subject outside the major subject. The courses from the minor subject shall have a minimum credit value of 23. Subject to Regulation 31.22, students must achieve a minimum of 53 credits from the major subject courses listed below. In cases where a similar course appears in both the minor and the major subject, there shall be no double crediting of the course. Students shall be required to undertake Industrial Training as per Faculty of Engineering and Technology Special Regulations 220.

Level 300
Major in Mechanical Engineering
Semester 5
Core Course MAT391 Mathematics III
(3, pre-req. MAT291)
Students shall select and follow at least 3 of the following optional courses:

MMB311 Solid Mechanics (3)
MMB312 Materials (2)
MMB313 Mechanics of Machines
(3, core, pre-req. MMB222)
MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation
(2)

Semester 6
Students shall select and follow at least three of the following optional courses:

MMB322 Machine Component Design (2)
MMB323 Thermodynamics I (3)
MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)
MMB325 Manufacturing (2)

Level 400
Major in Mechanical Engineering
Semester 7
Students shall select and follow at least two of the following core courses:

MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design
(2, pre-req. MMB322)
MMB527 Thermal Fluid System Design
(2, pre-req. MMB421, MMB417)
MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
MMB417 Thermodynamics II
(2, pre-req. MMB323)

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following optional courses:

MMB416 Mechatronics
(2, pre-req. MMB314)
MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics (2)
MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing
(2, pre-req. MMB325)

Semester 8
Core Course
ITB420 Industrial Training II [20 Weeks]
(10)

Level 500
Major in Mechanical Engineering
Semester 9
Core Course
MMB511 Project I (3)

In addition, all students shall select at least one of the following courses:

MMB512 Plant Engineering (3)
MMB513 Manufacturing Systems (4)
MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II (4)

MMB515 Energy Conversion
(4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)

MMB524 Refrigeration and Air Conditioning
(4, pre-req. MMB412, MMB417)

Semester 10
Core Course
MMB521 Project II (3, pre-req. MMB511)

In addition, students shall select at least one of the following courses:

Core Course
MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3, pre-req. MMB414)

Optional Courses

MMB516 Building and Factory Services (4)

MMB523 Industrial Engineering
(4, pre-req. MMB414)

MMB525 Process Engineering II (4)

MMB526 Computational Mechanics (4)

Assessment
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing), MMB411 (Machine and Industrial Design), and MMB526 (Computational Mechanics), all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211 and MMB526 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.
Departmental Regulations for the Combined Degree Programme

Subject to the General Regulations 000 and 200 and the Faculty Special Regulations 210, the following Departmental Regulations for the Minor in Mechanical Engineering shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Applicants shall have successful registration in a Combined Major Degree Programme in Science, Engineering or Technology. Courses in Mathematics must be covered in the major subject with at least two such courses in Level 200.

Programme Structure
The Minor Programme shall extend over 8 semesters of full-time study and shall be part of a Combined Major in another subject. It shall consist of one subject Mechanical Engineering with courses listed below. The curriculum for Level 100 shall be as stipulated in Faculty Special Regulation 21.20. In cases where a similar course appears in both the minor and the major subject, there shall be no double crediting of the course. Students should achieve a minimum of 23 credits in the Minor Subject of Mechanical Engineering.

Level 200
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

Semester 3
Core Courses
CCB212 Statics (2)
MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
CCB221 Engineering Materials (2)
MMB222 Dynamics (2)

Level 300
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

Semester 5
Students shall attain a minimum of four credits from any of the following core courses:
MMB311 Solid Mechanics
(3, pre-req.CCB221)
MMB312 Materials
(2, pre-req. CCB211)
MMB313 Mechanics of Machines
(3, pre-req. MMB222)
MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation
(2)

Semester 6
Students shall attain a minimum of four credits from any of the following optional courses:
MMB322 Machine Component Design (2)
MMB323 Thermodynamics I (3)
MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)
MMB325 Manufacturing (2)

Level 400
Minor in Mechanical Engineering

Students shall attain a minimum of six credits from any of the following optional courses:

Semester 7
MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design (2)
MMB421 Heat Transfer (2, pre-req. MMB323,MMB324)
MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
MMB416 Mechatronics (2)
MMB417 Thermodynamics II (2)
MMB418 Pneumatics and Hydraulics (2)
MMB410 Advanced Manufacturing (2)

Assessment
Except for MMB211 (Engineering Drawing) and MMB411 (Machine and Industrial Design) all courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulations 21.30. For MMB411 the ratio of marks for continuous assessment to examination shall be 1:1. For MMB211 the assessment mode shall be by continuous assessment only.

Departmental Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering (Industrial Engineering)

General provisions
Subject to the provisions of the General Regulations 000, and 200, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
Admission into Level 100 of the Programme shall be governed by General Regulation 20.2. Admission into Level 200 of the Degree programme shall be satisfactorily completion of Level 100 of Bachelor of Science with at least the equivalent of C grades in Mathematics, Chemistry, and Physics. OR Applicants in possession of an appropriate A-Level qualification with at least C grades in Mathematics and any one of Physics or Chemistry may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR Applicants in possession of an appropriate Diploma in Mechanical Engineering may be admitted directly into Level 200 of the Degree Programme. OR Applicants in possession of an appropriate Higher Diploma in Mechanical Engineering may be admitted directly into Level 300 of the Degree Programme.

Bachelor of Industrial Engineering

Degree Structure
The Programme shall consist of a single major subject called Industrial Engineering. Level 100 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Science Degree. Level 200 courses shall be as specified in the Faculty Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Engineering Degree.

Level 300 Semester 5
Core Courses MAT271 Introduction to mathematical Statistics (3 credits, core)
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3 credits, core)
MMB312 Engineering Materials (3 credits, core, prerequisite CCB211)
ECO313 Engineering Economics (3 credits, core) MGT100 Principles of Management (3 credits, core)

Level 300 Semester 6
Core Courses
IMB321 Information System Design (3 credits, core)
IMB322 Technological Entrepreneurship (3 credits, core)
ACC203 Cost Accounting Applications (3 credits, core)
IMB324 Productivity and Technology Management (3 credits, core)
EEB315 Computer Programming (3 credits, core)

Level 400 Semester 7
Core Courses
IMB411 Industrial Logistics (3 credits, core)
IMB412 Manufacturing I (3 credits, core, prerequisite MMB312)
IMB413 Simulation Modelling (3 credits, core)
IMB414 Organizational Ergonomics (3 credits, core)
IMB415 Facilities planning and Value engineering (3 credits, Core, prerequisite ECO313)

Level 400 Semester 8
Core Courses
MKT100 Principle of Marketing (3 credits, core)
IMB422 Manufacturing II (3 credits, core, prerequisite IMB 412)
IMB423 Process Planning and Cost Estimation (3 credits, core, prerequisite ECO313)
IMB424 Industrial Quality Control (3 credits, core, prerequisite MAT271)
IMB425 Operations Research I (3 credits, core)
ITB400 Industrial Training II (Vacation, 8 weeks duration, 4 credits, core, prerequisite ITB200).

Level 100 Semester 1
BEng Industrial Engineering

Core Courses
MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (Core, 4 credits)
PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (Core, 3 credits)
PHY119 Physics Practicals 1.1 (Core, 1 credit)
CHE101 General Chemistry 1 (Core, 4 credits)
GEC111 Communication and study skills 1 (Core 2 credits)
GEC121 Computing and information skills 1 (Core 2 credits)
Level 100 Semester 2
MAT 122 Introductory Mathematics 11 (core, 3 credits)
PHY 121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (core, 3 credits)
PHY 129 Physics Practical 1.2 (core, 1 credit)
CHE 102 General Chemistry (core, 4 credits)
GEC 112 Communication and study skill 2 (core, 2 credits)
GEC 122 Computing and information skills 2 (core, 2 credits)

Level 200 Semester 3
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics 1 (core, 3 credits)
CCB211 Materials Science (core, 2 credits)
CCB212 Statics (core, 2 credits)
IDB211 Workshop Technology 1 (core, 2 credits)
EJB211 D.C. Circuits Principles (core, 2 credits)
MMB211 Engineering Drawing (core, 2 credits)

Level 200 Semester 4
MAT292 Engineering Mathematics 2 (core, 3 credits)
CCB221 Strength of Materials (core, 2 credits)
IDB221 Workshop Technology 2 (core, 2 credits)
MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (core, 2 credits)
MMB222 Dynamics (core, 2 credits)
EJB221 A.C. Circuits Principles (core, 2 credits)

Level 200 Winter Session
ITB 200 Industrial Training (8-9 weeks, 4 credits)

Level 300 Semester 5
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (core, 3 credits)
MMB312 Engineering Materials (pre-requisite CCB211, 3 credits)
ECO313 Engineering Economics (core, 3 credits)
MGT100 Principle of Management, (core, 3 credits)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (core, 3 credits)

Level 300 Semester 6
IMB321 Information System Design (core, 3 credits)
IMB322 Technological Entrepreneurship (core, 3 credits)
ACC203 Cost Accounting Applications (core, 3 credits)
IMB324 Productivity and Technology Management (core, 3 credits)
EJB315 Computer Programming (core, 3 credits)

Level 400 Semester 7
IMB411 Industrial Logistics (core, 3 credits)
IMB412 Manufacturing I (pre-requisite MMB312, core, 3 credits)
IMB413 Simulation Modeling (core, 3 credits)
IMB414 Organisational Ergonomics (core, 3 credits)
IMB415 Facilities Planning and Value Engineering (pre-requisite ECO313, core, 3 credits)

Level 500 Semester 10
Core Courses
IMB521 Project II (6 credits, core)
IMB522 Computer Aided (4 credits, core)
IMB523 Professional Ethics (3 credits, option, prerequisite IMB322)
MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3 credits, options prerequisite ECO313 and IMB324)
CCB315 Environmental Engineering (3 credits, option)

Assessment
All courses shall be assessed as stipulated in the Faculty Special Regulation 21.30.

Progression from Semester to Semester
261.41 Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9.

Award of the Degree
The Degree shall be awarded in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 00.85.
Classification of the degree shall be in accordance with the provisions of General Regulation 20.4.

COURSE LISTINGS

Department of Architecture and Planning

YEAR 1
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
ARB111 Design Communication I
This course concerns the experience of seeing, drawing and communication of form, mainly physical form. It deals with free hand drawing as well as geometric projections: Orthographic, axonometric, and isometric. The course deals with communication through three main topics: free-hand drawing, geometric projections, and colour.
Credits: 4.
Lectures/Studio: 8 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1
ARB 112 Building Materials & Construction I
This course deals with building materials and their use in "fundamental" conditions, "natural" as distinct from "fabricated" materials: earth and its derivatives and wood. It does so through observation of these materials in traditional and modern buildings. The course deals with materials and process of construction and their inter-relationship in the way they are used in building. Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: 2 Tests and 2 Assignments Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 113 Traditional African Architecture
This course concerns the genesis of Architecture in Africa as a part of African Culture. It examines architecture as a response, an expression, and a formative part of the communal and individual human habitation. This course begins with a review of African communes and villages, proceeds to the study of particular buildings within them from their origin to the present. Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: 2 Tests and 2 Assignments Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

PHY 111 Physics
Laws of reflection and refraction and applications: Mechanics Units and dimensions; Vector algebra; Kinematics; Projectile; Newton’s laws; Work, Energy and Power; Circular motion; Torque; Vibrations and Waves.
Credits: 3
Hours per week: 3 Lectures and 3 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

PHY 119 Physics Practicals 1.1
A set of experiments to be performed in Semester 1 illustrating work done in Level 100 Physics lecture courses.
Credits: 1
Tests: 2 hours per week
Final Examination: 1 hour
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

MAT 191 Design Mathematics I
Basic algebra, introduction to functions, trigonometry, series, complex numbers, permutations and combinations.
Credits: 3
Hours per week: 3 Lectures and 3 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC Courses
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills I
The course deals with language use for academic purposes including introduction to communication, factors for independent learning, note-taking and making skills, reading skills, writing skills, aspects of academic language, and interfacing between reading and writing.
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills
The course introduces students to computer systems; equip them with basic computing skills using application packages, like word-processing and electronic communications using e-mail and internet facilities.
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Semester Two
Core Courses
ARB 121 Design Communication II
This course deals with representation and abstraction in the process of communication. It deals with free-hand drawing, perspective projection, three-dimensional models as instruments of study of geometry and appearance (light) of physical form, leading to the design of a simple structure.
pre-req.: ARB111
Credits: 4
Lectures/Studio: 8 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB 122 Building Materials & Construction II
This course deals with building materials and their use in "fundamental" conditions with focus on industrially produced materials: cement, concrete, glass, steel and other metals used in buildings. The course covers basic characteristics of these materials but focusing on them as construction materials.
pre-req.: ARB112
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 123 History of Art
Architecture is rooted in the search for order and the establishment of immortality. The achievement of mankind is easily assessed through art, from traditional art found worldwide and then the beginning of modernism at the Renaissance. The rising figure of the individual artist and the several revolutions since lead to the confirmation of radical movements from Impressionism onwards, until today.
pre-req.: ARB113
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 Test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 124 Environment and Comfort
This course introduces (1) the range of human comfort conditions within the built environment and the effect of air, light and temperature (2) sources of the natural and artificial environmental conditions affecting the built environment including the sun, wind, precipitation, seasons, day and night, weather and climatic conditions, electricity, HVAC and (3) the building as a controlled environment. Coursework consists of lectures providing knowledge of principles to be observed in field studies and reports to document the results. Assessment will be through continuous assessment in form of essays and tests and a final examination.
pre-req.: PHY111
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

MAT 192 Design Mathematics II
Calculus, co-ordinate geometry, vectors
pre-req.: MAT191
Credits: 3
Hours per week: 3 Lectures and 3 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC Courses
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II
Descriptive writing, Analysis, Use of Diagrams, Reading demands, language and style of formal writing, Forms/Types of professional writing and correspondence, basic oral presentation skills.
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

GEC122 Computing and Information Skills II
Additional computing and information skills including advanced operating systems file management concepts, basic spread sheets, and database management facilities.
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3
Year 2
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses

ARB211 Architectural Design I
The course will deal with the simplest possible enclosure – a room, a hut, through examination of the room and buildings in existing contexts, examples in the work of architects, and its design by the students. The course will apply the various types of spatial organization and basic structures in small buildings in context, and the possibilities of presentational modes of professional architecture.
pre-req.: ARB121
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB212 Building Materials & Construction III
Students are asked to study selected buildings as case studies, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own design. Emphasis will be put on cladding and external finishes.
pre-req.: ARB122
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB 213 History of Architecture I
The course covers Architecture As A Development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth. It examines the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the “typical” forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with the Prehistoric, the main civilizations from Mesopotamia to Rome are examined, detailing their main aspects.
pre-req.: ARB123
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB214 Energy Efficiency In Buildings
This course deals with the following topics: Basic principles of energy efficiency, energy efficiency and sustainable development, energy efficient design (passive and active design), technologies for energy efficient building, energy efficiency policy and legislation introduction to energy management, green financing. Throughout the course, case studies and existing good practice examples will be used as a major instrument of instruction. Assessment will be through continuous assessment in form of essays and tests and a final examination.
pre-req.: ARB124
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB216 Computer Aided Drafting
Introduction to computers and two drafting tools: Arch-Cad and Auto-Cad. This course involves four lectures followed by extensive exercise and application of exercises in the use of two architectural drafting tools.
pre-req.: GEC121 and GEC122, ARB111 and ARB121
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments
Final examination: Assessment of major design project
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

CCB 217 Theory of Structures I
The Course combines the fundamental concepts taught in two typical courses of the civil engineering discipline, such as Statics and Strength of Materials. The emphasis is put on the behaviour of different structural forms subjected to applied forces - what is essential in developing a common ground uniting the principles of safe and economical design of any type of structural system between the architect and structural engineer.
Credits: 2
Hours per week: 2 Lectures and 2 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: 2 Tests and at least 2 Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio = 2:3

Semester 4
Core Courses

ARB221 Architectural Design II
More advanced and institutional building types form the vehicle of instruction in this course, allied with case studies and the understanding of natural light in architecture. A full response of the selection of materials, appropriate finishes and more complex structural applications is also demanded to ensure competence at this level.
pre-req.: ARB211
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB222 Building Materials & Construction IV
Students are asked to study selected buildings, analyse the use of materials and methods of construction in the building, and apply the results in their own designs. Emphasis will be put on materials used for interior finishes: floor and wall tiling, ceilings etc.
pre-req.: ARB212
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB223 History of Architecture II
The course will deal with architecture as a development of the individual and community as inhabitants of the earth and examine the seminal building and communal forms that emerge as the “typical” forms in this evolutionary process. Beginning with Early Christian architecture, the course proceeds to deal with the Middle Ages, looking at Europe, Africa and the Far East.
pre-req.: ARB213
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

CCB 227 Theory of Structures II
As a continuation of CCB217, this Course develops the principles already established and relates them to more complex structural forms and methods of building in terms of such materials as timber, steel and reinforced concrete, considering simples design examples, and exercises based on such examples.
pre-req.: CCB217
Credits: 2
Hours per week: 2 lectures and 2 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: 2 Tests and at least 2 Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio=2:3

ARB 220 Internship I
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Presentation =1/2/1

URP 207 Land Surveying and Cartography
The Course introduces students to basic elements of land surveying and cartography including linear measurements, levelling and cadastral surveying; making, interpretation and reproduction of maps; coordinate systems; map projections; data manipulation, classification and generalisation; profiles and land-surface forms. At the end of the course, students are expected to submit thematic atlas of a selected urban or rural area covering different aspects of a human and natural phenomena in a scale from 1:5,000 to 1:50,000.
pre-req.: None
Co-requisite: ARB 216
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 1 lecture + 3 hours practical exercises per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and submission of thematic atlas
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

Year 3
Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
ARB311 Architectural Design III
This course builds on the input of previous design courses with the emphasis on buildings serving the community. More advanced structural analysis and response is expected, and issues of detailed planning of site and overall organization are explored, resulting in deepening awareness of architecture in relation to current norms of professional achievement.
pre-req.: ARB221
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB312 Building Services I
This course covers building services including water supply and plumbing, drainage and waste disposal, electricity supply, lighting, communications, HVAC, fire fighting, and conveyance. Assessment will be done by essays and examination.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB313 History of Architecture III
The Post-Renaissance period up to nineteenth century was a period of revolutions in science, technology, commerce, and politics and had a decisive shaping influence on today's world. The achievements of the High Renaissance and the Baroque are examined and how the Enlightenment and other movements prepared the way for Modernist ideas in the early nineteenth century.
pre-req.: ARB223
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

CCB 317 Theory of Structures III
The Course begins with the basic principles of the design of steelwork connections, and tensile and compression structural elements to BS 5950. The application of those principles to design of roof trusses and spatial grid systems constitutes the main Course content. Other types of long span structures, and tensile and shell like structures are also covered, as well as roof trusses, and tensile, textile and hybrid structures.
pre-req.: CCB227
Credits: 2
Hours per week: 2 lectures and 2 Tutorials
Continuous Assessment: 2 Tests and at least 2 Assignments
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio=2:3

Optional Courses
URP 200 Introduction To Town Planning
The Course focuses on understanding the need to plan, the emergence of modern town planning, and the foundations of town planning legislation. It also provides an insight into the organisation and administration of town planning; the Planning Process; Survey preparation and techniques of analysis, and development control. The course also highlights the role of planners in dealing with current topical problems and issues in modern day living.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests, 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 202 Infrastructure Planning and Management
The aim of the course is to introduce students to aspects of planning and designing of technical infrastructure such sanitation, water supply, wastewater treatment, solid waste management, power and telecommunication planning. It covers on-site and off-site sanitation systems, storm water management, solid waste management, water demand and supply, energy and power, telecommunication, technical infrastructure layouts and financing and cost recovery issues on provision of technical infrastructure.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 6
Core Courses
ARB321 Architectural Design IV
The emphasis in this course is to heighten the interpretation of more complex briefs and building programmes, with emphasis on landscape, structure and basic building services. The final design should be a multi-storey building with a public address, and related to full exploration of design method and competent presentation on professional lines.
pre-req.: ARB311
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB322 Building Services II
Subsequent to ARB321, this course will cover a practical analysis of the requirements of a selected building type followed by design of the building services as part of the process of design. Assessment will be done by coursework.
pre-req.: ARB312
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB323 History of Architecture IV
This course deals with the rise of modern states/cities and institutions in Europe following the Industrial Revolution and examines new building types and technology in response to these developments up to the present. Clear notions of High Modernism are followed by a treatment of Postmodernism.
pre-req.: ARB313
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB320 Internship II
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.
pre-req.: ARB220
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Presentation =1/2/1

ARB325 Interior Design
The course consists of extensions of the current architectural design project in the studio. Students are taught to deal with colour, light and texture as well interior arrangements and spatial qualities. Advanced awareness of issues such as the integration of structures, services and environmental control are also expected.
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3
ARB411 Architectural Design V
This course will be concerned with urban and community issues of some complexity and the development of design skills in terms of functional and environmental control systems. Possible vehicles of delivery could be an urban design complex or social housing, accompanied by building studies and/or selected exemplars incorporated in a short report to accompany drawings and model.

Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Credits: 2
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB412 Building Systems I
The course will introduce the detailed critical analysis of the various Building Systems and their interactive effect on the built environment in general. It will include group work studies, review of theoretical material, case studies, documentation and presentation. Assessment will be done by coursework.

Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB413 Philosophy of Architecture I
This course consists of examination of main theories of architecture since the Renaissance and exercises aimed at helping the student to develop/ refine their own position in design. Many aspects of philosophical and cultural criticism are introduced, leading to a final essay on a major topic.

Lectures/Studio: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Continuous assessment: Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB415 Landscape Design
This course consists of study of principles of landscape design as related to design of micro-climate and ecological considerations. It is centred around lectures on land and landscape design and parallel studio exercise based closely on the context of the architectural design project in ARB411.

Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: Assessments of studio projects
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB253 Foundations of Engineering Law
An introduction to the Botswana Legal system and to aspects of contractual and delictual liability designed to provide nonlaw students with the necessary legal foundation for further study of aspects of the law relevant to construction, design, technology and other engineering activities.

Pre-req.: None
Credits: 3
Lectures: 3 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Tests and Assignments
Final Examination: 3 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB421 Architectural Design VI
This course will treat a major building of known performance or derived brief, and of high complexity in terms of structural application, formal exploration and environmental control systems and sustainability. The brief must be fully understood and realized in the design response, and issues of contemporary theory and international norms should be addressed as well.

Pre-req.: ARB411
Credits: 6
Lectures/Studio: 12 hours per week
Continuous assessment: Research report and interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB422 Building Systems II
The course introduces analytical methods in architectural design by applying the knowledge of various building systems from previous courses. Students are required to produce a comparable analytical report of their own design.

Pre-req.: ARB412
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB423 Philosophy of Architecture II
The course will engage with current issues of the region, and especially those of Botswana. The diversity of contemporary architecture will be explored leading to a final essay dealing with a particular building or practitioner.

Pre-req.: ARB413
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB424 Professional Practice I
The course deals with an introduction to the common and statute law and goes into the details of contract law before concentrating on construction contracts, types of building contracts and conflict/resolution.

Pre-req.: LAW253
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB420 Internship III
Internship means the external placement of a student with a professional or other kind of body in order to gain the necessary experience of the profession. During the long vacation of May to July, students spend at least eight weeks undergoing this professional experience. Staffs visit the students and meet their supervisors to get a feedback on the attachment.

Pre-req.: ARB320
Credits: 2
Duration: Minimum 8 weeks.
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/ Presentation = 1/2/1

Optional Courses
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment
ENV414 Urbanisation & The Environment
For these two courses contact "The Environment Science Handbook"

Year 5
Semester 9
Level 500
Core Courses
ARB511 Design Project I
This course consists of a proposal for a project at a community scale and the design from general strategy to Preliminary design stage, accounting for massing, basic organizational strategies and other issues of relevant importance.

Pre-req.: ARB421
Credits: 8
Lectures/Studio: Individual supervised research
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments of research report
Final examination: Final assessment of research report
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB514 Professional Practice II
This course deals with the following issues: Architect licensing process, techniques and rationale of marketing architectural services, market forecasting, client behaviour, office organisation and business methods applied to architecture, meeting procedures.

Pre-req.: ARB424
Credits: 2
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3
CCB519 Building Economics
The course is concerned with the nature, role and market issues of the construction industry, and construction project economics. The character and organisation of the construction industry in Botswana provide the starting point for a host of issues that make up design economics, leading to cost analysis, and value engineering and management.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final Examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 307 Land and Property Valuation
The Course starts with an introduction to the property market, the different types of property, the organisations and individuals that require and trade in property, and the dealing methods employed. The basic characteristics of real estate and the principal factors affecting value are then considered, followed by the concept of valuing a legal interest in land, and not the property itself. The Course also examines the appropriate valuation techniques employed in assessing the open market value of property, why valuations are required and the concept of intrinsic worth. The difference between open market value (property exchange price) and worth to the individual is finally introduced.

pre-req.: URP307
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 10
Core Courses
ARB521 Design Project II
This course requires the students to take the proposal in ARBS511 – or using an alternative strategy depending on the student. The course requires the student to prepare and present a proposal for a final design. Students will be expected to develop performance criteria for major spaces and components for the design and to present results to a high professional degree.

pre-req.: ARBS511
Credits: 8
Lectures/Studio: Individual supervised studio
Continuous assessment: Interim assessments of design project
Final examination: Final assessment of design project
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

ARB522 Urban and Rural Design Practice
This course requires a comprehensive urban study of the project selected as the subject of ARBS521. The students will be required to prepare a comprehensive research report on possible approaches to the urban design aspects of the "thesis" project – ARBS521. The report will be illustrated with design options related to each approach and to develop a selected approach in detail.

Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

ARB524 Project Management
This course deals with various processes and techniques of monitoring projects: the project life cycle, project planning and control, project cost control, Work Breakdown Structures (WBS), Programme Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), Critical Path Method (CPM).

Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous assessment: At least 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses
GEC273 The State and Society (2)
(Consult Department of Political and Administrative Studies)
GEC277 Law & Society in Botswana (3)
(Consult Department of Law)
Bachelor of Science in Urban and Regional Planning Programme (URP)

Year 1
Level 100
URP Courses are not offered at this level.

Year 2
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
URP 200 Introduction to Town Planning
The Course focuses on understanding the need to plan, the emergence of modern town planning, and the foundations of town planning legislation. It also provides an insight into the organisation and administration of town planning; the Planning Process; Survey preparation and techniques of analysis, and development control. The course also highlights the role of planners in dealing with current topical problems and issues in modern day living.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests, 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 201 Introduction to Drawing Techniques
The Course introduces students to the art, science and techniques of planning required to communicate graphically through drawings related to layout planning, design and construction of buildings and other structures. It covers description and care and use of drawing equipments; line drawing and lettering; colouring and shading; scales and measurements; projections; types, layout and presentation of drawings; tracing and reproduction of drawings.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

URP 202 Infrastructure Planning and Management
The aim of the course is to introduce students to aspects of planning and designing of technical infrastructure such sanitation, water supply, wastewater treatment, solid waste management, power and telecommunication planning. It covers on-site and off-site sanitation systems, storm water management, solid waste management, water demand and supply, energy and power, telecommunication, technical infrastructure layouts and financing and cost recovery issues on provision of technical infrastructure.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
URP 200 Introduction to Town Planning
The Course focuses on understanding the need to plan, the emergence of modern town planning, and the foundations of town planning legislation. It also provides an insight into the organisation and administration of town planning; the Planning Process; Survey preparation and techniques of analysis, and development control. The course also highlights the role of planners in dealing with current topical problems and issues in modern day living.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests, 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 201 Introduction to Drawing Techniques
The Course introduces students to the art, science and techniques of planning required to communicate graphically through drawings related to layout planning, design and construction of buildings and other structures. It covers description and care and use of drawing equipments; line drawing and lettering; colouring and shading; scales and measurements; projections; types, layout and presentation of drawings; tracing and reproduction of drawings.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

URP 202 Infrastructure Planning and Management
The aim of the course is to introduce students to aspects of planning and designing of technical infrastructure such sanitation, water supply, wastewater treatment, solid waste management, power and telecommunication planning. It covers on-site and off-site sanitation systems, storm water management, solid waste management, water demand and supply, energy and power, telecommunication, technical infrastructure layouts and financing and cost recovery issues on provision of technical infrastructure.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Year 2
Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
URP 200 Introduction to Town Planning
The Course focuses on understanding the need to plan, the emergence of modern town planning, and the foundations of town planning legislation. It also provides an insight into the organisation and administration of town planning; the Planning Process; Survey preparation and techniques of analysis, and development control. The course also highlights the role of planners in dealing with current topical problems and issues in modern day living.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests, 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

URP 201 Introduction to Drawing Techniques
The Course introduces students to the art, science and techniques of planning required to communicate graphically through drawings related to layout planning, design and construction of buildings and other structures. It covers description and care and use of drawing equipments; line drawing and lettering; colouring and shading; scales and measurements; projections; types, layout and presentation of drawings; tracing and reproduction of drawings.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 1:1

URP 202 Infrastructure Planning and Management
The aim of the course is to introduce students to aspects of planning and designing of technical infrastructure such sanitation, water supply, wastewater treatment, solid waste management, power and telecommunication planning. It covers on-site and off-site sanitation systems, storm water management, solid waste management, water demand and supply, energy and power, telecommunication, technical infrastructure layouts and financing and cost recovery issues on provision of technical infrastructure.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/Studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/Exam ratio: 2:3

Year 1
Level 100
URP Courses are not offered at this level.
URP 203 Urban and Regional Economics
This is a basic Course that introduces students to the application of economic theories and concepts in urban and regional planning. Emphasis is on spatial/land use models founded on economic models. These will include for example central place theory; Agricultural location theory and industrial location theory. Various regional growth models such as sector model will be discussed. Emphasis is on how these models have actually been used in urban and regional planning. Their application internationally and nationally should be reviewed.
pre-req.: ECO111, ECO112
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 204 Planning and History of Settlements
The Course introduces students to the history and planning of urban settlements. It presents the variety of urban settlements over the course of 5000 years from the Sumerian civilisation in the 3rd millennium BC until the functionalist urban forms created by modernist in first half of the 20th century. The Course focuses on morphology of urban space; urban taught; it also presents the main environmental, socio-economic and technological aspects of the historical periods examined and attempts to analyse the current various urban forms within the historical paradigm. It explains the concept of unplanned cites that grow organically, in contrast with planned cities that were shaped following urban regulations.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses
URP 205 Environmental Planning
The course provides a clear overview and analysis of environmental factors in the formulation of development plans and projects and helps students to understand 1) different perspectives on sustainable environmental planning and development; 2) the legal, economic, ethical and ecological foundations of environmental planning; 3) the environmental planning process; and 4) the different types of environmental planning practices and topics.
pre-req.: ENV101, ENV 102
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests, theoretical and practical assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 206 Urban Morphology
The course helps students to understand the structures and shapes of urban space covering physical, social, functional and ecological dimensions of a city. It explores both theoretical and practical underpinning of urban morphology helping the students to understand the complexity of urban settlement form and its constitutive functional, spatial and social elements. It is tailored to help the students to comprehend the way in which urban space is created over time highlighting on the nature and the character of city's functionality and materiality, as well as on socio-cultural and economic context of urban space production.
pre-req.: ENV101, ENV 102
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests, theoretical and practical assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 4
Core Courses
URP 207 Land Surveying and Cartography
The Course introduces students to basic elements of land surveying and cartography including linear measurements, levelling and cadastral surveying; making, interpretation and reproduction of maps; coordinate systems; map projections; data manipulation, classification and generalisation; profiles and land-surface forms. At the end of the course, students are expected to submit thematic atlas of a selected urban or rural area covering different aspects of a human and natural phenomena in a scale from 1:5,000 to 1:50,000.
pre-req.: URP201
Co-requisite: ARB 216 and URP 207
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 1 lecture + 3 hours practical exercises per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and submission of thematic atlas
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 208 Site Planning
The Course aims to to introduce students to practical basic design concepts and principles used in preparing layouts and site plans for common land use activities such as residential, commercial, civic & community, industrial, recreational and mixed land uses. This includes understanding the scope of site planning, site analysis in terms of the natural, physical and social environments and user requirements and urban management in town planning. The course will be taught through lectures, practical exercises, site visits, and group work and class presentations. At the end of the course, students should be able to interpret planning projects in real time production by presenting (2) dimensional to three (3) dimensional details alongside elaborate design considerations from design rationale(s) to design briefs.
pre-req.: URP 201
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 209 Transport Planning and Management
Transportation planners are responsible for estimating where future travel will occur, by what means, and on what routes. What tools are available for planners to evaluate the future demand for travel in our communities? This course introduces the student to transportation planning and provides an understanding of transportation planning models, including travel demand models of trip generation, trip distribution, mode choice, and traffic assignment. The course will also discuss data collection processes and limitations, new approaches, and the land use and transportation interactions.
pre-req.: URP 202
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and 2 assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 210 Planning Techniques
This Course introduces students to the type of data required in planning such as sources, how it is collected (both quantitative and qualitative, questionnaire construction, interviews, non-survey methods and rapid appraisal methods). The Course continues with data analysis using frequency distribution, measures of dispersion, and statistical techniques, followed by data presentation using cartographic techniques and lastly, the stages in writing dissertations.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 211 Internship
The purpose of this Course is to provide opportunities to make the transition from school to professional planning, by translating knowledge into effective action, through field placement. The internship component is available to all students registered in the URP Programme.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 1
Duration: Minimum 6 weeks
Assessment: Field Supervisor/Concept Paper/Presentation =1/2/1

Optional Courses
URP 212 GIS for Planners
The Course introduces the student to the fundamental principles of GIS and use of computerised geographic information systems (GIS), focusing on their significance for planning. The course focuses on fundamental principles of GIS and applications of GIS in planning. Students are introduced to GIS principles through lectures, exercises and demonstrations.
pre-req.: GEC121 and GEC 122
URP 213 Globalisation and Sustainable Cities
The search for sustainable cities and debates surrounding globalisation currently feature prominently in emerging planning discourse. The Course explores such debates under such headings as: Defining globalisation as historical transformation; Globalisation, economic and political process and the built environment; Globalisation and denationalization of the economy; Actors in the Global Project; Trans national capital, urbanization and planning; International organization as agents of globalisation in the built environment.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Year 3
Semester 5
Level 300
Core Courses

URP 301 Urbanisation And Planning
The Course explores the linkages between the urbanization processes and urban planning. Emphasis is on different interpretations of the urbanization process and how these interpretations shape planning interventions and the focus is on sub-Saharan Africa. Topics covered include: Urbanisation, Development and urban planning, Definition, demographic trends and characteristics; Problems and opportunities; Theoretical approaches to urbanisation and implications to urban planning; modernization perspective and traditional urban master planning; political economy Marxist variant and world systems perspective – the search for radical planning practice; liberal-pluralist variant - the DPU school – the search for innovative planning practice.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 302 Neighbourhood Planning
This course seeks to expand and enhance students’ urban design skills and capabilities developed under URP208. While the first part of this course covers the definition, origin and other theoretical aspects of the ‘neighbourhood concept’, the second part focuses on the practical complexities of designing ‘livable places’ – places that meet users’ everyday needs in an efficient, safe and convenient manner. It also covers site inventory and analysis techniques; traffic circulation and safety; and sizing and location of public, recreational and commercial facilities. At the end, each student is required to prepare a detailed plan for about 5000-10000 inhabitants.
pre-req.: URP208
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 303 Housing Studies
The Course includes such topics as: the role of housing in local and national development, housing types, problems and transformations, factors affecting housing demand and supply; assessment of private and public sources of housing finance; issues of equity, quality, health and standards in housing, assessment of public and private housing delivery systems, rent control, subsidies, legislation, land servicing and cost recovery; self-help housing, the national housing policy.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 304 Regional Planning
This Course provides a synthesis of the science of spatial systems with the art of planning and management and focuses on the analysis of spaces, regions and locations. The Course teaches the concept of region, regional models such as growth pole theory and how to manage regional change. The Course discusses factors affecting settlement network such as: specialisation, interdependence and settlement hierarchy; environmental impacts, distribution of natural resources, jobs, populations and opportunities, as well as regional linkages, transport networks and regional infrastructure. The role of small towns in rural development and growth central pole theory and practices elaborated in Botswana National Settlement Policy, Regional Master Plans and District Settlement Strategies are also highlighted.
pre-req.: URP 203
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 305 Research Methods and Techniques
The aim of the course is to introduce students to skills required in social science research in general and physical planning in particular. It covers definition and need for research; major research approaches (objectivity, positivism, empiricism, subjectivity and postmodernism; research ethics; the generic research process (problem identification, hypothesis, theoretical frame etc.); Quantitative and qualitative data and research approaches; data collection and analysis techniques, tools and processes; and references and bibliography.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and 1 exercise
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses

URP 306 Remote Sensing for Planners
This Course contains two parts. In part one it introduces the interpretation of aerial photographs, stereoscopic vision, parallax, scale in aerial photographs, classification systems, etc. In part two starts with the introduction to remote sensing where focuses on hands-on display and analysis of satellite images with computer pallets and symbols; methods of Image classification; histogram techniques on image enhancement; map algebra In satellite images; multi channel study of satellite images and spectral signatures. In addition deals with techniques on satellite images correction; temporal changes in satellite images; overlaying vector to raster images; as well as principal component analysis applications in planning. Computer lab work included with available software (e.g. IDRISI, ERDAS or TM)
pre-req.: URP212
Credits: 3
Lectures/studio: 1 lecture + 3 hours practical exercises per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 307 Land and Property Valuation
The Course starts with an introduction to the property market, the different types of property, the organisations and individuals that require and trade in property, and the dealing methods employed. The basic characteristics of real estate and the principal factors affecting value are then considered, followed by the concept of valuing a legal interest in land, and not the property itself. The Course also examines the appropriate valuation techniques employed in assessing the open market value of property, why valuations are required and the concept of intrinsic worth. The difference between open market value (property exchange price) and worth to the individual is finally introduced.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 6
Core Courses
URP 308 Planning, Policy and Politics
Planning and Politics is premised on the definition of the urban planning as state intervention in the urbanization processes. The Course explores how political configurations influence the planning process, institutions and procedures. Various theories of the state and their implications to urban planning are discussed, including post-Marxian concepts.
URP 309 Urban Land Use Planning

The course explores both theoretical and practical underpinning of urban land use planning helping the students to understand urban planning movements, the nature of different types of urban plans, their elements and the process of their preparation. At the end of the course students will be able to understand: 1) the nature of urban land, land use & land cover, land information & land use planning; 2) the process of urban land use planning; 3) the types of urban plans in international urban planning arena; and 4) the types of urban plans in Botswana and South Africa.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests and assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 310 Planning and Environmental Law

This Course is an introduction to the principles of land tenure and security, land and property transactions, customary land tenure and Tribal Land Act, freehold, lease and fixed time grants, the Town and Country Planning Act, rent control and the estate agent, the structure, power and functions of institutions such as SHHA, BHC, VDC, Land Boards, DLUPU etc. (2 hrs lecture per week).

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests and assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 311 Settlement Upgrading

The Course covers definitions of unplanned, spontaneous, traditional and squatter settlements, assessment of slum clearance versus upgrading, costs and benefits of incremental versus full scale redevelopment, retention households versus relocation, assessment of temporary, semi-permanent and permanent developments, needs assessment, public participation and consensus building; developing and building private sector; community and public partnership in land servicing and settlement redevelopment.

pre-req.: URP302
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 6 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test, 2 practical exercises
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 1:1

URP 312 Dissertation: Directed Readings

Each student is required to identify a research topic which will ultimately result in a dissertation to be submitted in Semester Seven. The Course consists of guided reading on the literature and research techniques applicable and relevant to the student's research topic.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 assignments
Final examination: Final paper
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Year 4
Semester 7
Level 400
Core Courses
URP 400 Philosophy and Planning

The Course explores the philosophical and methodological debates within urban planning. Topics discussed include positivism, structuralism, phenomenology etc. Philosophical basis of urban planning - positivism and derivative planning methodologies - hypothetical-deductive methodology and urban master planning: Phenomenology and urban planning - towards interpretive methodologies, Realism and urban planning- structural methodologies, post-modernity and urban planning.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 401 Rural Land Use Planning

This studio course instructs the planning students how to produce the Report of Survey (RoS), which is the first step in practical preparation of development plans for small settlements and rural territories. The course covers intensive field survey, data collection of primary and secondary data, data analysis and interpretation, and review of issues and opportunities. The final Report of Survey should be submitted in the form of technical report including analytical text, GIS maps, charts, planning and design drawings, tables, statistics, etc. A small group and team work, and liaison with community representatives, government officials and different stakeholders are the imperatives of this studio course.

pre-req.: URP311
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 1+3 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: submission of draft RoS and interim assessment of individual RoS chapters
Final examination: submission and class presentation of the final RoS

URP 402 Transport Engineering for Planners

The objective of the course is to introduce the student to common techniques for analysis and design in transportation engineering. The course covers transportation system objectives and constraints, physical design of transportation facilities, geometric design of road cross-sections, earthworks, traffic engineering studies and traffic flow principles.

pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and 2 assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 403 Urban Management and Governance
The Course aims to bring awareness to the fact that good urban governance can lead to better-managed cities. It is argued that good urban governance is characterised by sustainability, decentralisation, equity, efficiency, transparency and accountability, civic engagement and citizenship, and security, and that these norms are interdependent and mutually reinforcing.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 assignment and 1 test
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 404 Project: Research Methodology
The Course seeks to students in producing a dissertation in partial fulfilment of an award of a degree in urban and regional planning. Through the guidance of supervisors, the student will critically review the methodologies and data collection techniques that deal specifically with the topics they have chosen for their dissertations.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: Final examination
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses
URP 405 Gender and Physical Planning
The aim of the course is to introduce students to the need to consider and integrate gender dimensions in physical planning and settlement management processes. Topics covered include: definition of gender; gender roles, contracts and relationships; gendered spaces; gender inequalities in traditional and modern settlements; approaches to gender planning; gender analysis, auditing, mainstreaming and proofing in physical planning processes.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 406 Public Participation in Physical Planning
The realization of successful physical planning depends on the levels of public participation by local communities. The Course explores various conceptualization of participation in physical planning. Students will be taken through Amstel classical ladder of citizen participation to more contemporary and radical views of participation as a self-empowerment and re-discovery project. Conditions necessary for participation as well as factors that impede participation will be explored. The Course draws on case studies from Sub-Saharan Africa and other developing areas.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Semester 8
Core Courses
URP 407 Planning And Social Theory
The Course traces how debates in social theory shape the urban planning discipline. Emphasis is on contemporary social issues. Topics covered include theories of social action, structural Marxism, post structuralism and critical theory.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 408 Development Impact Assessments
This Course helps students to understand a Development Impact Analysis as a process of estimating and reporting the effects of future land developments and construction. This assessment applied to large and medium size urban growths projects. This Course covers different areas of development impact analysis including legal consideration, site analysis, market analysis, environmental impact analysis, social, economic and fiscal analysis, traffic analysis, as well as shared infrastructure costs. Each impact analysis includes methods for analysis, sources of data, a preview model, and tips for analysing critique. The Course also includes a computerized model that lets students try out hypothetical proposals to see in advance what effect they might have.
pre-req.: None
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 409 Settlement Development Planning
The course is focused on preparation of comprehensive physical plan for a small urban/rural settlement. Working in planning team students will continue to play the role of planning consultant assigned in URP 401. They are expected to refine goals and objectives; review planning standards; develop land use, socio-economic, environmental and engineering projections; review planning models; develop, evaluate and select preferable planning scenario; develop planning vision; prepare development proposals and policies; prepare detailed designs for priority action areas; prepare Impact Assessment Analysis; review plan implementation and financial requirements for the first five year of plan implementation; develop phasing, monitoring and review schedule. The expected outputs shall be in the form of the Draft and the Final planning reports.
pre-req.: URP401
Credits: 2
Lectures/studio: 1+3 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: submission of draft Planning Report and interim assessment of its chapters
Final examination: submission and class presentation of planning reports

URP 410 Project Planning and Management
To acquire practical knowledge on planning and management skills and how to apply them in complex planning situations. The lessons include project planning process and management concepts. Project planning also exposes students to basic appraisal techniques. Practical knowledge on how to prepare spatial plans (structure plans and local plans), incorporating planning briefs and design guides is studied. The linkage has to be drawn between project planning and the implementation of the physical development plans. Methodology focusing on implementation and the management techniques are taught. Case studies are reviewed on how planning is being undertaken/approached particularly in the Sub-Saharan Africa.
pre-req.: URP 406
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests and practical assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 411 Project Report
The Course seeks to assist students in producing a dissertation in partial fulfilment of an award of a degree in urban and regional planning. Using the proposal and methodology developed in URP 404 a student will analyse the data and do the final write up of a readable report based on problem investigated (1-hr per week).
pre-req.: URP 404
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 2 tests and practical assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

Optional Courses
URP 412 Planning Negotiation and Contracting
The aim of this course is to offer step-by-step instructions in contracting planning consultants and in organising successful public and professional negotiation meetings in situations where we have to resolve community planning related problems using mediating and facilitating skills to bring opposing parties together. The Course is essential for every private developer, planner, public official, or land use planning consultant who deals with the public, professional bodies, governmental, parastatal, private and non-governmental organisations. In addition it helps students to understand the needs for hiring of consultants in order to supplement
central/local government planning agency staff time, expertise, to ensure objectivity and credibility and to obtain a variety of skills.

pre-req.: URP 406
Co-requisite: URP 410
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: tests and assignments
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

URP 413 Urban Agriculture
A presentation of the various aspects of the concept and practice of urban and peri-agriculture. This is followed by an examination of the practice of urban agriculture; social, economic and environmental impacts of UA; food safety and health issues and lastly, enabling strategies to take on board UA in city and municipal planning.

pre-req.: No
Credits: 2
Lectures: 2 hours per week
Continuous Assessment: 1 test and 1 assignment
Final examination: 2 hours
CA/exam ratio: 2:3

CBB311 Construction Technology I (3)
Structure of the instruction industry, function of construction work, site organisation and investigation, basic construction techniques, framed structures, floors, roofing systems, and stairs.

CBB312 History of Buildings (2)
History of building; Study of key building structures in relevant historical stages; Significant works; Architectural heritage of Botswana.

CBB322 Measurement And Specification I (3)
The course deals with the measurement of materials and labour in simple building works. It also covers areas such as bill preparation and the use of computer software in the preparation of bills of quantities. Principles of Measurement: Historical development of the quantity surveying profession; the standard method of measurement; measurement conventions; manual and electronic processing of project cost data. Measurement of Simple Buildings: Measurement of building elements including foundations, brickwork, partitions, roof, floors, doors, windows and internal finishes. Bill Preparation: Purpose of Bills of Quantities; various bill formats; preparation of Bills of Quantities.

CBB323 Construction Industry Economics (2)
Basic concepts covered include nature, role and market issues of the construction industry and construction project economics.

CBB325 Information Technology in Construction Industry (2)
Introduction: Technologies and trends; Information processing; Strategic use of information technology: E-commerce and Internet; IT in Project management; Use of GIS in facility management.

CBB411 Construction Economics 1 (3)
Construction design economics; Cost planning and control; Cost information; Introduction to engineering economics; Value engineering and management.

CBB412 Construction Technology II (3)
This course covers the following: Site Works, External Enclosure, Internal Enclosure and External Works.

CBB413 Measurement & Specification II (3)
This course covers measurement of complex building works and use of computer software in measurement.

CBB414 Building Services (2)
Water supply systems, fundamentals of drinking water supply systems, hot water supply systems, sanitary appliances and installations, drainage systems, refuse disposal.

CBB415 Health And Safety Management In Construction (2)
Introduction to health and safety on construction sites, workplace safety, protective equipment, hazardous substances, accident reporting and investigation, first aid on the site.

CBB511 Construction Economics II (2)
Property markets, Development Economics, Development appraisal, Life Cycle Costing (LCC), Construction Industry Economics.

CBB512 Construction Management I (2)
Contract administration; Project estimating and cost control; Project management; Human resources; Construction planning; Managing health and safety at work.

CBB513 Measurements & Specifications - Cml Works (2)
Principles of measurement; Civil Engineering Quantities; Specialist Services and Equipment; Bill preparation.

CBB515 Estimating And Tendering (3)
Estimating processes; Methods of estimating; Cost estimation; Calculation of unit rates; Tender documents; Pre-tender functions; Methods of tendering; Selection of contractor; Bidding strategy.

CBB519 Building Economics
Nature, role and market issues of the construction industry, construction project economics; Design economics, Cost planning and control, Cost information; Value engineering and management: Construction industry - Nature and organisation the of construction industry; its role and contribution to the national economy, construction industry in Botswana; its products and the present status and future within the region and national economic growth and development; Construction project economics - Requirements of various clients and their impact on the construction process; relationship between cost, time, quality and value in development projects, Construction Design economics; cost implications of design factors, construction methods and site factors, Cost information: sources and reliability of cost data, cost limits, cost indices and cost analysis, Cost planning and control: elemental and comparative cost planning, practical applications and cost control techniques; Value engineering and management.

CBB521 Contract Administration (2)
Tendering and procurement systems; Preparation of interim certificates and set-off; Variations; Final account; Delays; Claims; Insurance; Insolvency; Risk management.

CBB522 Construction Management II (2)
Contract planning; Work-study; Application of planning techniques; Project control; Benchmarking and partnering; Employment and industrial relations.

CBB523 Construction Technology III (2)
Construction plant; Formwork and false work; Maintenance; Modular co-ordination.

CBB525 Property Management and Valuation (2)
Property Valuation; Valuation Theory and Methods; Property Management Framework; Property management function.

CBB526 Construction Dispute Resolution (2)
Nature and forms of construction dispute; Procedure for arbitration & dispute resolution; Alternative dispute resolution methods.

CBB527 Facilities Management (2)
Operational Services; Assets management; Life Cycle Costing; Services; Maintenance and Feedback.

CBB211 Engineering Materials (2)
This course covers the following: Types of materials; Atomic structure; and imperfections; Mechanical and physical properties of materials; Principles of solidification and phase diagrams; Ferrous and non-ferrous alloys; Ceramic materials; Polymers; Composite materials; Wood; The environmental stability of materials; The failure in materials in stress.

CBB212 Statics (2)
This course covers the following: Introduction to statics; Force vectors; Force systems; Equilibrium; Structures; Distributed forces and moment of internal; Friction; Virtual work.

CBB217 Theory Of Structures I
Types of structural systems - trusses, beams, frames, arches, cable roofs, plate and shell structures, masonry structures; Supports and connections: types of supports and
connections of structural components; Actions, reactions and equilibrium; Loads, force systems and equilibrium. Stresses and strains: Hooke's law, state of stress and strain at a point, principal stresses: Stress resultants, free body diagram and types of internal forces; Section properties: centroid of area, moment of inertia, parallel-axis theorem, sectional principal axes; Trusses: axial tensile and compressive forces in plane trusses; Beams: bending moments and shear forces, diagrams; Frames: bending moments, shear forces and axial forces; Stability; initial stability, instability under loads, buckling of compression members, local buckling of member thin walls.

CCB221 Strength of Materials (2)
This course covers the following basic principles: Beams; Stresses and strains; Bending; Torsion; Composite sections; Buckling.

CCB222 Theory of Structures II

CCB311 Geomechanics I (3)
This course is a general introduction to soil mechanics including soil formation, physical properties, soil classification, soil compaction and stress distribution.

CCB313 Surveying (3)
Basic concepts covered in this course are as follows: Distances: Tape and optical square, optical distance measurement, Electronic distance measurement, GPS measurement; Levelling concepts and applications: Types of levelling surveys, types of instruments (including digital levels), error sources, corrections, checking and adjustment, field procedures; Areas and volumes: computation from plans, co-ordinates, measurement, intersections, gradients, indivisibility; Theodolite: concepts, error sources, checking, temporary and permanent adjustment, observation procedures, booking and calculation; Use of angles: single point determination, multiple point determination, triangulation, trilateration, traversing; Tachometry: polar radiation, instrument types, free set up, plotting, total stations, demonstration of software for manipulating survey data; Setting out: buildings, sewer lines, roads. This course consists of field practicals.

CCB315 Environmental Engineering (2)
Ecology, surface water pollution and control, groundwater pollution and control, air pollution, noise pollution and environmental regulations.

CCB312 Cad for Civil Engineers (2)
Creating and maintaining cost and specification database; Design of prototypes; Mini projects in designs.

CCB314 Engineering Geology (2)
This course gives an introduction to planet Earth, including but not limited to Minerals, Rocks, Structural geology, Surface processes and soils, Groundwater systems, Natural resources, Engineering geology and environmental geology.

CCB316 Principles of Mining Engineering (2)
Mineral resources; Life-of-mine and mining cycles; Mining production optimisation; Mine design fundamentals; Ore preparation; Ancillary engineering services.

CCB317 Theory Of Structures III
The course begins with the basic principles of limit state design of steelwork connections, and tensile and compression structural elements to BS5950. The application of those principles to design of roof trusses and spatial grid systems constitutes the main course content. Other types of long span structures, and tensile and shell like structures are also covered. The course stresses reference to case studies in existing and historical buildings, and combines critical analysis of such solutions with the students' work comprising a partial computer-aided design of large span structural system. Steelwork design to BS5950: types of connections and joints, design of bolted and welded joints with an emphasis put special grid structures, design of steel tension and compression members. Roof trusses: types and uses, design of truss members and joints. Large span spatial grid structures: flat (plate like) and curved (shell like), form-finding and design principles. Tensile, textile and hybrid structures: basic concepts and examples of existing structures.

CCB321 Structural Analysis (3)
Determinate frames; Force displacement relations; Influence lines of determinate beams; Analysis of indeterminate beams; Influence diagrams and critical load conditions; Approximate methods of frame analysis.

CCB322 Fluid Mechanics & Hydraulics (3)
Concept of real and ideal fluid; Fluid properties; Measurement instruments; Fluid at rest; Kinematics of fluid flow; Hydrodynamics; Flow through pipes; Flow through open channels; Reciprocating pumps; Centrifugal pumps.

CCB323 Construction Principles (3)
Structure of the construction industry, site organisation and investigation, basic construction techniques, ground treatment methods, framed structures, construction plant, maintenance, repair and alteration.

CCB324 Construction Materials (3)

CCB325 Geomechanics II (2)
Soil permeability and seepage analysis; Seepage pressures on structures; Piping in soils; Soil Stabilization; Soil Exploration.

CCB329 Architectural Design (2)
Architectural design principles; Design program; Site planning; Functional organisation; Room Planning; Massing.

CCB411 Structural Design (3)
Basic principles of reinforced concrete design; Section design for moment; Shear; Deflection and cracking; Simply supported and continuous beams; Slabs; Columns; Foundations; Retaining walls; Examples of design of reinforced concrete structures.

CCB412 Water Engineering (3)
Fundamentals to drinking water supply; Water demand; Water quality assessment; Water treatment.

CCB413 Traffic and Highway Engineering (3)
Geometric design; Design of off-street parking facilities; Road safety; Traffic management; Road construction materials; Earthworks and earthworks equipment; Drainage; Road construction technology; Pavement design; Highway construction; Highway maintenance and road reconstruction and rehabilitation procedures; Use of computer software.

CCB414 Geotechnics (2)
Consolidation; Shear strength; Stability of slopes; Earth pressure; Earth retaining structures; Reinforced earth.

CCB415 Civil Engineering Construction (2)
Land reclamation techniques; Tunnel construction; Offshore Construction;
Construction of concrete structures; Managing construction equipment.

CCB416 Foundation Design (2)
- Soil Formation; Index Properties of Soils; Engineering Characteristics of Soils; Various Types of Foundations. Soil Formation, Residual and Transported Soils, Void Ratio; Porosity, Water Content, Degree of Saturation and Unit Weights of Soils; Classification Tests and Classification of Soils; Compaction and Consolidation Characteristics of Soils; Shear Strength of Soils; Bearing Capacity of Soils; Various types of Shallow and Deep Foundations. This course consists of a project proposal, written progress report and presentation.

CCB511 Foundation Structural Engineering (2)
- Soil Formation; Index Properties of Soils; Engineering Characteristics of Soils; Various Types of Foundations. Soil Formation, Residual and Transported Soils, Void Ratio; Porosity, Water Content, Degree of Saturation and Unit Weights of Soils; Classification Tests and Classification of Soils; Compaction and Consolidation Characteristics of Soils; Shear Strength of Soils; Bearing Capacity of Soils; Various types of Shallow and Deep Foundations. This course consists of a project proposal, written progress report and presentation.

CCB515 Transportation Engineering (2)
- Introduction to traffic flow theory; Traffic surveys; Principles of traffic analysis and forecasting; Transport planning strategies; Public transport; Transportation systems management.

CCB516 Foundation Design (2)
- Bearing capacity of soils; Types of foundations; Shallow foundation; Deep foundation; Improving site soil for foundation use; Field tests.

CCB517 Structural Dynamics (2)
- Oscillatory motion; Single-degree-of-freedom system; Resonance and related matters; Introduction to multi-degree of freedom systems; Normal mode vibration.

CCB518 Public Health Engineering (2)
- Environmental sanitation; solid waste management and public health practice.

CCB521–AST–ATER Engineering (2)
- Wastewater characteristics, primary treatment, secondary treatment, sludge treatment and disposal, advanced treatment and wastewater effluent disposal and reuse.

CCB523 Timber And Pre-stressed Concrete Structures (2)
- Timber Design; Design of Beams; Wood Columns; Trusses; Building design examples; Pre-stressed concrete; Basic principles; Design of members; Loss of pre-stress; DeRections and shear.

CCB524 Project II (3)
- This course consists of collecting, compiling, analysing data and interpreting results to write and orally present the report.

CCB525 Advanced Transportation Engineering (2)
- Design principles of pedestrian and bicycle facilities; planning for disabled people; Geometric design of railways; Airport layout and runway design; Belt conveyor design; Transportation forecast and modelling; Transportation systems impact assessment.

CCB526 Foundation on Problematic Soils (2)
- Expansive soils; Foundation design on expansive soils; Collapsible Soils; Foundation design in collapsible soils; Laboratory tests.

CCB527 Construction Costs And Financial Control (2)
- Characteristics and classification of construction costs; Financial costs and expenditures; Preparation, analysis and interpretation of management information.

CCB528 Estimating and Tendering (2)
- Estimating purposes and functions; Cost estimation; Types of estimates; Calculation of unit rates for civil engineering works, day works and prorata rates; Tendering procedures, Tender documents, Pre-tender Functions and Methods of Tendering; Selection of contractor; Bidding strategy.

Bachelor Of Geomatics

CGB111 Geomatics I (4)
- Introduction to Geomatics and review of the necessary mathematics; measurements of land: plane surveying; geodesy: the scientific foundation; measurements from space: satellite positioning and navigation. Mapping and managing geographic information.

CGB112 Survey Camp I (2)
- The survey camp covers fundamental principles of field methods; errors and field checks; optical distance measurement; trig heighting; taping; adjusting angles; levelling; traverses; horizontal circular curves; vertical curves; measuring longitudinal and cross-sections, and report writing. Emphasis is placed on practical experience. Students will be divided into groups of four or five persons.

CGB122 Survey Camp I (2)
- The survey camp covers fundamental principles of field methods; errors and field checks; optical distance measurement; trig heighting; taping; adjusting angles; levelling; traverses; horizontal circular curves; vertical curves; measuring longitudinal and cross-sections, and report writing. Emphasis is placed on practical experience. Students will be divided into groups of four or five persons.

CGB121 Geomatics II (4)
- Introduction to survey standards and specifications; survey network design and adjustment; operational and quality control aspects of electronic distance measurement (EDM), angle measurement, trig heighting and precise levelling; introduction to satellite positioning, observation techniques and data processing; advanced positioning techniques including automated field surveying, laser levels and reflectorless total stations to capture topographic data; data processing and analysis; setting out.

CGB211 Elements of Photogrammetry (3)
- The course aims at introducing the student to the geometry of aerial photographs, stereo photogrammetry, mapping with analogue photogrammetric instruments, analytical and digital photogrammetry.

CGB213 Principles of Cartography (3)
- The course aims at introducing the student to the basic concepts of cartography such as reference surfaces, coordinate systems and map projections, map design and layout, topographic and thematic cartography.

CGB221 Digital Photogrammetry (3)
- This course deals with concepts and applications of analytical photogrammetry, digital photogrammetry and satellite photogrammetry.

CGB222 Theory of Survey Adjustment (3)
- The course aims at introducing the student to methods of survey adjustment, linearization of equations, propagation of errors in survey measurements, least square methods, observation equations, condition equations and statistical analysis.

CGB223 Digital Cartography (3)
- This course deals with digital coordinates, digital representation of cartographic data, map digitisation, coordinate systems and datums, coordinate transformation, digital elevation models, geographic data acquisition, computer-aided statistical and thematic mapping.

CGB224 Programming for Geomatics (3)
- The course aims at introducing the student to object-oriented programming, activeX, networks & World Wide Web, spatial data structures, geographic software components: Open GIS specifications, MapObjects and ArcObjects.

ITB200 Industrial Training (4)
- During the course of industrial training, students shall undergo 8 weeks of supervised industrial training. Students shall be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules and regulations as applicable to the industry.

CGB311 Engineering Surveying (3)
- The course aims at introducing the student to methods of data collection in engineering projects. It covers curves, route surveys, and earthworks, DTMs in engineering surveys, construction surveying, deformation surveys and application of Lasers.

CGB312 Geodesy I (3)
- This course covers an introduction to geodesy, Coordinate transformations, Geodetic Astronomy, Geodetic computations and the geodetic control network in Botswana.

LAW354 Land Law for Geomatics (3)
- The course aims at presenting the various laws that impact on land administration. It covers concepts of Property law, Landownership,
Rights in land, Conveyancing and introducing the Various Acts on land in Botswana

CGB321 Introduction to Land Administration (3)
The course introduces the concepts of land; spatial organization; evolution of land tenure systems and concept of property; the cadastral concept and land information systems; land tenure systems in Botswana; land registration systems; cadastral surveying systems; boundary delimitation processes; survey systems; writing legal descriptions; retracement surveys; subdivision surveys; boundary evidence and possessory rights; land reform; land redistribution, land tenure reform, and land restitution in southern Africa.

CGB322 Principles of GIS (3)
The course aims to familiarize the students with the basic concepts of GIS. It covers the basic Concepts, Data Sources, Data Capture Methods, Data Structure and models, Hardware and software Configuration, Spatial relationships, GIS Analysis Functions, GIS and Remote Sensing, and a review of GIS software.

CGB323 Satellite Positioning Systems (3)
The objective of the course is to teach the basic principles of GPS, GLONASS and Galileo as means of position using satellite methods. It introduces the historical development of the three systems, the Signal Structure, GPS positioning concepts of resection from space, Point positioning, Relative positioning, Static positioning, Kinematic positioning RTK. Surveying and other mapping applications are also introduced.

CGB324 Geodesy II (3)
This course deals with the theoretical concepts of Satellite Geodesy and their use in positioning. It introduces students to concepts of Physical Geodesy leading to geopotential models, Orthometric and Geodetic Heights.

CGB325 Survey Camp II (2)
This is a field course covering planning and logistics of survey operations, horizontal control network, cadastral survey design; DTM modelling, precise engineering surveys, GPS surveys; production of final plan(s) using Geomatics software and report writing.

ITB300 Industrial Training (4)
After level 300, students shall further undergo 8 weeks of supervised industrial training. Students shall also be subjected to such codes, procedures, laws, rules and regulations as applicable to the industry.

CGB413 Advanced Land Administration (3)
The course introduces modern issues in land tenure, land policy, land management and administration; survey law and practice: a profession for the 21st century; land information management: principles and applications. The role of property systems in land management, natural resource management, and parcel-based information systems. Comparative analysis of land tenure, land reform, and land administration systems.

CGB415 Advanced Cartographic Visualisation (3)
The course aims at introducing cartographic visualisation techniques. The course content will include cartographic visualisation processes; different visualisation strategies in Geospatial Data infrastructures; exploratory cartography using the intranet and WWW; Web Map Design and Multimedia.

CGB416 GIS Design and Implementation (3)
The course aims at teaching student how to design and implement a GIS system. The course content includes analysis of requirement; system planning and specifications; implementation of system; Legal and Policy issues.

CGB417 – Digital Image Processing (3)
The course is designed to introduce digital image processing concepts with specific reference to Remote Sensing data. It covers the basic concepts of Digital Image, Source of data, Data formats; Image Pre-processing; Image Enhancement; Information Extraction; Image Processing System Considerations.

CGB418 Principles and Practice of SDI Development (3)
This course introduces the principles and practice of implementing national spatial data infrastructures, challenges and opportunities for developing NSDI.

CGB 422 Cadastral Surveying Practice (3)
The course aims at preparing the students to have sound knowledge of the legal and technical requirements for making a cadastral survey. The course content includes cadastral surveying; methods of performing cadastral surveys; role of a land surveyor in resolving boundary disputes and as an expert witness; cadastral surveying computations; cadastral layout design and implementation; Land Survey Act and regulations; Sectional Titles Act and regulations; Tribal Land Act and regulations; Town and Country Planning Act and regulations; Deeds Registry Act and regulations; Survey of mining leases.

CGB423 GIS Applications (3)
The course aims at familiarizing the students with various real life applications of GIS. The content includes guided study topics in the following fields Topographic Mapping, Environment, Forestry; Biology; Geology; Mining; Utilities; AM/AFM Systems; ULS; GIS in developing countries. Other relevant application areas can be discussed here and will depend on student interest.

CGB424 Special Studies in Land Administration (3)
The course introduces the concepts of land management and land administration from economic and institutional perspectives; evolving concepts of property and land tenure systems; Design, implementation, monitoring and evaluation of land reforms; Post-settlement support interventions.

CGB414 Remote Sensing Applications (3)
The course aims at familiarizing the students with various mapping applications of remote sensing. The course content will include guided study of various applications of remote sensing such as earth science, agriculture and land use and water resources.

CGB425 Location Based Services (3)
The objective of the course is to present the use of mobile technology to the students as possible utility in both field and office automation in a survey practice. The course synopsis covers Introduction to LBS, Databases, Linear referencing, and Data transmission.

(Mining Engineering courses offered in the junior years at UB)


MINN 221 – Introduction to Mine Safety & Health
Health and safety issues in mining: common mining hazards relating to machinery, electricity, explosives and non-explosive gas and dust, radiation, heat and humidity; diesel exhausts; mine ventilation; noise; illumination; elements of safe working environment; hazardous materials. Hazards, accidents & emergencies: hazard control. Fires: Fire types, causes and effects, fire-fighting techniques.

MINN 311 Introduction to Mine Surveying
Basic point positioning methods. Errors in measurements: types, error propagation. Distance measurement: tape, Electronic distance measurement. Levelling: levelling instruments, levelling methods field note preparation. Angular measurement; angular measurement instrumentation, field note preparation, plane surveying coordinate systems, map projections and traversing. Introduction to Surpac survey and other related CAD software packages.

MIN 312 Introduction to Geology
Introduction to the planet Earth: earth’s structure, the role of plate tectonics in geological systems and processes, the evolution of continental and oceanic basins, geological time. Minerals, rocks and soils: crystallography, crystal chemistry and crystal properties of the main rock forming minerals; characteristics, formation, identification and classification of igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic rocks.
MIN 313 Introduction to Mineral Processing
Review of physical and chemical principles: review of the properties of minerals that are of use in mineral processing unit operations; Principles of liberation, concentration and separation: Comminution methods, crushing and grinding. Ore handling and sampling: Screening and particle size analysis. Classification: separation by gravity concentration (including dense medium separation), flotation, electrostatic and magnetic methods; Coal preparation technology: washing, briquetting. Slimes: the production, effect and treatment of slimes including thickeners and filters. Water use and recovery in mineral processing: Calculations of plant efficiency.

MIN 314 Computer Applications in Mining

MIN 315 Small Scale Mining
Botswana Mining Law: provisions of the Mines and Minerals Act as it relates to mineral rights acquisitions and the various permits and licences will be introduced. Appropriate technologies for the artisanal miner: The business plan: The basic concept and development of the business plan; elements of a bankable feasibility study. Mine financing and the time value of money: Safety and health in small-scale mining: issues of safety and health facing the small-scale miner, special problems and possible solutions. Specific applications: panning, quarrying; basic metallurgical treatment, including leaching.

MIN 316 Elements of Mining Environmental Management

MIN 321 Elements of Mining Methods
Deciding on a mining method: geological factors, economic factors; advantages and disadvantages of surface and underground mining. Surface mining methods: open pit operations, open cast coal mining; comparison of surface mining methods. Underground mining methods: unsupported and supported mining; back-fill methods; caving methods; comparison of underground mining methods. Quarrying methods: sand and aggregate production; dimension stone extraction.

MIN 322 Elements of Mine Safety and Health
General hazards in the mining industry: identification and control of hazards; safe handling, transportation and storage of hazardous materials. Mine safety and health: mine rescue, emergency evacuation procedures and escape routes; emergency management; machine guarding; the types of protective equipment, their usage and limitations. Accidents: theory and principles of accident prevention; accident reporting, investigation and analysis. Inspection procedures: review of standard auditing systems, e.g. NOSA. Emergency preparedness: causes and effects of emergencies; escape routes; drills; teams. Fire: fires types, causes and effects; special instances of underground fires; fire-fighting techniques.

MIN 323 Elements of Mine Ventilation
The fundamentals of airflow: introduction to fluid dynamics as it relates to ventilation, total pressure components and pressure losses; pressure measurement and surveying techniques; gas laws; airflow measurement. Basic fan engineering: fan construction, characteristics and selection; regulation and control of ventilation. Atmospheric contaminants: the properties, origins and effect of dust and gases in mines; radiation; concepts of threshold values for hazardous substances; basic treatment procedures for exposure to contaminants; sampling methods; statutory requirements. Air conditioning: fundamentals of heat transfer; heat measurement and human heat stress; refrigeration technology; physiological effects of heat and humidity.

MIN 324 Botswana Mining Legislation

MIN 325 – Introduction to Mine Supervision & Management
Effective communication in the workplace: basic communication theory; effective communication including meetings; communication technologies. Human resource management: selection and placement of staff, job analysis and performance appraisal; training and human resource development. Principles of supervision and management: characteristics of an effective supervisor, leadership styles and organisational control. Project management skills: defining, planning, implementing and completing projects; time management. Industrial relations: stakeholders including unions, employers, employer associations and the role of the State; employer-employee relations; worker compensation; industrial action; conflict management, delegation, motivation.

MIN 326 Mine Surveying
Review of plane surveying methods. Operational surveying: characteristics of surface and underground mine surveying tasks, horizontal and vertical curves, area and volume calculation, stockpile measurement, survey requirements of civil construction including dams, roads, transportation systems and service positioning. Surface and Underground traversing; double angle, azimuth and compass traverses, distance measurement in traversing, detailing boundaries of mine workings, steeply incline lines, side telescope calculations, traverse calculation, corrections and reduction. Preparation of Maps and Sections: field notes, manual and computer calculations, drawing plans and sections, working plans.

Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering
Level 300
Semester 5
EEEB311 Network Theory
Review of Circuit laws and theorems; Network topology; Time and frequency domain analysis; Three phase circuits; Computer simulation; Two-port networks; Application of Fourier Analysis to electrical networks; Application of Laplace transforms methods in electrical networks; Network functions; Active and passive filter theory and design; Synthesis of two-element type one port networks; State-variable analysis.

EEB 315 Computer Programming
Algorithms and Flowcharting, Program Structure, Data types, Data Input and Output, Control constructs, Subprograms, User-Defined data and Arrays, Records, Files, Introduction to Object-oriented programming.

EEB 316 Electrical Measurements & Instrumentation I
Standards, Units and Measurement Errors, Deflection Instruments, Measurement Methods, DC Potentiometer and Bridge Measurements, AC Potentiometer and Bridge Measurements.

EEB317 Principles of Telecommunications
Receivers, Transmitters, Noise in Analogue Communications Systems.

MAT 391 Engineering Mathematics III
Vector Analysis, numerical solution of differential equations, Fourier series representation of periodic functions.

Level 300 Courses
Semester 6
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV
Laplace transforms, Partial differential equations and Complex analysis.

EEB322 Digital Electronics I
The basic logic functions; Derived logic functions; Boolean Algebra; Minimization techniques; NAND and NOR gates Universal function; Number Systems; Signed numbers; Arithmetic circuits; Combinational Circuits with MSI devices; Integrated Circuit Technologies; Digital to Analogue and Analogue to Digital Converters; Sequential Circuits.

EEB323 Analogue Electronics
Diode semiconductor theory; Diode applications & circuits; Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT); Field Effect Transistors (FET); Transistor Small Signal Amplifiers; Amplifier Frequency Response; Feedback.

EEB326 Electrical Machines I

EEB327 Electromagnetic Field Theory
Introductory Vector Analysis; Electrostatics; Magnetostatics; Waves and Applications

Level 400
Semester 7
EEB418 Control Theory I
Introduction to control systems; System analogies; Mathematical representation; Controllers; Time domain analysis; System stability

MMB414 Engineering Management
This is an introductory course to management science and engineering economics covering management theory, social responsibility of an industrial engineer, health safety, engineering project appraisal, financial control systems, and impact of information technology on organisations.

EEB411 Electronic Devices and Circuits
Operational Amplifiers theory; Op-amp circuits; Positive feedback; Power Amplifiers; Power devices; converters and inverters, Optoelectronic devices, analogue filters.

EEB412 Digital Electronics II
Combinational circuits; Sequential circuits; Shift Register circuits and operation; Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs).

= EEB413 Power Generation and Distribution
Transmission Lines; Power generation; Power control; Distributors; Distribution equipment; Supply irregularities.

EEB414 Electrical Machines II

EEB415 Digital Communications and Telephony

EEB416 Electrical Measurements and Instrumentation II
Electronic Instruments, Oscilloscope measurements, Calibration of Instruments, Transducers, Signal Conditioning

EEB417 Microprocessor Based Systems
Microprocessor based system components; Microprocessor Instruction and Programming; Microprocessor Applications

Level 400
Semester 8
ITB420 Industrial Training II
Structure and layout of the organization; All/selected topics from: Office/site organisation and layout; purchasing and warehousing; manufacture, fabrication and assembly; building and construction; costing, estimating and tendering; operations; maintenance; plant erection, installation and testing, information system/design studio, involvement in small design assignments and projects.

Level 500
Semester 9
EEB511 Control Theory II
State-space models of linear systems; Solution of state equations; Digital control systems; Discrete-time systems stability analysis; Non-linear systems

EEB512 Digital Signal Processing I
Types of Signals; Time Domain Analysis; Frequency Domain Analysis; Z-Transform; Design of Non-recusive Digital Filter; Design of Recursive Digital Filter.

EEB513 Analogue Electronic System Design
Approximate Diode Models; BJT Small-Signal Amplifiers; Large-Signal Amplifiers; Operational Amplifiers; Compensation Amplifier Systems; Oscillator and Timing Circuits; Power Supply Circuits; Electronic Equipment Reliability and Fault Diagnosis.

EEB514 Process Instrumentation
Analog/digital signal conditioning and transmission; Optical measurements; Measurements of process parameters; Analytical Measurements; Control valves and actuators; Instrumentation systems; Smart/intelligent transducer systems

EEB515 Power Systems Analysis

EEB516 Power Electronics
Rectifier circuits; Thyristor circuits and controls; Converters; Inverters. Filters.

EEB517 Computer-Aided Electrical Machine Analysis

EEB518 Guided Electromagnetic Waves
Microwave Transmission Lines; Microwave Waveguides; Passive Microwave Devices; Active Microwave Devices; Introduction to Optical Fibres.

EEB519 Computer Architecture and Design
Design methodology; ALU design; Memory organization and design; Control organization and design; RISC processing and pipelining.

EEB520 Project (Stage I)
Selection of project type, its area and scope. Defining the problem and working out a scheduled action plan. Knowledge and technical data retrieval form relevant literature and other information sources, date analysis. Working out project methodology. Project pre-design. Acquiring the required materials, software and instrumentation (for experimental studies). Alternatively it may include preliminary data collection at an industrial plant. Writing a literature overview and a progress report. Project presentation.

Level 500
Semester 10
EEB521 Project (Stage II)
This is the continuation of the course EEB510

EEB522 Digital Signal Processing II
Filters derived from analogue designs; Fourier Transform; FFT Processing; Adaptive Filtering; Hardware Implementation of Digital Filters; DSP applications to Communications; DSP applications in Multi-Media

EEB523 Digital Electronic System Design
Course Synopsis:
Programmable Devices; Finite State Machines; System Design Using Programmable devices. Asynchronous Circuits. Reed-Muller algebraic description.

EEB524 Process Control Systems
Process control principles; Techniques for
Department of Industrial Design and Technology

DTB210 Elements Of Design (3)
This course covers the following: Design processes; Methods of searching ideas; Analysing and designing simple elements; Marketing and design – qualitative and quantitative market surveys; Manufacturing and design; Purchasing and design; Product evaluation. (2-hrs lecture, 2-hrs tutorial per week)

DTB211 Workshop Technology I (2)
This course covers the following: Structure of materials; Plastics: thermoplastics and thermosetting; Wood: natural and man-made; Metals: pure and alloys; Testing, Measuring and Marking out; Common hand tools and their use for wasting processes; Finishing processes. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB220 Designing Artefacts (3)
This course covers the following: Market research; Analysis of existing designs: Critical appraisals; Value addition; Graphical, mathematical and physical modelling; Design brief; Brainstorming: group discussion and overcoming mind blocks; Alternative solutions; Design folio and diary; Employing manufacturing techniques; Evaluating the artefact. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB221 Workshop Technology II (2)
Joining processes: Welding, soldering and brazing; Plastic welding; Fasteners; Casting processes; Forming processes: forge working, extrusion, drawing and rolling, vacuum forming, bending, injection moulding and blow moulding; Machining: Heat Treatment Processes; Finishing. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

DTB222 Graphics (2)
This course covers the following: Materials and equipment; freehand sketching; three-dimensional drawing; perspective drawing; rendering colour; working drawings; presenting information; shape and form; colour; Advertising: logos and trademarks, packaging, display and exhibition design; Computer inputs and outputs: computer art, computer aided modelling: (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB300 Industrial Training (3)
This course covers the following: Relationship between education, industry and society; Types of industries and production systems; Organisation and management strategies; Impact of mass production on society and environment: Culture, work ethics and discipline in industries; Role of labour organisation; Effects of technology changes on employment; Students will also complete a 7-week Industrial Training. (Vacation Course)

DTB311 Design, Technology and Society (2)
This course covers the following: Cultural Influences; Environmental Issues – pollution, waste disposal, recycling; Economic influences on design and manufacturing; Case Studies; Contemporary Design Issues. Conservation of natural resources: Obsolescence; The role of the designer in industry: (2-hrs lecture per week)

DTB312 Aesthetics (2)
This course covers the following: Philosophical basis of aesthetics; Visual and tactical impact; Styling products; Balance and symmetry; Colour combinations and appeal: Harmonious and complimentary colours; The Golden Mean and the Fibonacci series; Environmental synergy; Analysis of existing products vis-à-vis aesthetics: (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB313 Ergonomics (2)
This course covers the following: General principles and dimensions of ergonomics; Anthropometrics: Body size and human diversity; human reach and use of anthropometric data, and the need for personal space; Muscular work, occupational stress and fatigue: Means of ensuring stress free environment; Time and motion study for some tasks; Mental activity, boredom and efficiency considerations; Design of workplace and utilization of space; Workstations for computers, driving, office, industry and domestic purposes. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB314 Materials Processing (3)
This course is a comparative study of different wasting techniques, covering the following: fabrication techniques for wooden structures; tolerances and fits for assemblies; selection of joints; Silver Soldering; Forming techniques; Plastics fabrication processes; Die casting; Model making techniques and tools for different materials. (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB315 Internet For Designers (2)
This course is an introduction to Internet and Intranets structure. Course contents include: Setting up Internet; Search engines; Surfing the web; Use of multimedia tools; Interactive web sites and exchange of information; Creating and editing HTML documents; Creation of web sites; Alternative web designs; Design on an interactive web site. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB317 Textile and Leather Technology (2)
This course covers the following: Properties of textile materials; Classification; Selection; Properties of leathers; Dying and tanning; Design of articles; Cutting, joining and finishing processes; Use of computers in textile and leather design; Field visits and studies: (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB321 Computer Aided Design (3)
This course covers the following: Different software for modelling and design; Two-dimensional drafting; Three-dimensional modelling with isometric, oblique and axonometric views; Software packages for design; Use of packages for several selected applications; Innovations in the use of computers for designing: (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB323 Pneumatic Controls (2)
This course covers the following: Input process- output for pneumatics systems; Closed-loop control and feedback; Basic Fluid mechanics: Incompressible flow; Pressure transmission and types of pneumatic systems: Elements of pneumatic systems and circuit controls: Compressed air-supply; Steps in conditioning filters, moisture removal, and lubricant addition; Operation and application of pneumatic components. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)
DTB324 Product Analysis [3]  
This course covers the following: Analysing the need and functions of a variety of products and critique on their design; Value analysis; Identifying the component/function relationship and material characteristics; Product function analysis; Studies on several existing industrial and domestic designs; Field visits and studies. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB410 Computer Based Manufacturing (2)  
This course covers fundamental concepts of computerised manufacturing: Computer modelling for manufacture; CNC machine tools including lathes, multi axis machines and special machines; Programming semi industrial CNC machines and manufacturing simple components; Introduction to computer integrated manufacture for mass production. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB411 Hydraulic Controls (2)  
This course covers the following: Basic hydrostatics; Forces on submerged bodies; Piezometric head; Manometers; Applications of hydrostatics: Bernoulli's equation applied to incompressible flow; Reaction forces; Momentum and moment of momentum principles; Fluid control circuits and systems; Fluid logic devices: Principles of hydraulic devices. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB412 Product Design 1 (3)  
This course covers the following: Types of products with alternative structures; Structures, equilibrium and Pin-jointed structures; Types of mechanisms: Products with transmission of motion and forces; Change of type of motion; Lifting machines and their efficiency; Factor of safety in design. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB413 Special Human Needs (2)  
This course covers the following: Maslow's hierarchy of needs; Design in the context of special human need; Basic principles of ergonomics and anthropometrics for special human needs; Anthropometrics data collection, analysis and application; Design, detail, make, test and evaluate the Product Design. Client involvement and evaluation: (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB414 School D&T Projects (2)  
This course covers the following: Factors to be considered and classification of projects by levels and difficulty index; Formulation of project tasks and detailing of learning events; Alternative methods of project supervision and their comparison; Role-playing; Motivation and incentives. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB415 Design For Sustainable Development (2)  
The course covers the following: the relation between Design and Sustainable Development, various models of Development, and the relation between Design, Technology, Development and Economics. Community products in the rural context: Field visits; Design for durability; Use of indigenous materials; appropriate technology; Sound social and ecological design; Design for lifelong use and serviceability; Design for recycling and evolution; Miniaturisation; Dematerialisation; Design for re-use and re-manufacture, new theories on Design for Sustainable Development. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB416 Interior Design (2)  
This course covers the following: Physiological, psychological, sociological, aesthetic and ecological aspects of person-interior environment interaction; Conceptual design and documentation; classification of interior spaces; Primary and secondary functions of different interiors; Alternative design solutions: (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB421 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)  
This course covers the following: Equipment and tools: Clay and its properties; Natural ceramics: Working properties of ceramics; Shaping clay, Firing, and Glazing; Making glass: Working properties of glass; Engraving; Painting. Heat forming. Staining. Working properties of stone. Carving. Masonry. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB422 Product Design 2 (2)  

DTB423 Minor Design-and-Make Project (2)  
This course guides students through the process of a design and make project from the initial stage of choosing an appropriate, through selection of what research to undertake, selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas, selection of appropriate means of realisation and objective product evaluation: (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB424 Safety and First Aid (2)  
This course covers the following: Safety rules; Safety practices; Safety symbols and their interpretations; Causes and types of accidents in the workplace; Methods of giving First Aid to different cases of accident/injuries; First Aid and personal safety; First aid demonstrations and certification by the Red Cross Society of Botswana. (1-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB511 Major Design Project (3)  
Students will proceed by way of their preferred design methodologies by conceiving alternative solutions, designing, selection of appropriate process, research, data analysis, etc. Students will select appropriate forms of modelling ideas and present a design folio at the completion of the course. (1-hr lecture, 4-hrs practical per week)

DTB513 Product Design 3 (2)  
This course covers the following: Psychology of creativity: Brain maps and lateral thinking for alternative solutions; Properties of newer materials, processes and advantages in terms of cost, etc.; Design Protection: Patent law, Design registration. Copyright, Design right, Trademarks, Brand names, Company symbols, logotypes and ‘Passing off’ (2-hrs lecture, 1-hr tutorial per week)

DTB514 Industrial Product Design (2)  
This course covers the following: Product and process design, Product development, Integrated product development, Product development teams, quality control, Production system design, Design for mass production, Mass-customisation, Performance design, Technical parameters of products. (2-hr lecture, 1-hr tutorial per week)

DTB515 Microcomputer Control (2)  
This course covers the following: Computer systems and control (e.g. control sensors); motorised control system (e.g. Stepper and DC electric motors); Pneumatics as control system; analogue to digital conversion; microprocessor and micro controller systems (e.g. PIC 16F84 or STAMP controller); system design and development tools. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB521 Major ‘Make and Evaluate’ Project (3)  
Realisation of the designed artefact: Selection of appropriate means of manufacturing and finishing; Incorporating necessary design modifications; Product evaluation by revisiting the need and the consumer; Completion of the ‘Design folio’ to include manufacturing aspects and product evaluation. (6-hrs practical per week)

DTB522 Case Studies in Designing (2)  
Critique of several cases with design problems: Problems encountered in manufacturing; Maintainability and meeting the desired functional; Safety and quality standards; Improving designs and conceiving newer designs. (1-hr lecture, 2-hrs practical per week)

DTB524 Environmental Factors In Design (2)  
This course covers the following: Human environment, Factors influencing environment, the nature of pollution: Population growth with automation and new materials. Human waste and disposal: Industrial pollution and control: Effects of new materials and processes on environment. Global aspects and control of environment. Designing for environment friendliness. (2-hr lecture)

IDB311 Industrial Design: Concept and
Practice (2)
Origins of Industrial Design, Practicing Industrial Design, Design Consultancy, Freelance Design, In-house Designer, Industrial Design theory and practice, Industrial Design in relation to other professions, Industrial Design in relation to other bodies of knowledge. A critique of the role of Industrial Design in the following type of companies: home appliances, home-ware, toys, recreational products, interior products, medical and health care, furniture, transport, computers, product package, exhibition design, signage systems, product graphics, presentation techniques and applied photography. Strategies for successful design practice. (2-hr lecture per week)

IDB312 Design of Mechanism and Structures
Analysis and design of products with regard to different types of pin-jointed plane and space structures and equilibrium. Types of loading and forces in members. Factor of safety in design and its selection criteria. Types of motion and basic mechanisms for products. Function and design aspects of different elements in products, e.g., levers, shafts, pulleys, threaded elements, helical springs, belt and rope drive, coupling, slider, chain, ratchet, brake and clutch. Design of bell crank lever and toggle mechanism. Design of linear, rotary and rocking motion linkages. Cam and follower mechanisms. Design of simple lifting machines and their characteristics. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB313 History of Industrial Design (2)
This course explores, intellectual and philosophical framework that have shaped design, the relationship of design to the wider patterns of production and consumption, the effects of changes in materials and technology on the form and material culture, development of the design profession and design education, and the major design styles in history, design paradigms, The Bauhaus Movement, Modernism, Post-modernism, relation between design and technological and socio-economic change, Industrial design as a mirror of social and economic changes. (1-hr lecture per week)

IDB 321 Computer Aided 3-D Design (2)
Role of CAD in Industrial Design. Fundamentals of CAD, CAD software and operating systems, workstation environment, data storage and input devices, data exchange standards, graphic processors, graphic terminals, 2D and 3D graphic elements, 2D and 3D translation, hidden line algorithms, mass property algorithm. Wireframe modelling, solid modelling, constructive solid geometry, surface modelling, methods of surface construction, surface of revolution. Overview of rapid prototyping, virtual reality. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 322 Product Design (2)
Product Design models: total design method versus partial design method, concurrent versus linear and cyclic methods, techniques of disclosing the brief, concept generation, concept selection procedures, concept refinement, product architecture, concept synthesis techniques, product systematisation, quality control, determinants of design specification, production system design, performance design, Designing ornamental products versus designing technical products, functionalist design versus form dominated design, form follows function dictum, product styling techniques, product semantics theory. Man-machine interface design, product interactivity, design for the client versus design for users, design for mass production, design for manual assembly, design for automatic assembly. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 323 Basic Control Systems (2)

IDB 324 Ceramics, Glass and Stone Technology (2)
Equipment and tools, Clay and its properties, Natural ceramics, Working properties of ceramics, Shaping clay, Firing, Glazing, Equipment and tools, Making glass, Working properties of glass, Engraving, Painting, Heat forming, Staining, Equipment and tools, Working properties of stone, Carving, Masonry, Computers in ceramics, glass and stone technology, Design and manufacture of articles appropriate to ceramics, glass and stone. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 411 Computer Aided Manufacturing (2)

Research Methodology, choosing a topic, fact finding, assessment of information, problem definition and bounding, problem solving, project planning, forecasting and report writing, major research library and especially its resources such as abstracts, indices, computer databases, problem solving (synetics, brainstorming). Research methods for practical design problems, users needs analysis, focus groups, experimential research, observation techniques, product usability evaluation techniques, practice-based research, research through design. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr Tutorials per week)

IDB 413 Minor Project (3)
Selection of the process which is appropriate to the type of project, selection of what research to undertake, selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas, selection of appropriate means of realisation, objective product evaluation. Application of design concepts to identified problems and rationalisation and justification of selected design intervention approach vis-à-vis various possible alternatives. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 414 Eco-product Design (2)

IDB 415 Universal Design (2)
Universal Design Principles, Universal Design and inclusiveness, usability, equitable use, design for people of all ages and abilities, barrier free design, Design for flexibility in use, simple and intuitive use, perceptible information, tolerance for error, design for low physical effort, size and space for approach and use, trans-generational design strategies, design for the ageing methods, design for the disabled strategies, usability principles. Universal design assessment and checklist, usability assessment methods and checklist, analysis of products that meet the universal design criteria. Problems and limitations of universal design. Universal access legislation (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 400 Industrial Training (3)
Types of industries- primary and secondary industries. Production systems – single item, batch, mass production. Organisation and management strategies used in industries. The impact of mass production on society and
IDB 511 Major Project-design (3)
Students will proceed by way of their preferred design methodologies by conceiving alternative solutions, designing, selection of appropriate process, research, data analysis etc. Selection of appropriate forms of modelling ideas and presentation of design with a design folio. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 512 Contemporary Issues in Industrial Design (2)
Controversies surrounding industrial design includes; Social Responsibility, Environmental Responsibility, gender, equity and equality, Poverty alleviation, Ethics, Industrial Design in the Post-Material Society, Universal Access of Products and Facilities, Design and the Ageing population, Problems of Developing Countries, North-South Divide, Botswana’s problems, the form and function debate, consumerism, electronic-futures (e-futures), National Economy, Globalisation as a determinant of discourse, Cultural considerations in design, Nano-technology, mass-customisation, Virtual Reality, Virtual Product Design, Remote Design.
(2-hr lecture, 1-hr practical, 1-hr tutorial per week)

IDB 513 Advanced Product Design (2)
Product Development, Product Development Teams, Innovation Process, masspersonalisation, product differentiation, flexible product development, advanced paradigms for Product Development, mass customisation process, the reactive process, best practice in design of customised products, part commonality approach, optimizing product architecture, standardisation, order fulfilment, customisation and configuration costs, design for manufacturability, mistake proof design, modular design strategy, concurrent product design, co-designing. Customisation of products for advanced manufacturing, product line architecture, process infrastructures, Technology Push products, Market-pull products, platform products, design for niche’ markets. Invention databases, collaborative technologies, Limitations, problems and challenges of customisation. (1-hr lecture, 3-hr practical per week)

IDB 514 Design Management (2)
Design Management in companies, Managing the design process, managing the corporate identity, managing company environmental graphics, managing new product development, managing design teams, design as strategic corporate tool, role of design management in turning a company to a Design-Driven business, managing design resources, managers and designers, managing design across organisational boundaries, managing the product innovation process, design and product evaluation, cultivating information and idea network. Design management tools and strategies. (2-hr lecture per week)

IDB 515 Occupational Health and Safety (2)
Ergonomics of work, Occupational hazards and preventative measures, Legal considerations, Health and Safety standards, Safety symbols and colours, Protective equipment and work practice controls, Design of hand tools, Construction activities, Fire prevention and protection, Seating and seat design, Workstation design, Lighting, colour and vision, Noise and vibration, Heat and ventilation, Manual material handling, Applied human kinematics and anthropometrics, Hazardous processes, Environmental pollution. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 516 Design Studies (2)
Cultural influences in design, Political and economic implications on design, Philosophical debates in design, Design and its impact on development, Social analyses of design, Identification of core issues that are significant to the area of design studies being investigated, Application of research methods to design studies, Application of design studies to related areas such as technology, engineering, art, architecture and photography. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 517 Optimisation in Design (2)
Systems approach to design. Optimisation and synergy of subsystems and components for materials, costs, quality, time, manufacturability, maintenance and energy conservation. Need-technology-customer matrix and diversification-capability matrix; optimisation of diversification. Failure modes and effects analysis for optimisation. Quality function deployment aspect of optimisation. QFD model formulation and optimiser analysis. Value analysis and optimisation. Case studies of design optimisation. (2-hr lecture per week)

IDB 521 Major Project-production (3)
Realisation of the designed artefact. Selection of appropriate means of manufacturing and finishing, Incorporating necessary design modifications. Product evaluation by revisiting the need and the consumer. Completion of the ‘Design folio’ to include manufacturing aspects and product evaluation. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 523 Professional Practice (2)
Various models of design practice, reflective practitioner, developing a corporate approach, managing product design and development process, strategic planning, time and people management, computer-based time schedules, presentation and communication skills, writing skills for design-related discourses such as; briefs, rationales, reports and resumes. Tendering for jobs, authority approvals, publicity, techniques for improving productivity. Pricing and costing of design projects, quality assurance, staff resource allocation, staff salaries and associated costs. Legal classifications of industrial designs, design protection, ownership of designs, contract and administration, sub-contracting, design registration, patenting designs, copyright, product liability, franchise, design protection in Botswana. Design ethics, moral obligations, analysis of design practice firms around the world, problems of design practice. (1-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 522 Design for Automation (3)
Elements of automation. Need and rationale for time and motion study and its applications in automation. Different types of jigs and fixtures and their relative merits. Jigs and fixtures design for precision and their indexing. Tool design for automation. Tool geometry, ie, dimensions, angles and clearances and tolerances. Tool materials selection. Modular tooling system, tool holders and adapters. Tool locating and clamping, fasteners, etc. Use of dies; elements of die design. Tooling for numerical controls. Integrated computer aided design and manufacture with examples. Design of artefacts for integrated design and manufacture. Introduction to robotics and simple applications in design for automation. (2-hr lecture, 2-hr practical per week)

IDB 524 Multimedia for Industrial Designers (3)
Need for multimedia in Industrial design and dissemination. Role of multimedia in effective communication and presentations. Range of multimedia hardware and software. Digital electronics and use in still and video cameras. Digital recording and editing. Computer Animation, Interactivity and computer generated digital movies. Industry-standard multimedia-authoring tools to develop design presentations. Integration of media objects, including: edited scanned images, rendered images (produced using CAD technology), line drawings, animation, video (captured off VHS) and sound. Production and application of multimedia in portfolio and major design presentation. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

IDB 525 Packaging Design (3)
Packaging principles and practices in design, Materials handling and distribution, Production, Testing and evaluation, Printing and labelling, Regulatory practices, and environmental concerns, Paper, metal and wood packaging, Plastics, composites and glass packaging. Pharmaceutical, medical and cosmetics packaging, Packaging and the environment, Packaging production systems, Engineering of protective packaging, Distribution packaging and materials handling, Packaging development and management. (1-hr lecture, 4-hr practical per week)

GEC 258 Art and Science of Design (2)
creative thinking, Role of scientific principles, technological advances and their applications in design. Miniaturisation, Role of aesthetics, ergonomics and anthropometrics in design, Issues of culture, moral values, ethics and the environment, Product semantics, Case studies on analysing existing designs of objects – quantification of a successful design.

GEC 357 Advances in Technology (2)

Department of Mechanical Engineering

MMB211 Engineering Drawing (2)
Introduction to basic constructions and mechanisms. Orthographic Projection is taught with examples from all fields of engineering. Students will also have some practice on engineering drawings with reference to the appropriate standards.

MMB221 Computer Aided Drafting (2)
The course introduces students to basic Computer Aided Drafting: Two dimensional and three-dimensional drafting systems; Use of CAD to generate Assembly and Detail engineering drawings; Title Block and plotting.

MMB222 Dynamics (2)
Kinematics of particles; Newton's Laws; Kinetics of particles; Kinetics of rigid body; Impulse and momentum; Work, power and energy.

MMB311 Solid Mechanics (3)
Deflection of beams; combined stresses; buckling; metal fatigue; creep; stress strain analysis; strain rosettes; strain energy; failure criteria; torsion of non-circular sections; plastic deformation.

MMB312 Materials (2) This course is a study of engineering materials; this includes heat treatment, behaviour in service, evaluation of materials and designing.

MMB313 Mechanics Of Machines (3)
Crank-effort diagram; General plane motion; Kinematics of machines; Balancing; Lagrangè's equation; Gyroscopic motion; Vibration.

MMB314 Measurement and Instrumentation (2)
This course covers the following: Basis of measurement and international standards; Electronics used in instrumentation systems; Methods of measurement; Calibration.

MMB322 Machine Component Design (2)
Phases of Design: Uniaxial and biaxial stress conditions; Deflection and Stiffness considerations; Design for static strength; Design for fatigue strength; Design of threaded elements; Rolling contact bearings; Flexible elements; Shaft and associated parts; Design of helical springs.

MMB323 Thermodynamics (3)
1st and 2nd laws of thermodynamics; thermodynamic processes with ideal gas; cycles of heat engines; energy systems.

MMB324 Fluid Mechanics (3)
Fluids and their properties; fluid statics; Basic fluid kinematics and fluid dynamics; viscous flow in pipes; flow in pipes and duct systems; flow around a body; open channel flow; and fluid machinery.

MMB325 Manufacturing (2)
Introduction to manufacturing technologies, hot manufacturing processes, cold manufacturing processes, measurements and quality control.

MMB40 Advanced Manufacturing (2)
Difference between conventional manufacturing and software driven manufacturing; CNC Technology and Part programming; Group technology; Computer aided process planning; Industrial robots; Discrete Control.

MMB411 Machine and Industrial Design (2)
Lubrication and journal bearings; Spur, helical, worm and bevel gears design; Industrial design: assessing the need for industrial design; The impact of industrial design; Product: risk and reliability, probability concepts, interaction of materials, processing and design.

MMB421 Heat Transfer (3)
Thermal properties, the Fourier's law, heat diffusion equation, Newton's Law of cooling, External and external flow forced convection, heat exchangers, thermal radiation

MMB413 Systems and Control Engineering I (3)
Linearised dynamic system models; applications of Laplace transforms; transfer function models; spline, transient performance and inverse Laplace transforms; frequency response analysis: Bode, Nyquist, etc.

MMB414 Engineering Management (3)
This is an introductory course to management science and engineering economics covering management theory, social responsibility of an industrial engineer, health safety, engineering project appraisal, financial control systems, and impact of information technology on organizations.

MMB415 Materials Technology (2)
Study of theoretical and practical aspects of materials processing; Further consideration of casting, forming, powder processing, joining processes and surface treatments.

MMB416 Mechatronics (2)
An introduction to mechatronic systems, including uses and simple design; Simple microprocessor programming; Mechanical aspects of mechatronic systems.

MMB417 Thermodynamics ii (2)
Cycles and principles of operation; cycles and analysis; combustion and emission control; fuel process; wear, lubrication, steam, nozzles, heat transfer and refrigeration.

MMB418 Pneumatics & Hydraulics (2)
Provides an introduction to the basic principles and control of pneumatic and hydraulic systems including electro-pneumatic and electro-hydraulic systems; Circuit and system design for function and capacity; Function sequencing diagrams; Introduction to control of such systems using programmable logic controllers.

MMB419 Vibrations (2)
Vibration of multi-degree of freedom systems; modal testing; noise control.

MMB511 Project (Stage I) (3)
Defining the project problem; working out an action plan and project methodology; information retrieval and analyses; project predesign; writing a literature overview and a progress report.

MMB512 Plant Engineering (3)
This course covers design, selection, operation, maintenance and control of engineering plant; Power plant, combined heat and power, process plants; Planned maintenance; Safety, costs, energy conservation, pollution and environmental factors.

MMB513 Manufacturing Systems (4)
Introduction to manufacturing systems, Single station manufacturing cells, Cellular manufacturing, Flexible Manufacturing systems, Transfer lines.

MMB514 Systems and Control Engineering II(4)
Modelling and analysis of system dynamics; continuous and digital control system design; elements of non-linear control.

MMB515 Energy Systems (4)
Energy resources; Conventional and renewable energy systems; Energy system design; Energy management and rational energy utilisation.
MMB516 Building and Factory Services (4)
Design, layout, installation, efficient operation and maintenance of building and factory services, such as heating, ventilation and air conditioning, water, steam compressed air, fire-fighting, lifts and escalators, electricity and lighting systems for buildings and factories as well as efficient utilisation and provision of these services.

MMB521 Project (Stage Ii) (3)
This is the continuation of the course MMB511.

MMB522 Production and Operations Management (3)
Forecasting, production control, plant location, maintenance costing, personnel and productivity, work study and operations management tools.

MMB523 Industrial Engineering (4)
Total systems intervention; System dynamics modelling; Cybernetics; Viable Systems Modelling; Interactive management; Productivity; Quality.

MMB524 Refrigeration And Air Conditioning (4)
This course covers the theories and practice of refrigeration and air conditioning. This includes application of thermodynamics, fluid flow, heat and mass transfer to refrigeration processes; Plant components, controls, plant layout, air conditioning processes, psychometric design, and acoustics; Installation, commissioning and operation of a refrigeration plant.

MMB527 Thermal Fluid System Design
Thermal design systems, system components aspects of design, exergetic analysis, heat transfer, economic analysis, optimization

MMB526 Computational Mechanics (4)
Faculty of HEALTH SCIENCES

ACTING DEAN
T. T. Mokoena, BSc (London), MSc (East Anglia), PhD (Bradford)

DEPUTY DEAN
K.D. Mogobe, RN, RM, BEd (UB), MEd, MSc (Columbia University), PhD (University of Washington, Seattle)

FACULTY MANAGER (Academic Administration)
H. TLHABANO, DARM (UB), BA (UB), ARM, (UB) MPA (UB)

FACULTY MANAGER (Human Resources)
M. SEGAETSHO, BA, (UB) MSC (HRM) (Salford University, UK)
**FACULTY OF HEALTH SCIENCES**

**Introduction**
The University Council decided in November 2005 to establish a Faculty of Health Sciences with effect from 01 April 2006. This decision stemmed from the University having resolved in academic year 2003/04 that during NDP9 it would engage in programme development that would be aimed at the long-term objective of establishing a Faculty of Health Sciences.

**Academic Organizational Structure**
Organisationally, the Faculty is a "work in progress" and currently comprises the following entities:

- The Office of the Dean of Health Sciences
- Department of Environmental Health (the seed of a future School of Public Health);
- The School of Nursing (formerly the Department of Nursing Education);
- The School of Medicine;
- The Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences in the School of Allied Health Professions;
- The School of Allied Health Professions (for the Department of Allied Health Professions);
- The School of Nursing (formerly Department of Nursing Education);
- The School of Medicine.

The plan is to set up a School of Pharmacy and to add departments of Nutritional Sciences and Rehabilitation Sciences to the School of Allied Health Professions in the near future with the recruitment of core founding staff.

**Recent and Future Developments**
The principal activity of the Faculty in the next few years will be to engage in strategic planning that will embrace:

- **Affirmation/re-affirmation of the kind(s) and number(s) of university-trained and educated human resources for health that Botswana will need and the role(s) they are to play in the health system of the future:**
- **Working with all stakeholders to arrive at a Faculty strategic plan that includes a statement of the vision, mission, values, goals and objectives of the Faculty as part of a national teaching health system:**
- **Design, development, approval and international accreditation of high quality international curricula that are appropriate to the Botswana and African context, are aligned with the University Learning and Teaching policy, promote intra-faculty teaching and learning and articulate with programme offerings:**

**Program Objectives**
- To provide a sound foundation on the principles of public health and the interrelationship between humans and the environment.
- To develop competencies and skills needed after graduation to work effectively as an environmental health professional in different settings.
- To impart skills to conduct research to address environmental contamination problems and to contribute to sound public health policy development.
- To provide students with the skills to utilize behavioral modification and motivation as positive approaches to the resolution of environmental health problems rather than relying totally on enforcement.

**Entrance requirements**
Prospective students must:

- If entering the program through the direct entry route, satisfy the University of Botswana General Academic Regulation 20.21 and the Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.2 of the Faculty of Science. If already registered under the Faculty of Science under the General BSc Program, must have obtained at least a grade C in BIO 111 & 112; CHE 101 & 102; MAT 111 & 122; PHY 111, 119, 121 & 129 at first year level.

If possessing a Diploma, satisfy General Academic Regulation 20.24 and appropriate Special Regulations of the Faculty of Science.

Applicants with a Diploma in Environmental Health shall be admitted into level 200 or 300 of the degree programme on the basis of accumulated credits in the area of environmental health.

- If possessing other entry qualifications deemed relevant by the Department, satisfy General Academic Regulation 20.22 or General Academic Regulation 20.23 and any other appropriate Special Regulations of the Faculty of Science.

**Semester 1**

**Core Courses**

- CHE101: General Chemistry I (4)
- BIO 111: Principles of Biology (4)
- PHY112: Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (4)
- MAT111: Introductory Mathematics I (4)
- COM 101: Introduction to Communications and Computer Literacy Skills I (2)
- GEC 121: Computing and Information Skills I (2)

**Program Objectives**

- To provide a sound foundation on the principles of public health and the interrelationship between humans and the environment.
- To develop competencies and skills needed after graduation to work effectively as an environmental health professional in different settings.
- To impart skills to conduct research to address environmental contamination problems and to contribute to sound public health policy development.
- To provide students with the skills to utilize behavioral modification and motivation as positive approaches to the resolution of environmental health problems rather than relying totally on enforcement.

**Course Overview**

- **Environmental Health:**

  - **Course Description:**
  - **Course Objective:**
  - **Course Outcomes:**

**Program Objectives**

- To provide a sound foundation on the principles of public health and the interrelationship between humans and the environment.
- To develop competencies and skills needed after graduation to work effectively as an environmental health professional in different settings.
- To impart skills to conduct research to address environmental contamination problems and to contribute to sound public health policy development.
- To provide students with the skills to utilize behavioral modification and motivation as positive approaches to the resolution of environmental health problems rather than relying totally on enforcement.
Semester 2
Core Courses
CHE102 General Chemistry II (4)
BIO112 Diversity of Animals and Plants (4)
PHY122 Electricity and Magnetism,
MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4)
COM 102 (2)Health Communication
GEC122 Computing and Information skills

Semester 3
Core Courses
BIO120 Introductory Biochemistry (3)
ENH211 Introduction to Environmental Health (3)
BIO301 Quantitative Biology (3)
CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (3)
CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (1) GEC/Optional (2)
ENV10 Medical Geography (2)
ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)
ENV440 Geographic Information Systems (3)
ENV462 Environmental Quality Management- Land & Air (3)
ENV418 Environmental Policy (2)
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (3)
ENV463 Environmental Quality Management- Water & Waste (3)
CHE416 Environmental Chemistry (2)
CHE418 Topics in Analytical Chemistry (2)
BIO418 Food Microbiology (3)
LAW441 Law and Health Care (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
ENH221 Principles and Practice of Health Education (3)
ENH222 Epidemiology (3)
BIO216 General Microbiology (3)
ENH223 Control of Communicable diseases (3)
LAW203 Environmental Laws of Botswana (3)
BIO225 Human Physiology and the Environment (3)

Semester 5
Core Courses
ENH313 Basic Toxicology (3)
CCB315 Environmental Engineering (3)
CCB318 Liquid Waste Management (3)
CCB319 Solid Waste Management (3)
ASB 321 Meat Science (3)
CCB331 Environmental Health and Building Services (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
BIO305 Insect Pest/ Vector Control (3)
ENH321 Environmental Health Sampling and Analysis (4)
ENH322 Food Safety and Hygiene (3)
ENH323 Occupational Health, Safety and Hygiene (3)
PHY360 Atmospheric Pollution Control I (2)
ASB321 Meat Science (3)

Winter Semester
ENH331 Internship (4)

Semester 7
Core Courses
ENH411 Environmental Risk Assessment (3)
ENH412 Environmental Health Seminar (3)
PHY460 Atmospheric Pollution Control II (2) GEC/Optional (7)

Semester 8
Core Courses
ENH413 Inspection and Report Writing (2)
ENH422 Research Project in Environmental Health (3)
GEC/ Optional (10)

Optional Courses
CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2)
CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (1)
ENV10 Medical Geography (2)
ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)
ENV440 Geographic Information Systems (3)
ENV462 Environmental Quality Management- Land & Air (3)
ENV418 Environmental Policy (2)
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (3)
ENV463 Environmental Quality Management- Water & Waste (3)
CHE416 Environmental Chemistry (2)
CHE418 Topics in Analytical Chemistry (2)
BIO418 Food Microbiology (3)
LAW441 Law and Health Care (3)

SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

Founding Dean
T. A. Massaro, SB/MIT
MS(Stanford), PhD(University of California, Berkeley), MD (Wisconsin, Madison)

Entry Requirements to the pre-medical programme
(a) BGCSE/equivalent with a minimum of grade E in English Language and a grade of C or better in any two courses from Biology, Chemistry, Physics or a minimum of grade BB in Science Double Award or equivalent and a minimum of A in Physical Science and a C in Biology or equivalent.
(b) A-Level (Advanced Level) holders can enter at the second year provided that they have completed the clinical exposure track of that of the first year. (N.B. Top A’ Level students may apply for direct entry to many medical schools including UB, bypassing the University’s premedical programme entirely.)
(c) First year students in Level 100 of the BSc degree may apply to transfer to Level 200 of the Premedical programme if they have performed well academically (i.e., achieved GPAs of at least 3.5 in all three Level 100 Sciences, 3.0 in Level 100 Mathematics and 3.0 in at least one of the General Education Courses), have been performed satisfactorily (a grade of at least “very good”); in the clinical exposure course that takes place between year one and two, and have succeeded in being designated for a career in medicine by the Ministry of Education (if a citizen of Botswana).

Admission to the School of Medicine
The University of Botswana selects students to enter the new medical degree programme in August, over May and June. Students seeking admission must apply by 1st April. Some students will be selected on the basis of their year one results in Pre-Med, BSc or A’ level results, followed by assessment of their application form short essay and interviews. Personal and professional behaviors, academic performance and communication skills will be considered in the process. Successful candidates will be immediately enrolled in the School of Medicine to begin the Phase One Problem Based Learning (PBL) Curriculum.

It should be noted that for students not admitted to UB Medical School from the Pre-Med programme, the application process may vary with the different medical schools. Those who gain admission to those other medical schools with which the Botswana Government has partnerships will generally report after successful completion of the level 200 Pre-Med programme.

Those who qualify for the University’s South African and Australian partner medical schools may transfer there after three semesters to accommodate the academic schedules of those schools.

Undergraduate Degree Programme
The undergraduate programme is six years in length and divided into three parts. The first part is the first year of the current pre-medical programme, with some clinical exposure. Part two (Phase 1 of the MBBS program) will require 2 years in a fully integrated curriculum of basic medical sciences within clinical PBL cases and clinical skills teaching with regular clinical attachments. A 10 week Winter Semester has been added to allow for the greater intensity of medical education and an external rural clinical attachment. The teaching methodology is based on body systems and includes plenary lectures, PBL within small groups, workshops, with laboratories and clinical skills for practical learning. The curriculum is intended to have a strong focus on the community. It is flexible to meet the needs of both faculty and students, and respond to changing health care demands of the country. Design of the PBL content reflects the health problems and resources of the community. The third part, or the three subsequent Phase 2 years will have required hospital and clinic rotations in the major disciplines. These experiences will be enhanced with an opportunity to follow patients longitudinally and explore community services and public health efforts. Some time will be spent in distant parts of the country to gain experience in rural medical practice This Phase 2 Implementation is still under planning consideration. The initial 36 students who entered the MBBS programme in August 2009 are expected to graduate from the University of Botswana.
Semester 1
SOM 201 Foundations of Medicine (5)
SOM 202 Cardiovascular and Respiratory Systems (5)
SOM 203 Gastrointestinal and Urinary systems (6)

Semester 2
SOM 204 Growth, Reproduction and Endocrine system (6)
SOM 205 Blood and Immune system (4)
SOM 206 Muscular Skeletal, Nervous System and Special Senses (6)

First Winter Semester
SOM 207 Psychological Health (5)
SOM 208 Community Attachment – Public Health (4)

Semester 3
SOM 301 Skin pathology, Atherosclerosis and Cancer (5)
SOM 302 Infection, Viral, Bacterial and Parasitic Disease (6)
SOM 303 Pregnancy, Birth and Child Health (5)

Semester 4
SOM 303 Urinary System 1 (2)
SOM 305 Cardiovascular and Respiratory System 1 (5)
SOM 306 Muscular Skeletal System 11 (5)
SOM 307 Nervous System and Senses 11 (4)

Second Winter Semester
SOM 308 Community Attachment, Public Health Project 11 (4)
SOM 309 Gastro Intestinal Disease (5)

3.2.3 PHASE 2 PROGRAMME – THREE YEARS (Provisional)

Semester 5 (20 weeks)
MED 401 Introduction to Clinical Practice (2)
MED 412 Clinical Applications of Basic Science (2)
MED 402 Internal Medicine (2)
MED 404 General Surgery (1 – 3 weeks) (2)
MED 406 Paediatrics (1 – 3 weeks) (2)
MED 407 Obstetrics/Gynaecology (1 – 3 weeks) (2)
MED 409 Emergency (1 – 3 weeks) (2)
MED 410 Family (1 – 3 weeks)

Semester 6 (24 weeks)
MED 411 Ambulatory Care and Community Health
MED 403 Internal Medicine 11 (8 weeks)
MED 405 General Surgery 11 (8 weeks)
MED 408 Obstetrics/ Gynaecology 11 (8 weeks)

Semester 7 (24 weeks)
MED 501 Ambulatory Care and Community Health 11 (2)
MED 502 Community Health Project 11 (4 weeks) (3)
MED 506 Paediatrics 11 (8 weeks) (6)
MED 509 Family 11 (4 weeks) (3)
MED 510 Emergency 11 (4 weeks) (3)
MED 512 Psychiatry 11 (4 weeks) (3)

Semester 8 (24 weeks)
MED 511 Ambulatory Care and Community Health 111 (2)
MED 503 Neurology 1 (4 weeks) (2)
MED 504 Anaesthesiology 1 (4 weeks) (2)
MED 505 Orthopaedics 1 (4 weeks) (2)
MED 507 Dermatology 1 (2 weeks) (2)
MED 509 ENT 1 (2 weeks) (2)
MED 513 Ophthalmology 1 (2 weeks) (2)
MED 514 Urology 1 (2 weeks) (2)
MED 515 Plastic Surgery 1 (2 weeks) (2)
MED 516 Neurosurgery 1 (2 weeks) (2)

Semester 9 (24 weeks)
MED 601 Ambulatory Care and Community Health iv (2)
MED 603 Internal Medicine 111 (8 weeks) (6)
MED 605 General Surgery 111 (8 weeks) (6)
MED 609 Emergency 111 (4 weeks) (3)
MED 612 Psychiatry 111 (4 weeks) (3)

Semester 10
MED 602 Capstone course (4)
MED 606 Paediatrics 111 (8 weeks) (5)
MED 608 Obstetrics/ Gynaecology 111 (8 weeks) (5)
MED 610 family 111 (4 weeks) (3)

SCHOOL OF NURSING

Head: M.B. Sabone, RN, RM, Bed (UB), MSc, PhD (Case Western Reserve University)

1.0 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree Programme
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Education Special Regulations, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

1.1.1 Entrance Requirements for the Bachelor of Nursing Science
Generic Degree Programme
1.1.1.1 Admission to Level 100 of the Bachelor of Nursing Science Generic Degree Programme shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, in Science subjects. There shall be cut-off points, which shall be determined by the Directorate of Academic Services.

1.1.2 Applicants who register for the Bachelor of Nursing Science (Generic) Programmes shall be required:

a) To have taken at least 5 subjects, including English Language and Mathematics, at the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination or at one sitting of its equivalent;

b) To have obtained a minimum grade of Pass in English Language;

c) To have obtained a minimum grade of C or, its equivalent, in Mathematics.

1.1.3 In addition to the above basic requirements, applicants must have a minimum grade of C or, its equivalent, in at least 2 of the following subjects: Physics, Chemistry and Biology; and a minimum grade of B, or its equivalent, in Science. A double award or its equivalent is required. The other qualifying subject must be one of the following:

a) Development Studies
b) Literature in English
c) Design and Technology
d) Agriculture
e) Art
f) Food and Nutrition
g) Computer Studies
h) Fashion and Fabrics
i) Business Studies
j) Home Management
k) Any other subject deemed appropriate by the Faculty of Science.

1.1.4 An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced (A)-level or equivalent examinations and who has attained a minimum of one E and two O’s in the relevant subjects may be admitted to a Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree Programme.

1.1.5 If an applicant has grade E or better at Advanced (A)-level or equivalent qualifications in Science subjects, he/she may be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course(s) prescribed for a Degree Programme, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and approval of the Deputy Dean.

1.2 Course Listings for the Bachelor of Nursing Science

Generic Stream

Level 100
Semester 1
General Education Courses
COM 101 Introduction to Communication and literacy Skills (2)
COM 102 Health Communication (2)

Core Courses
BIO111 Principles of Biology (4)
CHE101 Chemistry (4)
MAT111 Mathematics (5)
BNS209 HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control in Botswana (4)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 2</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE102</td>
<td>Chemistry (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT122</td>
<td>Mathematics (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Students can choose to take Physics at Level 100 or Level 200 of their study.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 2</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHY119</td>
<td>Physics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY111</td>
<td>Physics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY121</td>
<td>Physics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY129</td>
<td>Physics (1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 200**

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO231</td>
<td>Human Anatomy (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO223</td>
<td>Parasitology for Health Sciences (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Elementary Statistics (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY161</td>
<td>Physics for Nurses (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS201</td>
<td>Introduction to Professional Nursing (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS203</td>
<td>Basic Nursing Concepts and Skills in Health and Wellness (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS205</td>
<td>Primary Health Care: Individuals, Groups and the Community (3) (Service Course)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Elective Courses (3 credits)**

All students shall take 1 optional course and Elective: one course.

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS301</td>
<td>Pathophysiology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS302</td>
<td>Nursing Management of Low Risk Childbearing Families (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS303</td>
<td>Introduction to Community Health Nursing (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS305</td>
<td>Basic Nursing Knowledge and Skills in Care of Well and Ill Adults (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO307</td>
<td>Biochemistry (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS309</td>
<td>Community-Based Nursing Care Practicum (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE114</td>
<td>Introduction to Nutrition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Elective Course (3 credits)**

Students shall select 1 elective course, not already taken. General Education Course (2 credits)

All students shall select a course not already taken from the list of General Education Courses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 6</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS200</td>
<td>Pharmacology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS300</td>
<td>Health Assessment (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS304</td>
<td>Community Mental Health Nursing (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS306</td>
<td>Intro to Nursing Research (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS310</td>
<td>Institution-Based Nursing Care Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC332</td>
<td>Traditional and Alternative Medical Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS311</td>
<td>Internship (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Education Courses (2 credits)**

All students shall select a course not already taken from the list of General Education Courses.

**Optional Courses**

Students shall choose 1 of the optional courses listed in the optional course menu.

**Level 400**

**Semester 7**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS401</td>
<td>Principles of Management and Education in Nursing (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS402</td>
<td>Parent and Child Practicum (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS405</td>
<td>Advanced Knowledge and Skill in Adult Health (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS407</td>
<td>Nursing Management of High Risk Childbearing Families (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS410</td>
<td>Adult Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Education Courses (6 credits)**

In addition, all students shall select 3 courses not already taken from the list of General Education Courses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 8</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS403</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Community Health Nursing (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS404</td>
<td>Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Theory (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS406</td>
<td>Adolescent Health and Development (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS408</td>
<td>Community Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS409</td>
<td>Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Practicum (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Education Courses (4 credits)**

In addition, all students shall select 2 courses not already taken from the list of General Education Courses. Students shall also take one elective course, and one optional course chosen from the following list:

**Optional Courses Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BSW201</td>
<td>Introduction to Group Work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW202</td>
<td>Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW309</td>
<td>Social Policy (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH201</td>
<td>Counseling over the Lifespan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH202</td>
<td>Theories and Techniques of Counseling (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH402</td>
<td>Counseling Persons with Special Needs (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE444</td>
<td>Issues in Food and Nutrition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW441</td>
<td>Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP220</td>
<td>History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP221</td>
<td>Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP225</td>
<td>Demographic Aspects of the HIV/ AIDS Epidemic (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP303</td>
<td>Urbanisation, Migration and Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP404</td>
<td>Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC234</td>
<td>Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 200**

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE109</td>
<td>Introductory Chemistry for Nursing Science (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY161</td>
<td>Physics (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Elementary Statistics (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS201</td>
<td>Introduction to Professional Nursing (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Education Course**

COM 101-Introduction to Communication and Literary Skills

**Semester 4**

**General Education Course**

COM102 Health Communication (2)

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO232</td>
<td>Human Physiology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO216</td>
<td>Introductory Microbiology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIO120</td>
<td>Introductory Biochemistry (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses (6 credits)

Students shall also choose two of the 3-credit optional courses listed at the end of this section.

**Level 300**

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BNS301</td>
<td>Pathophysiology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS307</td>
<td>The Individual in Health Illness (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNS309</td>
<td>Community–Based Nursing Care Practicum (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

Students shall choose 1 of the optional courses listed in the optional course menu.

**Optional Courses Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BSW201</td>
<td>Introduction to Group Work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW202</td>
<td>Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSW309</td>
<td>Social Policy (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH201</td>
<td>Counseling over the Lifespan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH202</td>
<td>Theories and Techniques of Counseling (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFH402</td>
<td>Counseling Persons with Special Needs (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFP100</td>
<td>Introduction to Educational Psychology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE444</td>
<td>Issues in Food and Nutrition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAW441</td>
<td>Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP220</td>
<td>History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP221</td>
<td>Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP225</td>
<td>Demographic Aspects of the HIV/ AIDS Epidemic (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP303</td>
<td>Urbanisation, Migration and Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP404</td>
<td>Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC234</td>
<td>Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In addition, all students shall take 1 elective course.

**Semester 6**

Core Courses

- BNS300 Health Assessment (3)
- BNS304 Community Mental Health Nursing (3)
- BNS306 Introduction to Nursing Research (3)
- BNS308 The Nursing Process in Family Health (3)
- BNS310 Institution Based Nursing Care Practicum (3)
- SOC332 Traditional and Alternative Medical Systems (3)
- BNS311 Internship (4)

General Education Course (4 credits)

Students shall select 2 GEC courses from the University-wide listing. Students shall also choose one optional course.

**Level 400**

**Semester 7**

Core Courses

- BNS401 Principles of Management and Education in Nursing (2)
- BNS402 Parent and Child Health Nursing Practicum (2)
- BNS405 Advanced Knowledge and Skills in Adult Health Nursing (2)
- BNS407 Nursing Management of high Risk Childbearing Families
- BNS410 Adult Health Nursing Practicum

General Education Courses (6 credits)

In addition, all students shall select 3 General Education Courses not already taken.

**Semester 8**

Core Courses

- BNS403 Principles and Practice of Community Health Nursing (2)
- BNS404 Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Theory (2)
- BNS406 Adolescent Health and Development (2)
- BNS408 Community Health Nursing Practicum (2)
- BNS409 Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing Practicum (2)

General Education Courses (6 credits)

In addition, students shall select 3 General Education Courses not already taken.

Students shall also choose one elective course and one optional course from the following listing:

**Optional Course Menu**

- BSW201 Introduction to Group Work
- BSW202 Introduction to Working with Families and Individuals
- BSW309 Social Policy
- EFP201 Counseling Over Lifespan
- EFP202 Theories and Techniques of Counseling (3)
- EFP402 Counselling Persons with Special Needs (3)
- EFP100 Introduction to Educational Psychology
- HEE444 Issues in Food Nutrition (3)
- LAW441 Ethics and Law in Health Care (3)
- POP220 History of Fertility, Mortality and Migration
- POP221 Theories of Fertility, Mortality and Migration
- POP225 Demographic Aspects of the HIV/AIDS Epidemic (3)
- POP303 Urbanisation, Migration and Development
- POP405 Demographic Dimensions of Poverty
- SOC234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
- POP404 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3)

1.5 Assessment

1.5.1 Continuous assessment shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, clinical practice.

1.5.2 The ratio of continuous assessment to a final examination shall be 1:1, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

1.5.3 The above Regulations shall apply to both Generic and In-service Bachelor of Nursing Science Streams.

1.5.4 General Regulations 0.811 to 0.826 and 0.842 shall apply to the Bachelor of Nursing Science Degree.

1.6 Progression from Year to Year

To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass all courses and have a cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above as specified in General Regulation 0.842.

1.7 Award of Degree

To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 0.851 and 0.852. The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, with the cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above completed in accordance with General Regulation 0.86. Faculty of Education

**DEPARTMENT OF MEDICAL LABORATORY SCIENCES**

Founding Head: I. Kasvosve DMLT, MSc (UZ, Zimbabwe), PhD (Ghent University, Belgium)

**BSc (Medical Laboratory Sciences) Completion Programme**

The Department offers a one-year BSc (Medical Laboratory Sciences) "completion" degree to qualifying holders of the Diploma in Medical Laboratory Technology of the Institute of Health Sciences or equivalent qualification. The programme is designed to develop skills in clinical laboratory management, immunology and molecular diagnostics. The principal aim of the 'completion' programme is to upgrade experienced medical laboratory technicians to become laboratory scientists who will be able to:

- provide leadership in medical laboratory sciences;
- serve the diagnostic needs of physicians and patients;
- carry out research to improve and expand diagnostic laboratory services in the country.

1.0 Entrance Requirements for the BSc (Medical Laboratory Sciences) completion degree

1.1 Applicants intending to enrol into the programme shall normally possess a Medical Laboratory Technology diploma obtained from the Institute of Health Sciences (IHS) with a minimum of merit classification overall and a minimum of two years relevant post-qualification experience.

1.2 Applicants with qualifications other than 1.1 above shall be required to submit their qualifications to the University of Botswana to be evaluated for equivalence to the IHS medical laboratory technology diploma. As a general principle, applicants intending to study for the BSc (Medical Laboratory Sciences) degree should have completed a minimum of 90 credits in a medical laboratory technology programme from a recognised institution.

2.0 Program Structure

**Semester 1**

Core Courses

- BIO211 Cell Biology (3)
- BIO212 Genetics (3)
- BIOP216 General Microbiology (3)
- BIO450 Research Project (3) (year long)
- MLS461 Medical Laboratory Practicum 1 (3)

**Semester 2**

Core courses

- BIO308 Molecular Biology (3)
- BIO312 Virology (3)
- BIO 416 Immunology (3)
- BIO450 Research Project (3) (Year long)
- MLS462 Medical Laboratory Practicum 11 (includes 5 weeks Clinical Laboratory Rotation (6)

3.0 Assessment

3.1 Continuous assessment shall be according to GAR 00.81 and 00.82 shall be based on tests and/or assignments, and where applicable, clinical practice.

3.2 The ratio of continuous assessment to an end of semester examination shall be 2:3, unless otherwise specified in the
4.0 Progression from Semester to Semester
To proceed from one semester to the next, a student must pass at least 50% of the attempted credits and have a cumulative GPA of 1.23 or above as specified in General Regulation 00.842.

5.0 Award of Degree
To be awarded a Degree
a student must satisfy the relevant General Academic Regulations 00.851 and 00.852. The Degree shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.4, with the cumulative GPA of 2.0 or above completed in accordance with General Regulation 00.86.

BSc (Medical Laboratory Sciences) generic Programme
From August 2012 the Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences will offer a 4-year BSc (Medical Laboratory Sciences) degree to applicants with Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination or its equivalent.
Faculty of Humanities

DEAN
Moahi, K.H.N, BA (UBS), MSc (Sheffield), PhD (Pittsburgh)

DEPUTY DEAN
Mwikisa, P.W, BA (Zambia), MA, D.Phil(Sussex)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
L. Monei,DABS (UB) BSc HRM (Cyprus)
C.I.S. Intermediate (South Africa)

M.K. Tshoganetso BASS(UB) CPIR
(Witwatersrand) MSc HRM (Cardiff).
Introduction

Although for administrative purposes the Departments of Environmental Science and of Sociology are located in other Faculties, they are considered academically to be part of the Faculty of Humanities. In fact, a considerable number of students who major in Environmental Science and Sociology are Humanities students. With the flexibility that is afforded by semesters courses, many departments in the Faculties of Business and Science will become accessible to Humanities students, especially through cross-Faculty programmes. With the new focus on educating specialists in a generalist way, the Faculty values a well-rounded education with the requisite ICT and numeracy skills. The Faculty of Humanities concentrates mainly on those studies that specialise in understanding human ideas, behaviour, culture and its mediation, with a particular emphasis on humanity in Africa in relation to the rest of the world. This Faculty thus has a prime role to play in the discovery and the appreciation of the heritage and liberal arts of the societies of Africa in general and of southern Africa and Botswana in particular. In this regard, the Faculty of Humanities, through research and teaching in its academic departments, is in a privileged position to effectively contribute to the realization of the Vision and Mission of the University. In addition, the Faculty of Humanities contributes to human resource development by assisting in the training of teachers. The departments in the Faculty provide the content base for secondary school and tertiary level teachers of English, Setswana, French, History/Social Studies, Geography and Religious/Moral Education by offering majors in the Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Education and the Masters of Education Degrees in these disciplines. As the Faculty continues to implement the provisions of the Tenth National Development Plan (NDP10), the semesters course, and also plans new programmes within the plan period, it shall simultaneously address the requirements of the Revised National Policy on Education as well as the aspirations of the National Vision 2016. It will also position itself strategically within the plan period processes to face the challenges brought about by diminishing budget allocations and competition for fewer resources.

22.0 Special Regulations for the Faculty of Humanities

22.1 Preamble

22.11 The following are the Faculty’s Special Regulations and shall apply subject to the General Academic Regulations

22.12 In addition to these Special Regulations, relevant Special Departmental Regulations shall also apply.

22.2 Entrance Requirements

22.21 Admission into the Humanities Degree Programmes shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, in humanities (languages, geography, social studies, history, moral/religious education, and science [cf.22.22a], and also see Regulation 22.22a for other qualifying subjects)

22.22 Applicants who register for Bachelor Degree programmes in Humanities shall be required

a) To have taken at least five subjects, including English Language, at the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination or its equivalent;  
b) To have obtained a credit in the English language.

22.23 An applicant who has taken relevant Advanced (A) – level or equivalent examinations and attained a minimum of one E and two C’s in the relevant subjects may be admitted to a Bachelor degree in Humanities programmes.

22.24 If an applicant has grade E or better at Advanced (A)-Level or equivalent qualifications in relevant subjects s/he may, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean’s Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course/s prescribed for a degree programme.

22.25 A student who may transfer from a recognized university, or any other institution of higher learning, and on the submission of a transcript of his/her academic records may, subject to the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department and the approval of the Dean’s Office, be awarded credits and exempted from equivalent course/s prescribed for a degree programme.

22.3 General Provisions

22.31 A course may consist entirely of fieldwork, project work, practical-work, seminar or tutorials or any combination of these components. In addition to work during the semester, a course may include prescribed fieldwork or assignments during university vacation periods.

22.32 Unless otherwise provided in the departmental regulations, all courses are semester long.

22.33 For ease of reference, the use of course codes shall provide information as follows: the first digit refers to the level of study, the second to the status and orientation of the course, and the last digit to the number of course in each category.

22.4 Degree Structure

22.41 In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.211, Departments in the Faculty of Humanities shall offer courses which shall be prescribed in Departmental Special Regulations.

22.42 The Faculty of Humanities shall, depending on the core course in the subject area offer the following degree programmes: a) Bachelor of Arts which is composed of core and optional courses from African languages and Literature, English, French, History, Archaeology, Environmental Science, Sociology, Psychology and Theology and Religious Studies subjects.  
b) Bachelor of Library and Information Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from the department of Library and Information Studies  
c) Bachelor of Arts in Library and Information Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from Library and Information Studies and another subject available as a major to Humanities students  
d) Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) which is composed of core and optional courses from the Faculty of Business, Department of Computer Science and Department of Library and Information Studies  
e) Bachelor of Media Studies which is composed of core and optional courses from the Department of Media Studies.

22.43 A combined degree (major/minor) shall be a programme composed of core and optional courses from two equally-weighted subjects which are concurrently studied. In order to partially satisfy the requirement for a degree, a student must take and pass a minimum of 40 credits from each of the two subjects.

22.44 A combined degree (major/minor) shall be a programme composed of core and optional courses from two subjects. In order to partially satisfy the requirements for a degree, a student must take and pass a minimum of 56 credits from the major subject and a minimum of 24 credits from the minor subject.

22.45 In Semesters 1 and 2 (Level 1) of a degree programme, each student shall take courses in English as well as courses from at least two of the following subjects: African Languages and Literature, French, Environmental Science, History, Sociology, Theology and Religious Studies, Psychology.

22.46 In addition to core and optional courses, and in compliance with the General Regulation 00.2124d, each student shall, unless exempted, take two credits of General Education Courses in each of Area 1, Communication and Study Skills and Area 2, Computer and Information Skills, in each of Semesters 1 and 2 of his/her programme. In addition, a student shall register for a minimum of twelve credits of General Education Courses offered outside the Faculty of Humanities before completing his/her programme of study.

22.47 Departments may specify projects that each student shall carry out as partial fulfilment of the requirements for the award of degree, based on an investigation of some original theme in his/her major subject under the supervision of an academic member of staff. This study shall be for one semester and normally take place during the course of the programme. The mode of assessment shall be as prescribed under Special Departmental Regulations. There shall only be one such project per programme.

22.5 Assessment

22.51 Continuous Assessment (CA) shall be as prescribed in General Academic Regulations.

22.52 The examination in a course, wherever
required, shall normally be held during the examination period at the end of the semester in which the course is taught.

22.53 Performance in each course shall normally be evaluated according to stipulated departmental requirements. Any departure from indicated ratios shall require the approval of the Faculty Board.

22.54 Overall performance in a course shall be assessed on a Percentage Scale, a Letter Grade and a Grade Point in accordance with General Regulations.

2.7 Award of Degree

22.71 To be awarded a degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provision of General Academic Regulations from core and optional/ elective/general education courses.

DEPARTMENT OF AFRICAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURE

Bachelor of Arts Degree in African Languages and Literature

General Provisions

Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in the Department of African Languages and Literature.

Programme Structure

Level 100

At Level 100 (Semesters 1 and 2), the Programme shall consist of a total of 12 credits from core courses (6 credits in each semester). Additional credits may be obtained from optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulations 07.1 and 07.2, and General Regulation 00.62.

Level 200

At Level 200 (Semesters 3 and 4), the Programme shall consist of a total of 12 credits from core courses (6 credits in each semester). Additional credits may be obtained from optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulations 07.1 and 07.2, and General Regulation 00.62.

Programme Structure

Levels 300 and 400

At Levels 300 and 400 (Semesters 5 to 8), the Programme shall comprise a Single Major, a Combined Major, a Major/Minor, Minor/Major and Multi-disciplinary Streams.

a) Single Major in African Languages and Literature

The Single Major Programme shall consist of a total of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses in accordance with the Departmental Regulation 07.3.1 and General Regulation 00.62.

b) Combined Major/Major in African Languages and Literature

The Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of a total of 16 credits from the core courses and additional credits from the optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.2 and General Regulation 00.62.

c) Combined Major/Minor with African Languages and Literature as a Major

The Combined Major/Minor with African Languages and Literature as a Major shall consist of a total of 16 credits from the core courses and additional credits from the optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.3 and General Regulation 00.62.

d) Combined Minor/Major with African Languages and Literature as a Minor

The Combined Minor/Major Programme with African Languages and Literature as a Minor shall consist of a total of 8 credits from the core courses and additional credits from the optional and other courses in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.4 and General Regulation 00.62.

e) Multi-disciplinary Combined Degree Programme

The Multi-disciplinary Combined Degree Programme in African Languages and Literature shall consist of a minimum of 4 credits in accordance with Departmental Regulation 07.3.5 and General Regulation 00.62.

General Education Courses

The Department of African Languages and Literature offers three (3) General Education Courses (GECs), one (1) under Area 1: Communication and Study Skills and two (2) under Area 6: World Civilisations.

Assessment and Examination

1.3.1 Performance in each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks.

1.3.2 Continuous assessment shall normally constitute at least two pieces of work or one long paper per semester.

1.3.3 The duration of the final examination shall be two hours.

Progression

In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

Level 100

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL121</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of Language and Linguistics (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL122</td>
<td>The Characteristics of Human Language (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL131</td>
<td>Language and Communication in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL132</td>
<td>Language Instruction I: (Beginners Course in one of the Botswana Languages)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Level 200

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL134</td>
<td>Language Instruction II (Elementary course in one of the Botswana Languages) Pr: ALL132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL141</td>
<td>Introduction to African Oral and Written Literature (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL142</td>
<td>The Study of Drama in Indigenous Languages (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL151</td>
<td>Short Story Theory and Practice Style in Writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL152</td>
<td>Introduction to the African Novel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL154</td>
<td>Theory of Humour in Africa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Level 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL221</td>
<td>Sound Systems in African Languages (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL222</td>
<td>Structure of Words in African Languages (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL231</td>
<td>The Perception and Transcription of African Language Sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL232</td>
<td>Language Instruction III (Intermediate Level course in one of the Botswana languages) Pr: ALL132 &amp; ALL134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL233</td>
<td>Generative Phonology in African Languages Pr: (ALL221)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL234</td>
<td>Language Instruction IV (Intermediate Advanced Level course in one of the Botswana languages) Pr: ALL132, ALL134 &amp; ALL 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL241</td>
<td>History and Structure of the Setswana Novel (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL242</td>
<td>African Written Poetry (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL251</td>
<td>Folk Speech in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL252</td>
<td>Rites of Passage: A Study of Social Dramas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL253</td>
<td>The Sociology of Literature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Level 400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL321</td>
<td>The Structure of the Sentence (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL322</td>
<td>The Structure of Meaning (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL323</td>
<td>Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL331</td>
<td>Introduction to Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL332</td>
<td>Language Instruction V (Beginners' Level course in one of the major languages of Africa, Part I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL333</td>
<td>Introduction to Research Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL334</td>
<td>Introduction to Modern Theories in Grammatical Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL335</td>
<td>Language Instruction Course VI (Beginners' Level course in one of the major languages of Africa, Part II) Pr: ALL332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL336</td>
<td>Field Research Preparation and Proposal Writing Pr: ALL333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL341</td>
<td>Introduction to Literary Theory (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL342</td>
<td>African Oral Narratives (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL343</td>
<td>Introduction to African Popular Theatre (Co)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL351</td>
<td>Politics and Southern African Poetry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL352</td>
<td>Epic Performance in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL353</td>
<td>African Oral Literature and the Media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL354</td>
<td>The Contemporary Setswana Novel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The content of this course will include an exploration of the various theories about the origin, the development of language and the relationship between the author, the text and the readers with emphasis on aspects of style that enable messages to reach the addressees.

ALL153 Introduction to the African Novel (3)
The course will basically introduce students to genre classification, textual analysis of the novel and the sociopolitical as well as the gender and cultural history from which it emerged.

ALL154 Theory of Humor in Africa (3)
The course will focus on the structure and function of various types of the joke genre in Africa with a special focus on the text, context and performance aspects. The issue of gender and the influence of modern technology and the media on the genre will also be scrutinized.

ALL221 Sound Systems in African Languages (3)
The course content will include the definition of phonology, phonemic analysis and the function of distinctive features. The course will also consider the structure of the syllable and other prosodic phenomena.

ALL222 Structure of Words in African Languages (3)
The content of the course will include practice in identifying, describing and transcribing speech sounds. Also students will be trained in classifying the sounds according to shared phonetic features.

ALL232 Language Instruction III (Intermediate Level) (3)
The course content will include a discussion of the current state of one of the Botswana languages and then train the students in oral and aural skills, text comprehension and an introduction to the literature created in the language. It will also provide skills in the description of the structure of the target language.

ALL233 Generative Phonology in African Language Analysis (3)
The course content will include an introduction to generative phonology followed by the study of segmental, auto-segmental and metrical phonology. Setswana and one other African language will be used as case studies.

ALL234 Language Instruction IV (Intermediate/Advanced Level) (3)
The course content will include the discussion of the salient issues concerning the current and future situation of one of the Botswana languages. The course will enhance the students’ oral and aural skills, text comprehension and a good understanding of the literature created in the language.

ALL241 History and Structure of the Setswana Novel (3)
The course will include an exploration of the
evolution of the novel genre over time among the Setswana speaking peoples of Southern Africa and how it has been influenced by the social, cultural and political environment of the epoch of its composition and production, especially in terms of structure, artistic style and themes.

ALL242 African Written Poetry (3)
The course will include a holistic theoretical approach to African written poetry utilizing the Reader response, New Historicism and Feminist theories. Included will be the structure of poetry and the influences of various epochs on the form and content of African written poetry.

ALL251 Folk Speech in Africa (3)
The content of the course will cover aspects of performance, aesthetics, form and function of the various communicative speech acts such as proverbs, riddles, epithets, euphemisms and dysphemisms. The focus of the study will be on both literary texts and everyday discourse.

ALL252 RITES OF PASSAGE: A STUDY OF SOCIAL DRAMAS (3)
The course content will cover performance, structural patterns and functions of the calendar and life cycle ritual ceremonies that affect the individual and the community. Also the importance of symbolism, role-play and reversal of roles will be explored from various theoretical perspectives.

ALL253 The Sociology of Literature (3)
Basically, the course will include the importance of sociological considerations in understanding literature. These encompass the writer's social situation, the production and the consumption of written literature and the impact of the historical, cultural and political environment on the production and consumption.

ALL31 The Structure of the Sentence (2)
The course content will include the discussion of the principles and methods of sentence analysis focusing on the basic structure of the sentence. The standard generative grammar model will be used in sentence analysis, based on Setswana.

ALL32 The Structure of Meaning (2)
The course content will include the definition of meaning, types of meaning, semantic features and lexical relations. It will also consider the modes of meaning interpretation, context, deictic expressions, presuppositions and speech acts.

ALL33 Introduction to Stylistics and Discourse Analysis (2)
The content of the course will include the study of register, stylistic variation, discourse devices, discourse appropriateness and conversation structure.

ALL31 Introduction to Translation (2)
The course content will comprise the theory of translation; types, modes and problems of translation; the role of semantics, pragmatics and discourse analysis in translation and structural adaptation. Case studies will be taken from the Botswana languages as well as international languages spoken in Botswana.

ALL332 Language Instruction V (Beginners' Level) (2)
The content of the course will include an introduction to the culture and history of one of the major languages of Africa and training in the basic use of the language such as essential expressions and self-expression. The course will also introduce the students to some of the basic structures of the language.

ALL333 Introduction to Research Methods (2)
The course will introduce students to both quantitative and qualitative research paradigms in African Languages and Literature. Also the content will include objectivity in scientific research, topic selection, definition of the problem, significance of a research study, formulation of hypotheses, research methodology, literature review and research proposal framework.

ALL334 Introduction to Modern Theories in Grammatical Analysis (2)
The course content will include a study of the current conception of a grammar, the modern grammatical theories, and their application to African language description.

ALL335 Language Instruction Course VI (Elementary Level) (2)
The course content will include the study of the current state of one of the major languages of Africa as well as a study of some selected areas of usage such as reporting, expressing one's feelings or seeking attention etc. Also, the course will introduce the students to the description of the language's morphology and syntax.

ALL336 Field Research Preparation and Proposal Writing (2)
The course will include techniques of fieldwork, data collection as well as archival research, resource planning, ethical issues and how to write a research proposal.

ALL337 Introduction to Computational Linguistics (2)
The course will introduce the students to a variety of topics in computer-based language analysis and processing among which three will be examined in a given semester. These topics will include: computational syntax, computational phonology, computational semantics, computational lexicography, speech synthesis, and machine translation.

ALL338 Introduction to Literary Theory (2)
The course content will include five literary theories (mainly Structuralism, Psychoanalysis, Reception, Marxism and Deconstruction) from which at least three will be selected for discussion in a particular semester.

ALL342 African Oral Narratives (2)
The course will cover various sub-genres of institutionalized sub-Saharan African oral narratives such as myths, folktales and legends that will be studied, analyzed and interpreted from various theoretical viewpoints.

ALL343 Introduction to African Popular Theatre (2)
The course content will include the history of Popular Theatre in Africa from the pre-colonial to the postcolonial era with reference to socioeconomic problems facing Africa. Emphasis will be on practical drama and performances in schools and villages within the concept of intervention-participation-conscientisation.

ALL351 Politics and Southern African Poetry (2)
The course content will include an analysis and interpretation of translated or transcribed oral poetry that deals with socio-political criticism and the influence thereof of oral traditions on political poetry in general. Also included will be the influence of Negritude and African-American poetry on Southern African protest and resistance poetry.

ALL352 Epic Performance in Africa (2)
The content of the course will include basic characteristics of African epics, their historical contexts, and the mode of delivery to the audience.

ALL353 African Oral Literature and the Media (2)
The content will include a study of the multiple ways in which the mass media influence oral literature and how oral literature permeates media-manipulated texts and contexts as well as how it is portrayed by the media in its various forms.

ALL354 The Contemporary Setswana Novel (2)The course will include a critical analysis of artistic styles, thematic trends, inter-textual relationships and literary quality of the Setswana novels recently written and published in Botswana and South Africa.

ALL421 Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics based on Africa (2)
The course will include an introduction to historical and comparative linguistics as a discipline and then look at how this approach has been used in the comparison, classification and accounting for patterns of change in the languages of Africa.

ALL422 A Sociolinguistic Study of Southern Africa (2)
The course will include the patterns of language use in Botswana, the factors that influence language change and maintenance and the various efforts, both formal and informal, which are being made in order to
preserve, promote and empower languages.

**ALL423 The Bantu and Khoesan Languages of Southern Africa (2)**

The course content will consist of the origin and migration of the Bantu and Kho-E-San language speakers, the settling of the Bantu languages in the Southern African region, the classification of the Bantu and Kho-E-San languages and their major characteristics.

**ALL431 Introduction to Psycholinguistics (2)**

The course will include the various approaches to psycholinguistics, language production and comprehension, the biological foundations of language and language pathology.

**ALL432 Language Instruction VII (Intermediate Level) (2)**

The course content will include discussion of the current state of some of the major languages of Africa, comprehension texts and an introduction to the literature created in the language, oral and aural skills and structural analysis.

**ALL433 Research Project: Data Collection (2)**

The research project will be carried out through regular consultation with the relevant lecturer and will lead to the collection of data on the chosen research topic and documentation of the research findings.

**ALL434 Introduction to Applied Linguistics (2)**

The course content will include the study of mental representation of grammar, the child's processing of grammar, the psycholinguistic approach to mental process and the language learning processes.

**ALL435 Language Instruction VIII (Advanced Level) (2)**

The course synopsis will include a discussion of the salient issues concerning the current state and future situation of one of the major languages of Africa, advanced comprehension texts and a good understanding of the literature created in the language, advanced oral and aural skills and an in-depth descriptive knowledge of the language.

**ALL436 Research Project: Data Analysis and Interpretation (2)**

The course will consist of supervised work on hands-on data analysis, interpretation and research report write-up.

**ALL441 World Literature in Setswana Translation (2)**

The content of the course will include primarily literary texts translated into Setswana from other African languages, and secondly those translated from foreign/non-African languages. A study of how (and why) cultures are constructed, inter-textualized and manipulated through translation will also be done.

**ALL442 Creative Writing, Theory and Practice (2)**

The content of this course includes techniques of writing in three genres: short stories, plays (drama) and poems (poetry).

**ALL443 Oral Poetry in Botswana (2)**

The course will cover the performance and significance of the various forms of indigenous oral poetry that are composed and rendered by oral artists under different cultural and situational contexts in Botswana.

**ALL451 Studies in African Aesthetics (2)**

The course content will include theories of aesthetic judgment and arguments propounded by philosophers, artists, literary critics and consumers of objects of aesthetic value.

**ALL452 Popular Culture in Africa (2)**

The course will include a study of culture, subcultures and visual culture with emphasis on music, dance, films/videos, television, computer and their inter-textual relationship. It will also include the ideology of mass culture, theories of consumption and its confrontation with politics, religion and the spirit of conservatism.

**ALL453 Women's Literature in Botswana (2)**

The course will include a study on various literary texts created by women in Botswana from oral to written, how they handle relations of power, sexuality and gender issues, their vision and communicative strategies.

**ALL454 Children's Traditions and Dramatics (2)**

The content of the course will include research on children's traditional games, storytelling, songs, and methods of dramatic improvisation and creative writing for children's books.

**ALL455 Postcolonial Theory and African Literature (2)**

The course examines from a historical perspective the national, transnational and translational boundaries of culture with reference to colonial and post-colonial literature.

**ALL456 Introduction to African Thought (2)**

The course content will include philosophical treatise that exist within the discipline of African philosophy and thought on various topics that by their very nature raise questions of philosophical discussion.

**GEC261 Languages of Botswana (2)**

The content of the course will include the study of the various language groups that settled in what is now Botswana and how they have interacted over the years to give rise to the current language situation. The course will also discuss the role of Setswana as national and English as official language.

**GEC262 Introduction to Cultural Studies (2)**

The content of the course includes theories of cultural production, practices and values in Africa. Sensitive questions of ethnicity and multiculturalism are also discussed.

**GEC361 Introduction to Rhetoric and Public Speaking (2)**

The content of the course will include aspects of African literature, language and philosophy with reference to interpersonal communication.

### DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH

**Staff Professors:**

M. J. Melamu, B.A. (Rhod.), Dip.Ed. (Durham), M.A. (SA), D. Phil. (Sussex)

A. J. C. Pongwene, B.A(Hons), M.A., Ph.D (London); M.A.(Leeds), Cert. in Phon. (IPA) Cert. in Phon. of Englishfor Foreign Students (UCL)

**Associate Professors:**


**Senior Lecturers:**

M. M. Alimi, B.A., M.A., PhD. (Ibadan)

A. E. Arua, B.A. (Hons), M.A. (ESL), PhD (Ific)


R. Lethlolo, Dip. Sec. Ed., B.Ed. (UB), M.Phil (Edinburgh), PhD (Michigan)

J. McAllister, B.A. (Hons), M.A. (Toronto) Ph (Queen's)


L. S. Molema, B.A. (UBLS), M.A.S., PhD. (Mainz)


S. Morapedi, B.A., PGDE, Cert. Lib, Dip. Lib. (UB), M.A (Sher), MA (Essex), PhD (Sussex)


P. W. Mwikisa, B.A. (Zambia), M.A., D. Phil (Sussex)


T. Otigojswa, B.A., P.G.D.E. (UB) M.Phil (Oxford), PhD (Pretoria)

B. Seboni, B.A., CCE (UBS), M.A. (Wisconsin)

**Lecturers:**


S. C. Eleche, B.A., P.G.D.E., (UB), M.A., PhD (Lancaster)

K. N. Kafela-Mokoka, B.A., PGDE, (UB), M.A. (Waikato)


G. Liford, B.A., (Vassar College), M.A., PhD
Departmental Regulations
Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Department of English offers the following programmes leading to the award of a Degree:

a) Single Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor's Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
b) Combined Major/Minor Programme with English as the Major leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
c) Combined Major/Major Programme with English and a second subject other than English as Majors leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
d) Combined Major/Minor with English as the Minor leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations;
e) Multi-disciplinary Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Arts Degree as per Departmental Regulations.

Entry Requirements
Admission requirements to the Programmes in the Department of English are specified in the Faculty of Humanities Regulation 22.2.

Award of Degree
A student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 20.4 to be awarded a Degree.

Career Opportunities for Graduates of the Department of English
1.5.1 Career prospects for Bachelor's and Master's Degree holders in English include professional employment in the fields of:
a) Education, teaching at secondary and tertiary levels or in the field of curriculum development in the Ministry of Education;
b) Print and Electronic Media;
c) Publishing;
d) Public Relations;
e) The Civil Service.
1.5.2 Training in English studies provides the recipient with the kind of adaptable mind that enables him/her to fit, with some additional training, into a wide range of managerial and administrative positions, including posts in financial and business institutions.

Course Structure
1.6.1 Courses in the Department of English shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programmes as outlined below.

Level 100
Semester 2
Core Course
ENG121 Introduction to English Language Description and Usage (3)
This course provides an overview of basic grammatical concepts and terms that students can apply to particular examples and difficulties of usage.

Optional Courses
Band B: English Language
ENG211 Introduction to English Literature: Poetry and Drama (3)
The course seeks to introduce students to the poetry of Southern Africa. While focusing on the modern written forms, it also points to the living, everyday experience of oral traditions of poetry. The course is broadly representative of the countries, themes and forms of poetic expression in the region.

Level 300
Semester 3
Core Course
ENG211 The Pronunciation of English (3)
This course introduces students to articulatory processes and the description of English sounds.

Optional Courses
Band B: English Language
ENG212 Introduction to English Literature: The Novel (3)
The course seeks to introduce students to the development of the English Novel from its infancy in the 18th Century to modern times. The course broadly examines the emergence of the English Novel and the conditions under which it emerged.

Band C: African Literature
ENG213 Prose Literature of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to prose literature of the Southern African region, covering various historical, political and social topics as they are written about in the literature of the region.

ENG223 The Drama of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the drama of Southern Africa, covering the genesis and development of Southern African drama, identifying a dramatic form that is Southern African, and relating, comparing and contrasting such dramatic forms to those from other parts of Africa.

Semester 4
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG221 Introduction to English Linguistics (3)
An introductory over-view of Descriptive Linguistics, viewed as a foundation for the study of English Language and Linguistics courses.

Optional Courses
Band B: English Language
ENG222 Introduction to English Literature: Poetry and Drama (3)
The course seeks to introduce students to some of the major poets and dramatists in English Literature. It examines the works of some of the major poets and dramatists in English Literature from Chaucer up to the present time.

Band C: African Literature
ENG213 The Poetry of Southern Africa (3)
This course introduces students to the poetry of Southern Africa. While focusing on the modern written forms, it also points to the living, everyday experience of oral traditions of poetry. The course is broadly representative of the countries, themes and forms of poetic expression in the region.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG217 Theatre History (3)
This course introduces students to the study of Theatre, from a historical perspective. The course traces developments in Theatre across the world; highlighting circumstances that have either helped develop theatre or stifle it.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG351 Phonology of English (3)
The course introduces students to some of the phonological theories on the pronunciation of English and other languages known to them. In addition, it gives students the opportunity to apply this knowledge to some data to enhance their understanding of these theories.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG341 Introduction to Sociolinguistics (3)
The course introduces students to the relationship between language and society. It focuses in particular on the description of varieties of English and their use in various contexts, and on the analysis of and solutions to language problems, especially in developing countries.

ENG441 Introduction to Pragmatics (3)
This course introduces students to Pragmatics, a discipline which studies various factors involved in appropriate use and understanding of language. It looks at such factors as the speaker’s intentions and how they are surmised by the addressee, the speaker’s and addressee’s background attitudes and beliefs, their understanding of the context in which the utterance is made, and their knowledge of how language can be used for a variety of purposes.

Band B: English Literature
ENG352 The Metaphysical Poets (3)
This course will chart the development during the 16th-17th Centuries of Metaphysical poetry through its chief practitioners: Donne, Herbert, Vaughan and Marvell. It will study the poetic devices, styles and subjects that link together these writers as Metaphysical poets.

ENG332 English Romantic Poetry: The Early Romantics (3)
This course deals with the early part of the literature that came to be known as English Romantic Poetry. Focus will be on Blake, Wordsworth and Coleridge.

ENG342 Elizabethan and Jacobean Literature: Drama (3)
A study of Elizabethan and Jacobean Drama as a significant literary, cultural, political and religious expression of the Age.

ENG412 Introduction to Shakespeare (3)
This course deals with the achievement of Shakespeare as the hallmark of the English literary tradition through an exploration of three of his more famous plays and a selection of his most popular poems.

Band C: African Literature
ENG333 Critical Issues in Modern African Literature: Phases of Modern African Literature (3)
An examination of the major critical issues and trends in Modern African literature using both creative materials and critical works of African authors.

ENG353 Currents of Thought in the Literature of the African Diaspora: African-American Literature (3)
A survey of African-American literature from slave narratives to contemporary works.

ENG363 Oral Literature (3)
This course acquaints students with orality as a cultural process. It develops an appreciation of verbal art and examines the fundamental sources and basis of the forms and structures of African and European literature.

ENG373 Botswana Literature (3)
The course is a critical study of the novel, poetry, short story and drama of Botswana. It will also trace the development of the literature. The course will focus on stylistic, thematic and generic differences and similarities in the works.

Band D: World Literature
ENG334 Commonwealth Literature (3)
A selection of works of prose, fiction, drama, poetry and essays drawn from a number of literary traditions in The Commonwealth. The choice of texts for study will help students to reflect on the problematic use of the English language as a medium of literary expression in all Commonwealth societies.

Band E: Theory
ENG415 Readings in Literary Theory 1 (3)
The course surveys the changing conceptions of the nature and function of literature in the Western tradition from Plato and Aristotle in the Classical period to Tolstoy and Marx in the nineteenth century.

ENG317 African Drama (3)
The course offers students an opportunity to critically look at a representative selection of African dramatic literature. The course helps students to identify and appreciate the various themes explored in drama, its various styles and techniques and its role in society.

ENG324 Twentieth Century American Literature (3)
A critical examination of twentieth-century American literature using representative texts of various genre -types: fiction, drama, and poetry.

ENG327 Practical Theatre (6, 2 Semesters)
This course is an introduction to the practice of theatre such as the processes of script analysis, research, rehearsal, stagecraft and performance. The course will offer students an opportunity to approach theatre holistically and to understand the relationships between the various arts that go into its making.

Semester 6
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG311 Modern English Grammar (3)
This course is a detailed description and analysis of modern English grammar: meaning of grammar, word classes in English, English phrase types and English sentence structure.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG321 Usage in English (3)
The course examines common problems associated with word class usage (noun/ pronoun agreement, tense and voice in verbs, comparative and superlative forms in adjectives and adverbs) and sentence usage including modification, coordination, subordination and fragmentation.

ENG361 Morphology of English (3)
The course provides students with an understanding of the morphological structure of English and their own languages. It also teaches students how to analyse any language morphologically.

Band D: World Literature
ENG312 Milton (3)
A detailed study of the seminal poetical writings of John Milton. It will place Milton in the context of the tradition of world Epic poetry and of English 17th Century poetry, and systematically explore Miltonic ideas about literary genre, politics, religion and philosophy.

ENG362 The Later Romantics (3)
This course attempts to establish the relationship between the Early Romantics and the later in terms of theme and style. Focusing on Keats, Shelley and Byron, it will attempt to place the later Romantics in their proper literary and socio-political context.

ENG372 Elizabethan and Jacobean Poetry (3)
The course examines how Elizabethan and Jacobean writers employed the poetic mode to express views on private and personal feelings, and on social and public issues.

Band C: African Literature
Continued discussion of the major issues and trends in Modern African Literature using both creative works and critical writings of African authors.

ENG393 Currents of Thought in the Literature of the African Diaspora: African–Caribbean Literature (3)
A critical study of Caribbean literature within the context of the forces and conditions that occasioned its advent, and continues to impact its survival and future.

Band D: World Literature
ENG324 Twentieth Century American Literature (3)
A critical examination of twentieth-century American literature using representative texts of various genre -types: fiction, drama, and poetry.

ENG327 Practical Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This course is an introduction to the practice of theatre such as the processes of script analysis, research, rehearsal, stagecraft and performance. The course will offer students an opportunity to approach theatre holistically and to understand the relationships between the various arts that go into its making.
Level 400
Semester 7
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG421 Approaches to Syntax (3)
This course provides students with knowledge of various approaches to syntax with specific emphasis on functional approaches.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG631 Language Acquisition (3)
The course introduces students to the principles governing how humans acquire a first language, and a second or additional language. Important aspects of the course include the role of the brain and other speech organs in language processing, and learner strategies in Second Language Acquisition.

ENG471 Introduction to Literary Stylistics (3)
Students will be introduced to a range of linguistic theories on which they will draw in their analysis of selected texts.

Band B: English Literature
ENG422 The Development of the English Novel: The Early English Novel (3)
A chronological study of the development of the English Novel from its 18th Century inception by Defoe through to Romantic conceptions of the form. It will consider the novel’s evolution as a form of social commentary and its response to diverse social and political pressures.

ENG432 Victorian Poetry (3)
A study of 19th Century English and political pressures. poetry identifying the important themes and concerns of the African novel.

ENG424 The Novel in the Modern World (3)
Focus on major novels published since 1950, this course provides an overview of how novelists from different parts of the world have developed the form as a means to address important social, cultural and political issues.

Band F: Project/Long Essay
ENG416 Research Essay (6, 2 Semesters)
The course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 – 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417 Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students’ practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, script-writing.

ENG427 Dramatic Literature (3)
The course explores the importance of play texts in the development of theatre traditions around the world. It is designed to help students appreciate the difference between drama as literature and drama as theatre.

Semester 8
Core Course
Band A: Language
ENG451 Introduction to Semantics (3)
An introductory course to semantics which hopes to promote an understanding of a framework for conceptualising meaning leading to clear and logical thinking.

Optional Courses
Band A: Language
ENG411 Form, Function, and Variation in English (3)
The course focuses on the practical analysis of texts against a background of various theoretical approaches to stylistics.

ENG431 Introduction to Discourse Analysis (3)
This course introduces students to Discourse Analysis, a discipline which is concerned with how language users produce and interpret language in situated contexts and how these constructions relate to social and cultural norms, preferences, and expectations. Among other things, the course focuses on the nature and structure of written and spoken discourse and attempts to link the characterization of speaker/writer meaning and its explanation in the context of use.

ENG463 Gender Issues in African Literature (3)
Requiring a comprehensive reading of feminist theory and some literary texts, the course encourages students to draw on different disciplines to explore representations of motherhood and fatherhood in nationalist politics and literature; visual representations of female and male sexuality; mainstream feminist criticism and “womanism.”

ENG453 Bessie Head (3)
This course focuses on Bessie Head as one of the major writers to emerge from Botswana and Africa.

Band B: English Literature
ENG462 Shakespearean Poetry (3)
This course will explore a selection of Shakespeare’s sonnets and excerpts from the longer poems, focusing on major themes of Elizabethan poetry such as love, time, death, religion, and politics.

ENG472 The Development of the English Novel: The Victorian English Novel (3)
A chronological study of the traditional English Novel from the Romantic Movement to the end of the reign of Queen Victoria. Problems the novel address include the decline in religious faith due to Darwinism, and the social pressures of the increase of urbanisation and industrialisation.

ENG482 Modern English Drama (3)
An exploration of the stylistic and thematic advances made by British playwrights at the beginning of the 20th century and their imprint on the development of drama during the rest of the century.

ENG492 Modern English Poetry (3)
The poets of the period explore the material and spiritual dislocations that were signs of the break-up of Western Civilisation. The course studies the poetry of Hopkins, W.B. Yeats, T.S. Eliot and the poetry of WW1.

Band C: African Literature
ENG443 The African Novel II (3)
A study of the design and technical innovations to be seen in the African novel written in English or translated into English from indigenous and other languages of the continent of Africa.

ENG466 Gender and Gender (3)
The course introduces students to a range of gender-related theoretical and analytical issues in the structure and use of English, and examines the current trends in gender-related language reform.
Latin America, identity and social status in multi-ethnic and multi-lingual societies, the problems of translation.

Band E: Theory
ENG435 Readings in Literary Theory II (3)
The course surveys the various and sometimes conflicting twentieth-century approaches to literature from Russian Formalism to the more recent Feminist and Postcolonial arguments.

ENG425 Seminar on Feminist Literary Theory (3)
Although the course demands an in-depth reading of feminist theory, emphasis will also be placed on interdisciplinary approaches. Students will be encouraged to consider how theoretical statements affect their own reading of feminist theory, emphasis will also

Band F: Project/Long Essay
ENG416 Project/Essay in Either Language or Literature (6, 2 Semesters)
The course offers the student the opportunity to conduct supervised research which should result in the submission of an essay of 5000 – 7000 words.

Band G: Theatre Studies
ENG417 Theory and Practice of Drama (6, 2 Semesters)
This is a course designed for students with an interest in the practice of theatre. It is intended to deepen students’ practical theatre skills and some important theories underlying the skills of acting, directing for the stage, set design, lighting, script-writing.

Programme Structure
1.7.1 In each semester at Level 100 English shall comprise 6 credits made up of 1 core course in Language (3 credits) and 1 core course in Literature (3 credits).
1.7.2 In each semester at Level 200 English shall comprise 6 credits made up of the following:
- A core course in Language and;
- A Literature course selected from the available options.
1.7.3 In a Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme, English shall comprise the following at Level 300: In each semester, 6 credits made up of the core Language course and one Literature course selected from any of the bands.
1.7.4 In a Combined Degree (Major/Major) Programme, English shall comprise the following at Level 400: In each semester, 6 credits made up of the core Language course and one Literature course selected from any of the bands.
1.7.5 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 300:
- In each semester, 9 credits made up of the core Language course, one Literature course, and either another language course or another Literature course from a different band;
- Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum of 9 credits in Language.
1.7.6 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme, where English is the Major subject, English shall comprise the following at Level 400:
- In each semester, a minimum of 9 credits made up of the core Language course, one Literature course and another Language or another Literature, provided it is from a different band;
- Over the two semesters, a student may only take a maximum 9 credits in Language.
1.7.7 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) where English is the Minor subject at Level 300: In each semester English shall comprise 3 credits selected in consultation with the Head of Department from the Department’s course offerings from Level 300 and above.
1.7.8 In a Combined Degree (Major/Minor) where English is the Minor subject at Level 400: In each semester, English shall comprise 3 credits selected in consultation with the Head of Department from the Department’s course offerings from Level 300 and above.
1.7.9 In a Single Major Programme at Level 300, English shall comprise the following in each semester: 15 credits made up of:
- The core Language course, one optional Language course; two Literature courses selected from different bands and another Language or Literature course also from a different band.
- Over the two semesters, a student must take at least 12 credits, the equivalent of 4 courses, in Language.
1.7.10 In a Single Major Programme at Level 400: In each semester, English shall comprise 15 credits made up of the following:
- A core Language course;
- One optional Language course;
- Two optional Literature courses provided that each course is from a different band;
- A project or long essay in either Language or Literature (6 credits over two semesters).
1.7.11 In a Multidisciplinary Programme at Levels 300 and 400, the student shall, in consultation with his/her tutor and the Head of Department, select for credit relevant courses from the Departmental offerings. Such courses shall normally be at Level 300 and above.

Assessment and Examination
Student performance in each course shall be evaluated by taking into account continuous assessment and final examination, except in the case of ENG416: Research Essay, where the completed essay will take the place of a final examination.

Progression from Semester to Semester
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

DEPARTMENT OF FRENCH
Entry Requirements
1.1. Only candidates who have passed French in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent may be admitted to Level 100 Group A Advanced Programme.

1.2. Candidates without the above requirements may be admitted to Level 100 Group B Beginners Programme.

Level 100
Group A: Advanced Students (pre-requisite: BGCSE in French or equivalent).

Semester 1
Core Course
FRE111 Practical French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE112 Spoken and Written French (2)
FRE113 French for Specific purposes 1 (2)

Semester 2
Core Course
FRE121 Communication Skills in French (3)

Optional Courses
FRE122 Techniques of Oral and Written Expression (2)
FRE123 French for Specific Purposes II (2)

Group B: Beginners (pre-requisite: None)

Semester 1
Core Courses
FRE114 Basic French Language (3)
FRE115 Oral and Written Comprehension (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
FRE124 Oral and Written Expression (3)
FRE125 Elementary French Language (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Course
FRE211 Intermediate French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE212 Business, Scientific and Technical French (2)
FRE213 Introduction to French Literature (2)
FRE214 Introduction to the Culture and Civilization of the French-Speaking World (2)
FRE217 French language I (2)

Semester 4
Core Course
FRE221 Advanced French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE222 French for International Relations,
Tourism and Hotel Industry (2)

FRE223 Intro. to African Literature in French (2)
FRE224 Conversation (2)
FRE227 French language II (2)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Course
FRE311 Proficiency in French Language (3)

Optional Courses
FRE312 French Novel and Poetry of the 19th Century (2)
FRE313 Introduction to French Linguistics and Orthography (2)
FRE314 French Culture and Civilization (2)
FRE315 Introduction to Text Analysis (2)
FRE317 French for Tourism and Hospitality I (2)

Semester 6
Core Course
FRE325 Advanced Communicative French (3)

Optional Courses
FRE321 African Caribbean Literature in French (2)
FRE322 Culture and Civilization of French-speaking Africa Countries (2)
FRE323 French Linguistics and Orthography (2)
FRE324 French Essay Writing
FRE327 French for Tourism and Hospitality II (2)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Course
FRE411 French Language in Use (3)

Optional Courses
FRE412 Currents of Thought in the French-Speaking Black African Countries.
FRE413 Theory of Translation (2)
FRE414 Modern French Literature: Study of a Genre, an Author (2)
FRE415 Research Essay (2)

Semester 8
Core Course
FRE426 Advanced Comm. Skills in French (3)

Optional Courses
FRE421 French Language through Drama (2)
FRE422 Advanced French Linguistics (2)
FRE423 Translation (2)
FRE424 African Literature: Study of a Genre, an Author (2)
FRE425 Aspects of French Thought (2)
FRE427 Caribbean Literature in French (2)

Assessment
1. Performance in each course, with the exception of core courses and the Conversation course FRE224, shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and the final examination in the ratio of 2:3. The final examination shall consist of a written paper of two hours duration.
2. In levels 100 to 400, the final examination for all core courses shall comprise a written paper of two hours’ duration and an oral examination of 15 minutes in the ratio of 2:1.
3. The continuous assessment of each course shall comprise a minimum of two oral and written assignments and/or two tests.
4. The ratio between continuous assessment, oral examination and written examination shall be 2:1:2.
5. At Levels 100 400, a three hour Language Laboratory class shall be regarded as equivalent to one lecture hour.

Progression
1. In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative GPA, which is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.
2. A minimum of credit in French in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent is required in order to be admitted to Levels 200, 300 and 400 courses.

Course Descriptions
FRE111 Practical French Language (3)
This course will reinforce students’ competence in oral and written French so that they have a more spontaneous use of the French Language. Emphasis will be laid on mastering basic language functions and linguistic structures learnt by students at secondary level for effective expression in French both written and verbal.

FRE112 Spoken and Written French (2)
This course aims at rapidly developing students’ fluency and accuracy in spoken and written French by equipping them with listening and reading skills and strategies. The content of the course will cover practical exercises both oral and written in the classroom and in the Language Laboratory.

FRE113 French for Specific Purposes I (2)
This French Language course aims at equipping students with reading techniques so as to understand and interpret texts of their area of specialization (Library and Information Science, History etc.) written in French. The content comprises analysis and description of different types of the French discourse used in various disciplines.

FRE114 Basic French Language (3)
This is an intensive French Language course intended to develop the student’s ability to communicate in French both orally and in writing. Emphasis is placed on elementary linguistic structures with emphasis on free expression (spoken and written), oral exercises in the Language Laboratory to consolidate communicative and linguistic competencies.

FRE115 Oral and Written Comprehension (3)
The aim of this course is to develop the students’ comprehension of spoken and written French by equipping them with some reading techniques and listening strategies and strengthening their ability to express ideas in French by means of both oral and written speech. The course will be based on oral and written comprehension of descriptive and narrative passages for essay writing.

FRE121 Communication Skills in French (3)
This course aims at developing the ability to use the French language efficiently in a practical way. It incorporates language activities related to all four skills that will enable learners to understand and communicate in spoken and written language.

FRE122 Techniques of Oral and Written Expression (2)
The aim of this course is to develop fluency and accuracy in spoken and written French. Students will be trained to introduce nuance in their oral expression through some communicative activities. Emphasis will be placed on techniques and strategies relevant to the planning and organization of writing tasks (writing reports, summaries, formal and informal letters, expressing opinions etc.)

FRE123 French for Specific Purposes II (2)
This French Language course aims at equipping students with reading techniques so as to understand and interpret texts of their area of specialization (Library and Information Studies, History etc.) written in French. The content comprises analysis and description of different types of the French discourse used in various disciplines.

FRE124 Oral and Written Expression (3)
This course aims at helping students use acquired communication skills so as to express themselves freely in accurate spoken as well as written French. Communication activities will be performed in both spoken and written French in order to give students self-confidence in the use of the French language.

FRE125 Elementary French Language (3)
This course will further develop communicative skills and introduce new speech acts and grammatical structures, and building up vocabulary on new topics in order for them to achieve proficiency in spoken and written French. The content includes the consolidation of language functions and grammatical structures already acquired and the introduction of new ones.

FRE211 Intermediate French Language (3)
This course aims at consolidating communicative fluency and grammatical accuracy in order to help students achieve proficiency in spoken French. Students will
acquire useful oral and writing skills for setting up efficient communication in French within standard situations. Focus will be placed on the study of new language forms and functions. Classroom activities comprise oral and written exercises.

FRE212 Business, Scientific and Technical French (2)

This course aims at giving students an opportunity to learn the French language that can be used in professional situations of communication. A study of the French language mechanisms and structures that is necessary for understanding scientific and technical texts written in French. Study of the common and important commercial vocabulary related to the economic field.

FRE213 Introduction to French Literature (2)

This course is offered to introduce students to a variety of basic literary genres of particular authors from France: novels, short stories, and poems, of intermediate difficulty. The main objective will be to introduce students to a basic vocabulary of literary discourse in French, to make them aware of literary style and help them improve communicative competence in French.

FRE214 Introduction to Culture and Civilisation of the French Speaking World (2)

This course intends to examine aspects of the culture and civilization of the French-speaking world. A survey will be made of civilization of French-speaking countries through authentic materials based on economy, social life and politics. Students will have the opportunity to compare aspects of culture and civilization of the French-speaking world with their own culture.

FRE217 French Language I (2)

This course is designed to develop students' competence in spoken and written French so that they may have a more spontaneous use of the French language. Emphasis will be laid on mastering basic language functions and linguistic structures for effective expression in both written and spoken French. The content of this course will cover practical exercises, both oral and written, in the classroom and the language laboratory.

FRE221 Advanced French Language (3)

This course aims to help students express themselves as clearly as possible with more confidence and accuracy. Emphasis is on exercises reflecting real-life language use and leading to better pronunciation and grammatical control. It is based on oral and written exercises aimed at broadening vocabulary and improving style. Composition will cover the following areas: description, portrait and narration.

FRE222 French for International Relations, Tourism and the Hotel Industry (2)

This course aims at giving students an opportunity to learn the register of French typically used in a professional situation of communication. Study of vocabulary and savoir-faire related to international relations or to tourism and the hotel trade. Students are to choose one the following two topics: French for International Relations or French for Tourism and the Hotel Industry.

FRE223 Introduction to African Literature (2)

This course is offered to introduce students to a variety of basic literary genres of particular authors from francophone Africa: novels, short stories, and poems, of intermediate difficulty. The main objective will be to introduce students to a basic vocabulary of literary discourse in French, to make them aware of literary style and help them improve communicative competence in French.

FRE224 Conversation (2)

This course aims to develop students' ability to understand and produce general notions (basic concepts) and help them improve their command of spoken French. Real-life documents as well as communicative activities will be used to strengthen the students' ability to communicate in French. Conversation from a topic, a text, a film, a documentary etc. will lead to written exercises.

FRE227 French Language II (2)

The content of this course includes the consolidation of language functions and grammatical structures already acquired by students and the introduction of new ones. It will focus on essential linguistic (oral and written) communication skills so as to be able to use French effectively for the purpose of practical communication. This course will develop students' ability to use the French language in a practical way.

FRE311 French Novel and Poetry of the 19th Century (2)

This course aims at helping students achieve proficiency in spoken French and improve their written language skills. Students will obtain a deeper knowledge of the structure and functioning of the French language in order to write and speak better in French.

FRE312 French Novel and Poetry of the 19th Century (2)

The aim of this course is to introduce students to the major schools and movements of French literature through the works of some of the leading writers of the French tradition and to familiarize them with particular expressions and stylistic features used by selected authors in their work. Students will become familiar with major writers and schools of the French tradition and through them improve their language skills and familiarity with French culture. Students will read major works of French literature from selected movements of the 19th century.

FRE313 Introduction to French Linguistics (2)

This course will provide a general knowledge base for scientific study of the French language and equip students with facts and skills to enable them to describe the French language, and account for its internal changes. The course entails an elaborate description of phonetics, phonology/ morphology, semantics and syntax of French.

FRE314 French Culture and Civilisation (2)

This course examines aspects of French culture and civilization that are relevant to the study of literature and language and constitutes an introduction to ways of life, social organization, law, politics, attitudes and mentalities, etc. Students will learn to appreciate better the civilization of France and be able to pursue studies of French language and literature.

FRE315 Introduction to Text Analysis (2)

This course intends to give students a basic familiarity with the genres of literature in French and with different ways of approaching texts: thematic studies, use of language, relationship between form and content, characterization and to familiarize them with the vocabulary used in French literary studies. This will include study of some schools and methods of literary criticism.

FRE 317 French for Tourism and Hospitality I (2)

This is a practical course meant for students who want to acquire relevant language skills so as to communicate in a professional situation. The aim of the course is to help students acquire a basic knowledge of the type of French commonly used in the fields of the Hotel and Tourism Industry. It consists of the study of vocabulary and linguistic skills related to the profession of tourism and the hotel industry. This topic-based language course will cover real-life contexts and situations. Focus will be on oral and written communication related to the situations and practices in the area of hotel and tourism management. The course will also examine aspects of the culture and civilization of the French-speaking world.

FRE321 African and Caribbean Literature in French (2)

This course aims at introducing students to the main currents in Black African and Caribbean Francophone literature and to familiarize them with the history, culture, experiences and aspirations of Black African people and people of African descent in the Caribbean through the study of selected works of prose and poetry by major writers.

FRE322 Culture and Civilisation of French Speaking African Countries (2)

This course aims at giving students an opportunity to gain a basic familiarity with the civilization of French-speaking Black Africa
and the ability to understand their own culture better by a comparison of the two. Aspects of the culture and civilization of French Speaking Black Africa will be examined.

**FRE323 French Linguistics and Orthography (2)**
This course introduces students to the understanding of the fundamental basis of the study of the French language and the application of the scientific knowledge of the French language to the understanding of transcription and of the writing systems of the language. It provides students with skills to manage possible language errors related to pronunciation and writing.

**FRE324 French Essay Writing (2)**
The course aims at improving students' performance and competence in objective reading and writing. Students will learn and put into practice reading and writing techniques. The content will cover practical exercises such as: note-taking, summarizing, letter writing, writing paragraphs and compositions, reading and writing different types of texts.

**FRE325 Advanced Communicative French (3)**
The aim of this course is to help students use acquired communication skills so as to express themselves freely and accurately in spoken and written French. The course content will cover practical exercises that will help learners to use French in simulated communicative situations.

**FRE 327 French for Tourism and Hospitality II (2)**
This course aims at developing students' communicative skills relevant to the profession of tourism, hotel management and the catering industry. More precisely, it aims at reinforcing all basic grammatical structures and vocabulary acquired through language functions in order to equip students with the necessary oral and writing skills for setting up an efficient communication in French within professional situations linked to Tourism and the Hotel Industry.

**FRE411 French Language in Use (3)**
The aim of this course is to develop particular communicative skills and strategies and to carry out some communicative activities as well as to familiarize students with the grammatical, stylistic, and linguistic problems in spoken versus written French. Students will study form and structure of the French language to improve their skills in conversation and writing.

**FRE412 Currents of Thought in the French Speaking Africa (2)**
The aim of this course is to familiarize students with currents of thought in the French-Speaking African and Caribbean countries. A study of selected philosophers and thinkers in Africa and the Caribbean: S. Signora, Cézaire, F. Fanon, J. Roumain, J. Babemmanjara, S. Adotevi, V. F. Mudimbe, A. Memmi etc.

**FRE413 Theory of Translation (2)**
This course provides students with skills to handle translation problems between French and English, Setswana and vice versa as well as an overview of theoretical problems of translation. It will also examine the role played by the vocabulary, structure and meaning in the theory of translation from French to English and vice versa.

**FRE414 Modern French Literature: Study of a Genre or an Author (2)**
The aim of this course is to give students an in-depth knowledge of a particular author, genre, literary movement, or subject in Modern French literature. Students will read several works of the chosen author, genre, or subject.

**FRE415 Research Essay (2)**
This course provides students with the opportunity to conduct research and use their linguistic skills to write on a chosen topic of linguistic, literary, or cultural interest. Students will be trained in research methods and carry out such research under staff supervision that will result in submission of a finished dissertation. Admission to this course is subject to Departmental approval.

**FRE421 French Language Through Drama (2)**
The aim of this course is to develop particular communicative skills and strategies through the use of some theatrical techniques. Students will have an opportunity to learn the French language while writing their own plots, which they will perform subsequently. This course includes the use of some theatrical techniques and practical exercises and discussions of students' work.

**FRE422 Advanced French Linguistics (2)**
The course introduces students to the scientific description of the French language with special emphasis on the phonetics/phonology, morphology/syntax and semantics. The approach is descriptive. Theoretical approaches (generativist, structuralist, transformationalist, etc.) will be referred to without being taken as the explicit basis of the language analysis.

**FRE423 Translation (2)**
This is a practical course that will give students skills to handle the translation of French into accurate English and vice versa using simple texts and writings, real-life documents and interpretation of speech.

**FRE424 African Literature: Study of a Genre or an Author (2)**
This course gives students more in-depth knowledge of particular authors, genres, literary movements, or subjects in Francophone African literature. Students will read several works of selected authors, and gain an ability to apply what they have learnt to their other studies. Readings on the chosen topic assigned by the staff member. Possible topics include Negritude, women in Africa, tradition and modernity.

**FRE425 Aspects of French Thought (2)**
The aim of this course is to familiarize students with currents of thought in France on social, economic, political, and cultural problems, as well as their philosophical underpinnings, as seen by influential French writers since the 1930s. Students will read selections from major French intellectuals of the post-war period and from current journals.

**FRE426 Advanced Communication Skills in French (3)**
This course aims at reinforcing students' competence in oral and written expression and comprehension so as to give them more confidence in speaking and discussing a variety of topics.

**FRE427 Caribbean Literature in French (2)**
The objective of this course is to introduce students to the history, culture, experience and aspirations of people of African descent in the French speaking Caribbean. Coursework includes a study from a selected period, theme, and piece of the work of an author.

### DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

#### Degree Programmes
- Bachelor of Arts in Archaeology
- Bachelor of Arts in History

#### Entry Requirements
The normal Entry Requirements are as stipulated in General Regulation 20.20 and in Departmental Regulation 1.4

#### (A) Archaeology Course Descriptions

**ARC101 Introduction to World Prehistory**
The course aims to provide students with a basic understanding of world history, and provides students with an opportunity to appreciate prehistory on a global scale. 2 lecture hours per week.

**ARC102 Introduction to Archaeology**
Introduction to the nature of archaeological data its analysis and the state of knowledge of the subject in Botswana through, and discussion of case studies from Botswana in particular and southern and eastern Africa in general. 2 lecture hours per week.

**ARC201 Introduction to Archaeological Theory**
The course presents to students archaeological theories, and analytical techniques generally employed in the study of archaeological phenomena, and also discusses the history of the discipline, its aims, goals, and development as a discipline. 3 lecture hours per week.
**ARC202 Introduction to Archæological Method**
The course is an introduction to archæological/prehistoric research methods, organisation, curation and interpretation— including reconnaissance, environmental reconstruction, excavation, principles of stratigraphy, and analysis of finds. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC203 Introduction to African Archaeology**
Seminar course introducing issues and debates in African archaeology, including palaeontology and key figures in the development of African archaeology, and requiring a long essay on the prehistory of the continent. 3 seminar hours per week.

**ARC204 Introduction to Environmental Archaeology**
(Arc number: ARC 207) This course provides theoretical background in ecology, geology and related fields, especially those of the earth sciences used in conjunction with archaeology. Includes a 5-day field trip during the short-break to Nkamiland and Makgadikgadi. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC301 Archaeological Heritage Management**
(Previous Title: History of Archaeology) Philosophy, policy, and practice, to enable students to choose appropriate techniques for cultural and natural resources, and to comprehend the theoretical aspects of Cultural Resource Management. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC302 Quantitative Techniques**
This course equips students for working with varied archaeological samples, and introduces basic quantitative or statistical principles and techniques applied in the field and laboratory practices as well as in research data analysis. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC304 Research Project Proposal**
To test student initiative in choosing and preparing a Research Project Proposal based on analysis of previous research reports and publications. (pre-req:site for ARC 471 and compulsory for Single Major) 3 lecture/ tutorial hour per week.

**ARC313 Stone Tools (Lithics)**
This course introduces students to the basics of stone tool technology and typology— including learning how to make stone tools, how to identify and describe them, and how others in the region have classified stone tools into various types. 3 lecture hours.

**ARC 314 Ceramic Analysis**
This course introduces students to the basics of ceramic technology and typology— including how to make pots, how to identify and describe whole vessels and potsherds, and how others in the region have classified ceramics into various types. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC315 Field Techniques**
This course introduces students to basic archæological field skills— including map reading, orienteering, map-making, survey, excavation, sorting and cataloguing finds. Students spend two weeks intensive fieldwork training conditions under supervision. 3 credits per 2 weeks.

**ARC316 Archæological Interpretation**
This course teaches students how archæologists go about interpreting the past through a series of simulated archæological problems that the students solve. The problems closely resemble actual archæological evidence. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC317 Bioarchaeology I**
Study of the relationship between human beings and their natural and social environments, integrating data from botanical and faunal remains. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC318 Ethnoarchaeology**
This course introduces learners to basic concepts in ethnoarchaeology, the study of contemporary societies/ cultures and their relevance to archaeology. It focuses on the principles and development of the subdiscipline. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC322 Special Subject (Previous Title: Case Studies in Ethnoarchaeology)**
Study of a subject of current research and debate and/or topical issues in Botswana and Southern African archaeology, based on current staff expertise— e.g. a study of Rock Art. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC323 Research Methods in Archaeology**
(Previous Title: Reading Material Culture in Archaeology) Equipping students with basic knowledge and skills to conceptualize, plan and carry out archaeological research and data analysis. 3 lecture/ tutorial hours per week.

**ARC324 Archaeology of Botswana**
The course traces the history of archaeological research in Botswana and highlights major influences in and contributions to scholarship, and the impact of archaeology on the reconstruction of Botswana's history and museum development. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 402 Advanced Archæological Theory**
This course focuses on the 'New Archæology' from the 1960s, including the influence of Euro-American researchers on theoretical archæology and reviewing contributions of researchers in other parts of the world. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC415 Field Techniques**
This course introduces students to basic archæological field skills— including map reading, orienteering, map-making, survey, excavation, sorting and cataloguing finds. Students spend two weeks intensive fieldwork training conditions under supervision. 3 credits per 2 weeks.

**ARC 416 Archæological Interpretation**
This course teaches students how archæologists go about interpreting the past through a series of simulated archæological problems that the students solve. The problems closely resemble actual archæological evidence. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 417 Bioarchaeology I**
Study of the relationship between human beings and their natural and social environments, integrating data from botanical and faunal remains. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 418 Ethnoarchaeology**
This course introduces learners to basic concepts in ethnoarchaeology, the study of contemporary societies/ cultures and their relevance to archaeology. It focuses on the principles and development of the subdiscipline. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 419 Special Subject**
This course focuses on the 'New Archæology' from the 1960s, including the influence of Euro-American researchers on theoretical archæology and reviewing contributions of researchers in other parts of the world. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 420 Human Origins**
This course presents the naturalist's point of view of evolution and human origins, from around 5 million years ago until farming began about 10,000 years ago— discussing the origins of upright posture, tools, languages, and our extraordinary brains. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 421 Complex Societies (Previous Title: Farmers And State Formation)**
This course examines why people turned to food production after more than a million years of successful hunting and gathering. Case studies cover food production, sedentary life, and complex societies in the Near East, Africa and Central America. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC 422 Bioarchaeology II (Previous Title: Faunal And Floral Analysis)**
This course explores processes leading to the formation of fossil records and examines methodologies and techniques of extracting, analyzing and interpreting plant and animal micro and macrofossil material from the archaeological record. 3 lecture hours per week.

**ARC471 Research Project: Fieldwork & Preliminary Reports. 3 Credits**

**ARC472 Research Proposal: Intermediate & Final Reports. 9 Credits**

**GEC462 Reconstructing African Heritage through Multimedia**
The course uses specially designed audiovisual multimedia materials to study the major achievements of African prehistory evidenced by the remains of material cultures, the representation of material heritage by archaeologists, and how African heritage can be maintained and marketed. 2 lecture hours.

(A) BA in Archaeology

**Level 100**
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
**ARC 101 Introduction to Archaeology (2)**

**Semester 2**
**Core Courses**
**ARC102 Introduction to World Prehistory (2)**

**Level 200**
**Semester 1**
**Core Courses**
**ARC201 Introduction to Archæological Theory (3)**

**ARC203 Introduction to African Archaeology**
HIS201 African Cultures & Civilisations to C.1500
Selected themes in prehistory, state formation, trade, and small-scale societies—from the origin and spread of modern humans, via Ancient Egypt, Ethiopia and West African kingdoms, to the rise and fall of Great Zimbabwe. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slave Trade C.1500–c.1800
From later Islamic and Christian history in North Africa, via the growth of coastal and interior trading states, slave trading in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, with greater depth on south-eastern Africa. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS211 The Rise of Europe to World Domination
Rise of Europe from the Middle Ages to its position of world dominance in the late 19th century, including religion, social and cultural change, science and technology, witchcraft and divination, and changing relations with other civilizations. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS212 Catastrophe & Survival in 20th Century Europe
From world dominance to near-self-destruction, and then recovery in three major cycles: the two world wars; the era of Fascism; and the era of Communism—including extremism, economic collapse and the Nazi Holocaust, with use of IIM. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS213 Poverty, Economic Growth and Affluence in Western Europe and America
Examining the transformation of Western European and American economies through the development of trade in medieval Europe, feudal economies, markets during the renaissance, and the industrialization of Western Europe and North America. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS214 Agriculture and Industrialisation in the World Economy to 1945
Comparing the rise of capitalism in Britain, France, Germany, Russia and parts of southern and eastern Europe, with Japan and North America—with emphasis on agrarian transition, commercial revolutions, economic crisis and recovery. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS305 Historical Research Methods & Historiography of Botswana
Stages and processes in the research and writing of history—including topic selection, data collection, evaluation, dating analysis and interpretation of data, and systematic presentation of data as coherent meaningful accounts of the past. Debates and research lacunae on historical study of Botswana ecology and environment, culture, family life, migration and settlement, trade and production, technological change, elite formation, labour relations, political institutions, religion, education, etc 4 lecture/ tutorial hours per week.

HIS306 Introduction to the Philosophy of History & Research Project Proposal
The course discusses the issues relating to the scientific or non-scientific, objective or non-objective nature of historical knowledge, and the various theories advanced to explain the entire course of the human past. Each individual student writes a Research Project proposal for consideration by the History Department Board (pre-requisite for entering HIS 471 Research Project course). 4 lecture/ tutorial hours per week.

HIS311 African Diaspora in the Islamic World & Asia
In the context of the Saharan and Indian Ocean slave trades, contrasting mining and plantation labour with domestic labour and military employment in the Mediterranean and the Near East, Arabia and Persia, and the islands of the Oceans. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS312 African Diaspora in the Caribbean & The Americas
Why Africans rather than natives became slaves, African cultural survivals, slavery within mercantile and industrial economies, debates about emancipation, subsequent racial segregation, black political and intellectual movements. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS331 Introduction to Foreign Policy, Diplomacy and International Relations, 1800 to 1945
The concepts of diplomacy, foreign policy and international relations, and their historical evolution; operation of the international system and role of big powers therein. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS332 African Diaspora in the Caribbean & The Americas
Why Africans rather than natives became slaves, African cultural survivals, slavery within mercantile and industrial economies, debates about emancipation, subsequent racial segregation, black political and intellectual movements. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS333 Colonial Latin America to 1830
Conquest and establishment of colonial rule by Spain and Portugal; the indigenous people of Latin America, impact of conquest, the establishment of colonial rule, and anticolonial struggles. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS334 Superpowers in the 20th Century
Conceptual frameworks for analysing the international system; main historiographical issues concerning the role of the big powers and the survival of small states. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS335 Colonial Latin America to 1830
Conquest and establishment of colonial rule by Spain and Portugal; the indigenous people of Latin America, impact of conquest, the establishment of colonial rule, and anticolonial struggles. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS336 Modern Latin America
Independence and the failure of Pan Americanism; military dictatorships to bureaucratic-authoritarianism; revolutions in Mexico, Cuba and Nicaragua and the rise of modern Latin American democratic states. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS341 From Slavery to Colonialism in West Africa
Contact with Islam, growth of states, impact of slave trade and Scramble for colonisation, similarities and differences between French and British colonial conquest and systems of rule and changes within them. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS342 Modern Anglophone, Francophone & Lusophone West Africa
Political and socioeconomic changes since the outbreak of the Second World War: late colonial constitutions; early independence and popular betterment; military-bureaucratic coups; structural adjustment and multiparty democracy. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS343 Trade & Politics in Central African Kingdoms
Socio-economic and political organization before contact with Europeans, contact with Europeans and its impact, imposition of colonial rule, and African reaction to colonial
HIS344  The Roots of Crisis in Modern Central Africa
Colonial administrations and settler economies, resistance to colonialism, industrial workers, modern forms of nationalism in Zambia and Malawi, armed struggles in Angola and Congo; 'structural adjustment' and multiparty democratisation, SADC. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS401  Mfecane & the Settler Scramble for Southern Africa
Historical debates on coastal frontiers in the 18th century, interior states and Mfecane/ Difaqane wars, settlers and missionaries; diamond and gold mining, migrant labour; African states, Boer republics, British, German and Portuguese colonies. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS412  Twentieth Century South Africa
Contrastings between white Afrikaner nationalism and black African nationalism; racial segregation and apartheid; worker resistance, native reserves and 'Bantustans'; liberation struggles up to 1994 and achievements since then. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS414  Chiefs, Commoners & the Impact of Colonial Rule in Botswana, Lesotho and Swaziland
Forms of 'parallel rule' through paramount chiefs; economic and political relations with the South Africa and Southern Rhodesia; contrasting political development into kingdoms and a republic; post-colonial internal and regional developments. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS416  Land, Labour & Liberation in Mozambique, Namibia & Zimbabwe
Contrasting colonial conquests and heritages within the context of South African regional domination, white settler and company land and labour alienation; armed liberation movements, post-colonial insurgence and land reclamation. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS421  Political Ideas during the Ancient and Medieval Periods
Concepts and definitions, and the development of the philosophy and theory of the State from the Ancient to Medieval periods, to understand the origins and historical background to later political thoughts, cultures and theories. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS422  Political Ideas during the Modern and Contemporary Periods
Further developments in the philosophy and theory of the State and the organisation of societies to those students can understand political theory and ideas and participate effectively in modern societies and the world system. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS431  Natives & Settlers in Early North America
The dispossession of native North Americans by European settlers between the Arctic and the Caribbean; frontier penetration and settlement by free Europeans and slave Africans, native-settler contact, and land alienation through the 19th century. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS432  Industrialisation & Expansion in Modern North America
Themes from the American Revolution to the present day: expansionism/imperialism and isolationism; extensive use of intensive agriculture; rapid development of extractive and manufacturing industries; markets, settlement and urbanisation; origins of the Information Age. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS433  Civilization and Modernization in Chn & Japan
Contrasting two ancient cultures and paths to modernization: Japan's conversion into a world power with consumer-based capitalism, and China's convulsions, socialist experimentation, and subsequent political and economic developments. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS434  Ancient, Colonial & Independent India & South Asia
Ancient civilisations, Islam and early European coastal trade; British colonial rule and transformations during the colonial period; nationalism, independence and partition; different trajectories of India, Pakistan, etc. since independence. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS435  Modern Britain: Nation, Class, Gender, Race, Religion, Culture, Power
Creation of the 'imagined community' of Britain out of disparate cultures and 'nations'; elites and power structures, class conflict, Gender assertion and ideas of 'race'; post-imperial crisis of identity and European Union membership. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS436  The British Empire & Commonwealth in World History
From 16th century rise to 20th century decline of British world power; constitutional development of settler colonies into Dominions, contrasted with non-settler colonies; Commonwealth issues and membership crises since the 1950s. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS437  Civilisations of the Ancient Near East & Mediterranean
Science and technology, ancient slavery, identifying major achievements, of the 'hydraulic societies' of ancient Iraq and Egypt, through the real or supposed 'democracy' of ancient Greece, to the end of the Roman and Byzantine empires. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS441  Slave Trade & Colonial Conquest in East Africa
Environmental, cultural and chronological survey of hunting-gathering and pastoralism on the plains to settled agricultural kingdoms; trading in ivory and slaves by Portuguese, French, and Swahili; British and German intervention and colonial partition. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS442  Ecology & Empire, Conservation & Politics in Eastern Africa
Human settlement in relation to natural environment, and effects of political intervention and land partition—including tsetse-fly and malaria, peasant farmers and white settlers, wildlife conservation and peasant 'betterment' schemes. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS444  French Colonialism & Its Aftermath in North Africa
Ottoman imperial rule but Morocco independent; imposition of French colonial rule, alienation of land, white settlement; rise of nationalism and socialism, anti-colonial insurgence; post-colonial developments and contemporary problems. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS445  Globalisation and Third World Economies in Africa, Latin America and South-East Asia
How Africa found its modern development path compared with Latin America and South-East Asia: 'African capitalism'; agrarian transition, technology and productivity, incorporation into the international economy, and debates in economic history. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS446  Growth, Policy and Poverty in Africa, Latin America, South & South-East Asia
Comparing pre-colonial, colonial and postcolonial world regions: institutional settings, rise of capitalist development, contending rationalities in the agricultural sector, famines, hunger, and starvation; persistence of poverty and social exclusion. 3 lecture hours per week.

HIS447 Research Project: Fieldwork & Preliminary Report
If the HIS 304 proposal has been accepted by the History Department Board, the student is allocated a supervisor and conducts fieldwork during the winter period. The preliminary draft report is presented at a seminar during Semester I. 2 seminar hours (3 credits) per week.

HIS472 Research Project: Intermediate & Final Reports
If the HIS 472 proposal has been judged
satisfactory by the History Department Board, the student presents a preliminary draft report to a seminar and then submits a final report at the end of Semester II. 2 seminar hours (6 credits) per week.

HIS473 Special Seminar I
Special seminars are based on reading and resources recommended by the expert staff member in a chosen topic. Each seminar consists of an essay presentation by one student and a brief critique of by another student, followed by discussion. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS474 Special Seminar II (Description as for HIS 474)

HIS501 History Research Methodology
The nature of History and the techniques utilized for research and writing in the discipline—collection evaluation analysis and interpretation of data, and the presentation of the data in a coherent meaningful account in support of a point of view. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS602 Philosophy of History
The course deals with the theoretical and philosophical aspects of historical studies. It focuses on theory of knowledge or epistemology of history as a discipline, and the reflections of scholars on the course of human history as a whole. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS603 Historiographical Issues in Pre-colonial Southern Africa
The course commences by considering the major "schools" of historical writing about Southern Africa, and then examines debates among historians, mainly in the 19th century, ending with colonization and African responses to it. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS604 Historiographical Issues in Modern Southern Africa Add "Em"
The focus is on continual discourse and debate among historians concerning topics mainly in the 20th century, to give students a good grasp of the main historiographical trends and enable them to be more analytical and critical in their own research. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS611 Introduction to the Economic History of Africa
The course takes a topical approach to economic development in Africa, focusing on the origins of "African capitalism" and industrialization in North and Sub-Saharan Africa, and on controversies and debates in the economic history literature. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS612 Case Studies in the Economic History of Africa
Topics range from the economy of precolonial Africa, through critical examination of contending rationalities in agriculture, institutional rigidities and the political economy of famines, hunger, and starvation, persistence of poverty and economics of social exclusion. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS613 Political and Economic Aspects of Imperialism
European imperialism has had a profound impact on recent world history, and yet it is surprisingly hard to explain satisfactorily. This course reviews the main political and economic explanations for the phenomenon. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS614 Cultural and Environmental Approaches to the History of Imperialism
The course considers scholarly issues and approaches in the relationship between culture and imperialism, including "postcolonial" theory, on the topics of empire, race and gender; the Orientalism debate; and environmental and scientific imperialism. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS615 History of Religion in Africa
An overview of the historical study of religion in Africa, including introduction to the main theoretical issues. Students completing this course should be familiar with and able to discuss the main ideas current in the historical study of African religion. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS616 Religion and Power in Botswana
The course surveys relations between religion and power, including "traditional religion" and chieftainship, impact of missionaries and traders, "church and state", conflicts over medicine, rise of independent churches, and impact of post-colonial secularism. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS627 Archaeology for Teachers
Designed for secondary school teachers to update and expand their knowledge of three archaeological modules: human evolution, the origins of food production, and the origins of civilization, including current theories and case studies. 3 seminar hours per week.

HIS651, HIS 652, HIS 653, & HIS 654 Special Topics I, II, III, & IV
Topics vary from year to year, but are designed to immerse students in recent advanced scholarship in areas of expertise of current staff. The course begins with a historiographical introduction by the staff member, and proceeds as a seminar under his/her guidance. 3 seminar hours per week.

GEC265 Two World Wars on Film
The course introduces students to public discourse on the two World Wars of the 20th century—how Europe, America and Japan, and their colonial empires, underwent war and genocide; the impact of warfare on their economies and societies; and how visual media have reported, represented, interpreted and manipulated events. 2 lecture hours.

GEC362 Africa and its Past on Film
Introducing students to the creation and recreation of the history and imagery of Africa in cinema and television, how the African past has been represented in major television series, and how Southern African people, particularly Zulu and Khoe and San, have been represented in drama and documentary films. 2 lecture hours.

GEC462 Reconstructing African Heritage through Multimedia
The course uses specially designed audiovisual multimedia materials to study the major achievements of African prehistory evidenced by the remains of material cultures, the representation of material heritage by archaeologists, and how African heritage can be maintained and marketed. 2 lecture hours.

(B) BA in History
Level 100
Semester 1
ARC101 Intro. World to Pre-History (core) (2)

Semester 2
HIS101 Intro. to the Study of History (core) (2)

Level 200
Semester 1
HIS201 African Cultures and Civilisations to c. 1500 (core) (3)

Semester 2
HIS202 Africa in the Era of the Atlantic Slav Trade c.1500 –1800 (core) (3)

Level 300
Semester 1
HIS305 Historical Research Methods and Histography of Botswana (core)(3)

Semester 2
HIS 306 Philosophy of History and Research Project Proposal (core) (4)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
HIS401 Mfecane and the Settler Scramble for Southern Africa (3)(core)

Semester 2
Alternate Core Courses
HIS412 Segregation, Apartheid & African Nationalism in South Africa (3)

HIS414 Chiefs, Commoners & the Impact of Colonial Rule in Botswana, Lesotho & Swaziland (3)

HIS416 Land, Labour & Liberation in Mozambique, Namibia & Zimbabwe (3)
### Level 600

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**
- HIS601: History Research Methodology (3)
- HIS603: Historiographical Issues in Precolonial Southern Africa (3)

#### Semester 2

**Core Courses**
- HIS602: Philosophy of History (3)
- HIS604: Historiographical Issues in Modern Southern Africa (3)

### Assessment

Assessment shall be as per Academic Regulations 00.8

### Award of Degree

The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852

### DEPARTMENT OF LIBRARY & INFORMATION STUDIES

**CAR100 Special Regulations for the Certificate in Archives and Records Management**

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

### Entrance Requirements

The normal requirements for entrance to the certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be: Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with at least passes in three subjects including English. Applicants with at least one year work experience in a registry or related institutions will be preferred.

### Programme Structure

The Certificate in Archives and Records Management extends over two semesters for full-time study or four semesters for part-time (distance learning/sandwich) study in the single subject Archives and Records Management. Students can take a minimum of 6 credits of optional courses or elective courses. The Program shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits. All core courses must be passed.

#### Level 100

**Semester 1**

**Core Courses**
- LIS110: Administration and Management of Information Centres (3)
- REC011: Introduction to Records Management (3)
- REC012: Introduction to Archives (3)
- REC015: Introduction to Office Skills (3)
- REC017: Introduction to Information Technology (3)

**General Education Courses**
- GEC111: Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC121: Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

**Semester 2**

**Core Courses**
- REC013: Introduction to Principles of Archival Arrangement (3)
- REC014: Search Room Operations (3)
- REC016: Practicum (3)

**Optional Courses**
- LIS104: Introduction to the Internet and Web Design (3)
- LIS106: Information Resources Management (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester

Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

### Assessment and Examinations

Evaluation of students’ performance in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

**DIS110 Special Regulations for the Diploma in Library and Information Studies**

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

#### Entrance Requirements

The normal requirement for entrance to the Diploma in Library and Information Studies Program shall be a Certificate in Archives and Records Management Program shall be a Certificate in Library and Information Studies Program from this University or its equivalent from any other recognized institution, AND at least one year’s experience in a library or related institution. Candidates with a Certificate in Library and Information Studies from this University shall be admitted directly to Level 2 of the Diploma Program. All candidates for admission must have a minimum of credit in English Language in Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent.

### Programme Structure

The Diploma in Library and Information Studies Programme extends over four semesters for full-time study or six semesters for part-time (distance learning) study in the single subject Library and Information Studies leading to the award of the Diploma in Library and Information Studies.

#### Level 100

**Semester 1**

**Core Courses**
- LIS100: The Information Environment (3)
- LIS101: Introduction to Organising Information (3)
- LIS103: Basic Reference Sources and Services (3)

**General Education Courses**
- GEC111: Communication and Study Skills I (2)
- GEC121: Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

**Semester 2**

**Core Courses**
- BIM101: Introduction to Information Management (3)

**Optional Courses**
- LIS104: Introduction to the Internet and Web Design (3)
- LIS106: Information Resources Management (3)
- LIS112: Introduction to Publishing and the Book Trade (2)

#### Level 200

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**
- LIS202: IT Tools and Applications (3)
- LIS223: Digital Libraries (3)
- LIS206: Introduction to Infopreneurship (2)

**General Education Courses**
- LIS203: Organising Information (3)
- LIS205: Library Practice and Attachment (3)
- LIS227: Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)
- BIM200: Information Management Systems Development (3)

**Semester 4**

**Core Courses**
- LIS211: Information and Society (3)
- BIM202: Introduction to Databases and Information Retrieval (3)

**Optional Courses**
- LIS212: Information Resources in Business (3)
- LIS230: Legal Aspects in Information (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester

Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

### Assessment and Examinations

Evaluation of students’ performance in the Diploma in Library and Information Studies shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each
Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Humanities Regulations, the following Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Library and Information Studies (BLIS) Special Regulations for the Diploma in Archives and Records Management Programme.

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirements for entrance to the Diploma in Archives and Records Management Programme shall be:

a) Certificate in Archives and Records Management from this University or its equivalent from any other recognized institution;
b) Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with a credit in English;
c) Candidates with a credit in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management from this University shall be admitted directly to Year Two of the Diploma Programme. Those with a pass in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management of this University plus two years post qualification experience will be admitted directly to Year Two.

Programme Structure
The Diploma in Archives and Records Management Programme extends over four semesters for full-time study or six semesters for part-time (distance learning/sandwich) study in the single subject Archives and Records Management leading to the award of the Diploma in Archives and Records Management. The Programme shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits per year. All core courses must be passed.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS110 Admin. and Management of Information Centres (3)
REC011 Introduction to Records Management (3)
REC012 Introduction to Archives (3)
REC015 Introduction to Office Skills (3)
REC017 Introduction to Information Technology (3)

General Education Courses
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
REC013 Intro. to Principles of Archival Arrangement (3)
REC014 Search Room Operations (3)
REC016 Practicum (3)

Optional Courses
LIS104 Introduction to the Internet & Web Design (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
REC212 Managing Media Archives (3)
REC213 Introduction to Preservation and Conservation (3)
REC218 Computer Applications in Archives and Records Management (3)
LIS101 Introduction to Organizing Information (3) (pre-requisite for LIS 200)

General Education Courses
LIS200 Organising Information (3) (pre-requisite, LIS101)
REC211 Administrative History (3)
REC215 Microphotography & Reprographics (3)
REC216 Records Centre Management (3)

Optional Courses
BMS207 Public Relations, Writing and Reporting (3)
LIS212 Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS230 Legal Resources in Business (3)
LIS227 Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of students’ performance for the Diploma in Archives and Records Management shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

BIS220 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Library and Information Studies (BLIS) – Single Major Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Qualifications
The normal requirements for entrance to the BLIS single major degree shall be:

a) A pass in the Diploma in Library and Information Studies from this university or its equivalent from any other recognized institution
b) Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent. All candidates for admission must have a minimum of credit in English Language.

b) Candidates with a credit in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management from this University plus two years post qualification experience will be admitted directly to Year Two of the Diploma Programme.

c) Candidates with a pass in the Certificate in Archives and Records Management of this University or its equivalent from any other recognized institution may be admitted directly at Level 2 of the program.

Programme Structure
The BLIS is a full-time Programme extending over eight semesters in the single subject Library and Information Studies leading to the award of the Bachelors Degree in Library and Information Studies.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100 The Information Environment (3)
LIS101 Introduction to Organising Information (3) (pre-requisite for LIS200)
LIS103 Basic Reference Sources and Services (3)
LIS110 Admin. and Management of Information Centres (3)
BIM100 Introduction to Information Management (3)

General Education Courses
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101 Introduction to Information Science (3)
LIS114 Collection Development and Management (3)

Optional Courses
LIS104 Intro. to the Internet and Web Design (3)
LIS106 Information Resources Management (3)
LIS112 Intro. to Publishing and the Book Trade (2)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
LIS202 IT Tools and Applications (3) (pre-requisite for LIS303)
LIS223 Digital Libraries (3)
LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) (pre-requisite for LIS404)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS203 African Information Environment (3)
LIS211 Information and Society (3)
LIS230 Legal Issues of Information (3)
BIM200  Information Management Systems Development (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
LIS200  Organising Information (3)  (pre-requisite LIS101)
LIS208  Principles of Data Communications (3)
BIM202  Introduction to Databases and Information Retrieval (3)
LIS227  Introduction to Knowledge Management (3)  (pre-requisite for LIS403)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS212  Information Resources in Business (3)
LIS230  Legal Issues in Information (3)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
LIS300  Online Information Retrieval (3)
LIS304  Understanding the User (3)
LIS303  Advanced IT Applications (3)  (pre-requisite LIS202)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS309  School Librarianship (3)
LIS310  Health Information Systems (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
LIS305  Advanced Organization of Information (3)  (pre-requisite LIS200)
LIS 306  Professional Attachment (3)

General Education Courses
Should not exceed 6 credits for both semesters.

Optional Courses
LIS311  Business Information Systems (3)
LIS312  Legal Information Systems (3)
LIS313  Gender and Information Management (3)
LIS314  Agricultural Information Systems (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
LIS401  Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402  Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS403  Knowledge Management (3)  (pre-requisite LIS227)
BIM402  Research in Information Management (3)

Optional Courses
CSI461  Computer Communications Network Management (3)
LIS407  Emerging Technologies (3)
LIS412  Information Policies (3)
ENV440  Geographic Information Systems (2)

Semester 8
Core Courses
LIS404  Advanced Infopreneurship (3)  (pre-requisite LIS206)
LIS406  Database Management Systems Design (3)
LIS408  Project Work (3)  (Must have taken BIM402)  General Education Courses (4 credits)

Optional Courses
LIS425  Global Information System (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of students' performance in BLIS shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

Award of the BLIS Single Major Degree
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits including all core courses and optional courses or elective courses, and twenty General Education Courses. In addition, Regulation 00.05 shall apply.

BIS230 Special Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts, Library and Information Studies
(BALIS) Combined Major
Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Humanities Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirements for entrance to the BALIS Combined Major Degree Programme are that applicants shall have the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent, with a credit in English. Those applicants who will major in Social Science or Science Subjects must obtain a minimum of credit in Mathematics or Computer Science.

Programme Structure
The BALIS is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters in the single subject Library and Information Studies and another subject leading to the award of a BALIS Combined Major with another subject. The Programme shall consist of a minimum of 30 credits per year. All core courses must be passed.

Level 100
General Education Courses (4 to 6)
Other Subject Core Courses (12)

Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100  The Information Environment (3)
LIS101  Introduction to Organising Information (3)  (pre-requisite for LIS200)
BIM100  Introduction to Information Management (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101  Introduction to Information Science (3)
LIS114  Collection Development and Management (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
General Education Courses (4 to 6)
Other Subject Core Courses (12)

Core Courses
LIS223  Digital Libraries (3)
LIS202  IT Tools and Applications (3)  (pre-requisite site for LIS303)
LIS211  Information and Society (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
LIS200  Organising Information (3)  (pre-requisite LIS101)
LIS208  Principles of Computer Communication (3)
BIM202  Introduction to Databases and Information Retrieval (3)

Level 300
General Education Courses (4 to 6)
Other Subject Core Courses (12)

Semester 5
Core Courses
LIS300  Online Information Retrieval (3)
LIS303  Advanced IT Applications (3)  (pre-requisite LIS202)
LIS304  Understanding the User (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
LIS305  Advanced Organization of Information (3)  (pre-requisite LIS200)
LIS 306  Professional Attachment (3)

Semester 7
LIS Core Courses
LIS401  Organising Internet Resources (3)
LIS402  Marketing of Information Services (3)
LIS403  Knowledge Management (3)
BIM402  Research in Information Management (3)
LIS Core Courses

Semester 8
LIS425 Global Information Systems (3)
LIS406 Database Management Systems Design (3)
LIS408 Project Work (3)

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.9.

Assessment and Examinations
Evaluation of student performance in BALIS shall be based on continuous assessment and formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 2:3.

Award of BALIS
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits, including all core courses in both subjects. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.

BIS210 Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) (BIS) Degree

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirements for entrance to the Bachelor of Information Systems (Information Management) Degree Programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education or equivalent with a credit in English Language and Mathematics.

Programme Structure
The BIS Degree is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters in the subject of Information Management, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Information Systems Degree.

Level 100 Semester 1
Core Courses
LIS100 The Information Environment (3)
BIM100 Introduction to Information Management (3)
STA101 Maths for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Business Statistics I (4)

General Education Courses
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills I (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)

Semester 2
Core Courses
BIM101 Introduction to Information Science (3)
STA102 Maths for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA114 Statistical Tools for Business (3)

General Education Courses
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
GEC122 Computing and Information Skills

Level 200 Semester 3
Core Courses
BIM200 Information Management Systems Development (3)
CSI241 Structured Programming (4)
CSI292 Information Systems Fundamentals (3)

Optional Courses
BIM201 Web Information Management (3)
LIS206 Introduction to Infopreneurship (2) (pre-requisite for LIS404)

LIS211 Information and Society (3)
GECs and Electives
General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student from any discipline throughout the University.

Semester 4
Core Courses
BIM202 Introduction to Databases and Information Retrieval (3)
CSI272 ComputerCommunication Network Fundamentals (3)
CSI252 Operating System Concepts (3)
BIM204 Designing and Implementing Intranets (3)

Optional Courses
BIM205 Business Process Modelling (3)
LIS227 Introduction to Knowledge Management (3) (pre-requisite for LIS403) GECs and Electives

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student from any discipline throughout the University.

Level 300 Semester 5
Core Courses
BIM300 Distributed Systems (3)
BIM302 Decision Support Systems I (3)
CSI315 Web Technology and Applications (3)
LIS304 Understanding the User (3)

Optional Courses
LIS300 Online Information Retrieval (3)
BIM301 Information Security (3)
BIS308 Marketing Information Systems (3)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Level 400 Semester 6
Core Courses
CSI342 Systems Analysis and Design (3)
BIM303 Industrial Attachment (3)
BIS307 Project Management of Information Systems (3)

Optional Courses
BIS303 Electronic Commerce (3)
CSI314 Decision Support Systems II (3)
CSI392 Ergonomics and Human Computer Interaction (3)
CSI362 Database Concepts (3)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Level 500 Semester 7
Core Courses
BIM400 Individual Project (3)
BIM402 Research in Information Management (3)
CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)
CSI461 ComputerCommunications Networks Management (3)

Optional Courses
LIS403 Knowledge Management (3) (pre-requisite LIS227)
LIS407 Emerging Technologies (3)
LIS412 Information Policies (3)
CSI414 Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)
BIS405 Legal and Ethical Issues of Information Systems (3) (pre-requisite BIS100)

General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Level 600 Semester 8
Core Courses
BIS420 Strategic Information Systems (3)
CSI472 Social Issues of Information Technology (3)

Optional Courses
LIS404 Advanced Infopreneurship (3) (pre-requisite, LIS206)
LIS425 Global Information Systems (3) General Education Courses and electives to be chosen by the student.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from semester to semester shall apply according to Regulation 00.3.

Assessment and Examination
Evaluation of students’ performance shall be based on continuous assessment and a formal examination at the end of each semester. The weighting between continuous assessment and examinations shall be determined in each course.

Award of the Degree
Candidates must obtain a minimum of 120 credits including all core courses and optional or elective courses, and 20 General Education Courses. In addition, Regulation 00.85 shall apply.
Frequently Asked questions

1. What is semesterization?
Semesterization is the process that UB is undertaking through changing its yearlong courses into courses that only run through one semester.

2. What is a semester?
A semester comprises 14 teaching weeks, a week of mid-semester break, and a 1-week period of study/revision time and finally a week for examinations.

3. What is a core course?
This is a course that must be taken in order to meet the requirements of an award, that is, it is mandatory or compulsory.

4. What is an optional course?
This is a course that may be selected from a list of courses within a subject of study and which counts towards the requirements of an award.

5. What is an elective course?
This is a course that may be selected from a list of courses outside a subject of study and which counts towards the requirements of an award.

6. What is a prerequisite course?
This is a course that must be taken in preparation for another course.

7. What is a co-requisite course?
This is a course that must be taken concurrently with other courses to enhance learning in the program.

8. What is an audit course?
This is a course that may be taken by student but for which no credit is awarded. It can only be taken upon received assent from the Director, Academic Services and the relevant Heads of Department(s).

9. What is a General Education course?
This is a course that is taken for the purpose of broadening the knowledge of a student and count towards the overall credit requirement for an award. The courses are placed in 7 large groups as shown in the table below.

Area Course group
1. Communication and Study skills
2. Computer and Information Skills
3. Modes of inquiry and critical thinking
4. Physical education, health and wellness
5. Science and technology
6. World civilization
7. World economy and business skills.

10. How do I know whether I have taken the correct GEC courses for my program?
For all students, the total credits for GECs/ Electives must not exceed a third of the total credits for a programme:

Certificate students may have no more than 10 credits from GEC/Elective courses. This will be one third of the minimum 30 credits required over 2 semesters to earn the award.

Diploma students may have no more than 20 credits GEC/Elective courses. This will be one third of the minimum 60 credits required over levels 1 and 2 to earn the award. Holders of Certificates who are exempted from Diploma level 100 must take up to 6 credits of GEC/ elective courses.

Degree students may have no more than 40 credits GEC/Elective courses. This will be one third of the minimum 120 credits required over levels 1, 2, 3 and 4 to earn the award. Holders of Diplomas who are exempted from Degree levels 1 and 2 must take at least 12 credits of GEC/elective courses including at least credits from Area 3.

Students are required to take GEC/Elective credits as follows:

Certificate and Diploma Students
At least 4 credits in Area 1 (GEC 111 and 112)
At least 4 credits in Area 2 (GEC 121 and 122)
Degree students
At least 4 credits in Area 1 (GEC 111 and 112)
At least 4 credits in Area 2 (GEC 121 and 122)
At least 2 credits in Area 3
At least 10 credits from Areas 4, 5, 6 and 7

11. How many credits could I take in a semester?
A full-time student undertaking a certificate, diploma, degree, post graduate diploma or masters program should carry a workload of 15 credits per semester. Students may also carry up to 18 credits maximum, and beyond that, would have to seek permission from the deputy Dean’s office.

A part-time student undertaking a certificate, diploma, degree, post graduate diploma or masters program should carry a minimum workload of 15 credits per semester. Students may also carry up to 18 credits maximum, and beyond that, would have to seek permission from the deputy Dean’s office.

12. How many credits should I take in order to graduate?
Program Minimum number of credits from core, optional and elective courses for purposes of graduation
Certificate 30 (including 4 credits from General Education courses)
Diploma 60 (including 8-10 credits from General Education courses)
Degree programs 120 (including 20 credits from General Education courses)
Electives 54 (including 24 credits from dissertation and 6 credits from practical attachment)

13. What is the grading system for assignments, term papers and exams?
The overall performance in a subject shall be assessed on a percentage scale divided as follows
A+ 90 – 100% Outstanding
A 85-89.9% Excellent
A− 80-84.9% Excellent
B+ 75-79.9% Very good
B 70-74.9% Good
B− 65-69.9% Good
C+ 60-64.9% Satisfactory
C 55-59.9% Satisfactory
C− 50-54.9% Satisfactory
D+ 45-49.9% Poor-Fail
D 40-44.9% Poor-Fail
D− 35-39.9% Poor-Fail
E 0-34.9% Very Poor-Fail

DEPARTMENT OF MEDIA STUDIES

Professor
D. Kerr, BA (Newcastle-Upon-Tyne), DCC (University of London), PhD (Eötvös Lórent, Budapest)

Senior Lecturer
E. Akpabio, BA (Calabar), MA (Lagos), PhD (Uyo)

Lecturers
K. Romojela, BA (Columbia, Chicago), MA (Emerson)
S. Mosanako, Bachelor Social Work (UB), Masters Journalism (Westminster),
N. Mankhi, Bed (St. Mark & St. John), Dip Ed (UB), MA (Westminster)
W. Lesitaokana BA (Melbourne), Advanced Diploma of Arts (Melbourne) MA (Emerson)
W. Njugu, Dip. Journalism (Kalmar), BA (Mes siah), MA (Daystar), MA (Harvard)
W. Heuva, BA (Rhodes), BA Hons (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Kwazul Natal)
L. Tutwane, BA (UB), Dip Creative Writing (Hawick), MA (Cardiff) (On Study Leave)

Staff Development Fellows
P. Tamambo, BA (Nelson Mandela) (On Study Leave)

Senior Technician
K. Senne, UHD (Kingston, London)
Bachelor of Media Studies-BMS (Revised)

The Bachelor of Media Studies (BMS) that has been taught since 2002 is now being phased out and replaced with a revised BMS, a BA (Media Studies) and a minor programme in Media Studies. By 2012 all students (apart from those taking repeats) will be enrolled in the revised programme. What follows is the revised BMS and BA (Media Studies). For students taking the old BMS, the programme is unchanged from previous years, and such students should consult their old calendars.

1.0 Entrance Requirements
1.0.1 The normal minimum entrance requirement shall be the Botswana BGCSE or the equivalent in English and in three other subjects.
1.0.2 Candidates who fulfill Regulation 1.0.1, have a credit in English and work experience in Media are preferred.
1.0.3 Candidates who do not meet Regulation 1.0.1 but have the BGCSE or equivalent and the CMS from a recognised institution may be admitted directly to Level 100 of the Programme.
1.0.4 Candidates with a Diploma in Media Studies or its equivalent may be admitted directly to Level 300 of the Programme.

1.1 Programme Structure
1.1.1 The Bachelor in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters. The programme should contain a minimum of 76 and a maximum of 88 credits. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters.
1.1.2 In Levels 2 (2nd semester) 3 and 4 of the Degree Programme, five specialised streams will be offered:
   a) Print Media
   b) Radio broadcasting
c) Television broadcasting
d) Public Relations
e) Film and Video

Level 1 Semester 1
BMS110 History of World Media, 3 credits CORE
BMS111 Media in Botswana, 3 credits CORE
ENG 121 Intro to English Language, Description and Usage: 3 credits CORE
ENG 113 Introduction to Literature and Prose: 3 credits CORE
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills (1): 2 credits CORE
GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills (1): 2 credits CORE
16 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 2
BMS112 Introduction to Media Technology, 3 credits CORE
BMS113 Theories of Mass Communication, 3 credits, CORE
ENG 111 Studies in Prose: 3 credits CORE
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature, Drama and Poetry: 3 credits CORE
GEC 112 Communication and Study Skills (2): 2 credits CORE
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (2) 2 credits CORE
16 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 3
BMS220 Introduction to Techniques of Digital Media 3 credits CORE
BMS221 Introduction to Journalism 3 credits CORE
BMS222 Introduction to Broadcasting 3 credits CORE
BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising 3 credits CORE
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video 3 credits CORE
15 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 4
BMS225 Media Attachment 1 credit CORE
BMS226 Ethics for Media Professionals 3 credits CORE
BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS228 Broadcast Interviewing & Presentation 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS229 Basics of Video Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS230 Writing for PR & Copy-writing 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS231 Major Film & Video Genres 3 credits OPTIONAL
2 CORE, 1 OPTIONAL, 7 credits
3 GECs or ELECTIVES 9 Credits 16 CREDITS

Level 3 Semester 5
BMS320 Media & Society 3 credits CORE
BMS321 Media Law 3 credits CORE
BMS322 Audio Technology 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS323 Photojournalism 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS324 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS325 Basics of TV Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS327 History of Film & Video 3 credits OPTIONAL
9 or 12 credits,
1 or 2 GECs or ELECTIVES 3 or 6
15 CREDITS

Level 3 Semester 6
BMS328 Communication Research Methods 3 credits CORE
BMS329 Developmental Communication 3 credits CORE
BMS330 Media attachment 3 credits CORE
BMS331 Print Journalism Editing 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS332 Beat Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS333 Radio Documentary writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS334 TV & Video Documentary Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS335 Motion Graphics 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS337 Cinema Language in World Film 3 credits OPTIONAL 3 CORE,
1 OPTIONAL
12 credits 1 GEC or ELECTIVES 3 credits
15 CREDITS

Level 4 Semester 7
BMS420 Media project or Dossier (1) 2 credits CORE
BMS421 Current Issues in African media 3 credits CORE
BMS422 Broadcast Programming 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS423 Investigative Journalism 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS424 Radio Drama Script-writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS425 TV & Video Drama 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS427 African Cinemas 3 credits OPTIONAL
2 CORE, 1 or 2 OPTIONAL1 OR 2 GECs or ELECTIVES
15 CREDITS

Level 4 Semester 8
BMS428 Media Project or Dossier (2) 4 credits CORE
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship 3 credits CORE
BMS430 On-Line Media Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 434 Public Communication Campaign 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 435 Current Cinema 3 credits OPTIONAL
2 CORE 1 or 2 OPTIONS1 OR 2 GECs or ELECTIVES
15 CREDITS
15 CREDITS

BA (Media Studies)

1.0 Entrance Requirements
As for BMS

1.1 Programme Structure
1.1.1 The B.A. (Media Studies) is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters, as the Major part of a Combined Major/Minor programme. The Media Studies programme should contain a minimum of 54 and a maximum of 56 credits. Part-time study for the Degree is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters.

Level 1 Semester 1
BMS110 History of World Media, 3 CREDITS
BMS111 Media in Botswana, 3 credits CORE
ENG 121 Intro to English Language, 3 credits CORE
ENG 113 Intro to English Language and Prose, 3 credits CORE
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills (Level 1): 2 credits CORE
GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills (Level 1): 2 credits CORE
MINOR PROGRAMME 3 credits 16 CREDITS

Level 1 Semester 2
BMS112 Introduction to Media Technology, 3 credits CORE
BMS113 Theories of Mass Communication, 3 credits CORE
ENG 111 Studies in Prose, 3 credits CORE
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature, Drama and Poetry, 3 credits CORE
GEC 112 Communication and Study Skills (Level 2): 2 credits CORE
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (Level 2): 2 credits CORE
MINOR PROGRAMME 3 credits 16 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 3
ANY TWO OF THE FOLLOWING
BMS222 Introduction to Broadcasting, 3 CREDITS
BMS220 Introduction to Techniques of Digital Media, 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS221 Introduction to Journalism, 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video, 3 credits, OPTIONAL 6 CREDITS (Media)

Level 2 Semester 4
BMS226 Ethics for Media Professionals, 3 credits, CORE AND ONE OF THE FOLLOWING
BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS228 Broadcast Interview & Presentation Techniques, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS229 Basics of Video Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS230 Writing for PR & Copy-writing, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS231 Major Film & Video Genres, 3 credits, OPTIONAL 6 CREDITS (Media)

Level 3 Semester 5
EITHER
BMS320 Media & Society 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 321 Media Law 3 credits OPTIONAL AND 1, 2, OR 3 OUT OF
BMS322 Audio Technology 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS323 Photojournalism 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS324 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS325 Basics of TV Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS327 History of Film & Video documentary 3 credits OPTIONAL 6 OR 9 CREDITS (Media)

Level 3 Semester 6
1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS329 Developmental Communication 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS331 Print Journalism Editing 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS332 Beat Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS333 Radio Documentary Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS334 TV & Video Documentary Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS335 Motion Graphics 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS337 Cinema Language in World Film 3 credits OPTIONAL 6 OR 9 CREDITS (Media)

Level 4 Semester 7
1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS421 Current Issues in African media 3 credits CORE
BMS422 Broadcast Programming 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS423 Investigative Journalism 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS424 Radio Drama Script-writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS425 TV & Video Drama 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS427 African Cinemas 3 credits

Level 4 Semester 8
1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship 3 credits CORE
BMS430 Online Media Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 434 Public Communication Campaign 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 435 Current Cinema 3 credits OPTIONAL 6 OR 9 CREDITS (Media)

Minor Programme in Media Studies

1.0 Entrance Requirements
As for BMS

1.1 Programme Structure
1.1.1 The Minor programme in Media Studies is a full-time programme extending over eight semesters, as the Minor part of a Combined Major/Minor programme. The Media Studies programme should contain a minimum of 30 credits. Part-time study for the Programme is also possible. It is expected that part-time students would finish their coursework in not more than ten semesters. Streams are available in Journalism, Public Relations or Mediated Drama

Level 1 Semester 1
BMS 110 History of World Media, 3 credits OPTIONAL OR
BMS 111 Media in Botswana, 3 credits OPTIONAL

Level 1 Semester 2
BMS 112 Introduction to Media Technology, 3 credits CORE
BMS 113 Theories of Mass Communication, 3 credits CORE
ENG 111 Studies in Prose, 3 credits CORE
ENG 123 Introduction to Literature, Drama and Poetry, 3 credits CORE
GEC 112 Communication and Study Skills (Level 2): 2 credits CORE
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills (Level 2): 2 credits CORE
MINOR PROGRAMME 3 credits 16 CREDITS

Level 2 Semester 3
BMS222 Introduction to Broadcasting, 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS220 Introduction to Digital Media, 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS221 Introduction to Journalism, 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS223 Introduction to PR & Advertising, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS224 Introduction to Film and Video, 3 credits, OPTIONAL 6 CREDITS (Media)

Level 2 Semester 4
ONE OF:
BMS227 Print Journalism Reporting & Writing, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
BMS229 Basics of Video Production, 3 credits, OPTIONAL

Level 2 Semester 5
BMS320 Media & Society 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 321 Media Law 3 credits OPTIONAL AND 1, 2, OR 3 OUT OF
BMS322 Audio Technology 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS323 Photojournalism 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS324 Broadcast News Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS325 Basics of TV Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS327 History of Film & Video documentary 3 credits OPTIONAL 6 OR 9 CREDITS (Media)

Level 3 Semester 6
1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS329 Developmental Communication 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS331 Print Journalism Editing 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS332 Beat Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS333 Radio Documentary Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS334 TV & Video Documentary Writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS335 Motion Graphics 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS337 Cinema Language in World Film 3 credits OPTIONAL 6 OR 9 CREDITS (Media)

Level 4 Semester 7
1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS421 Current Issues in African media 3 credits CORE
BMS422 Broadcast Programming 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS423 Investigative Journalism 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS424 Radio Drama Script-writing & Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS425 TV & Video Drama 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS427 African Cinemas 3 credits

Level 4 Semester 8
1, 2 OR 3 OUT OF:
BMS429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship 3 credits CORE
BMS430 Online Media Production 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS431 Health & Scientific Reporting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS432 Live Radio Broadcasting 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS433 TV Entertainment Shows 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 434 Public Communication Campaign 3 credits OPTIONAL
BMS 435 Current Cinema 3 credits OPTIONAL 6 OR 9 CREDITS (Media)
### COURSE LISTINGS (Department of Media Studies)

**BMS 230 Writing for Public Relations**, 3 credits, OPTIONAL
**BMS 231 Major Cinema Genres**, 3 credits, OPTIONAL, 3 CREDITS

**Level 3 Semester 5**

ONE OF:
- **BMS 321 Media Law**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS 325 Basics of TV Production**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS 320 Media and Society**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS326 Research for PR & Advertising**, 3 credits OPTIONAL, 3 CREDITS

**Level 3 Semester 6**

TWO OF:
- **BMS 329 Development Communication**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS 331 Print Journalism Editing**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS 332 Beat Reporting**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS333 Radio Documentary Writing & production**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS334 TV/Video Documentary Writing & Production**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS336 PR & Advertising Campaigns**, 3 credits, OPTIONAL, 6 CREDITS

**Level 4 Semester 7**

ONE OR TWO OF:
- **BMS423 Investigative Journalism**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS424 Radio Drama Scriptwriting & Production**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS425 TV & Video Drama Script & production**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS426 Economic & Social Issues in PR & Advertising**, 3 credits OPTIONAL, 3 or 6 CREDITS

**Level 4 Semester 8**

ONE OR TWO OF:
- **BMS 429 Media Management & Entrepreneurship**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS431 Health and Scientific Reporting**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS433 TV/Video entertainment Shows**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS435 Current Cinema**, 3 credits OPTIONAL
- **BMS434 Public Communication Campaign**
  - 3 credits OPTIONAL
  - 3 or 6 CREDITS

**Assessment**

Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulation 00.8

**Progression from one Semester to the next**

Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

**Award of Degree**

The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.8

**BMS 110 HISTORY OF WORLD MEDIA**
A brief history of world media from the invention of writing through to the internet and other 21st century developments. The course will also look at some of the major social impacts of media developments through the ages.

**BMS 111 MEDIA IN BOTSWANA**
A brief history of media in Botswana, including indigenous communication techniques, and showing links to media in the region and the wider world. A survey of current media houses, trends and genres in Botswana is included.

**BMS 112 INTRODUCTION TO MEDIA TECHNOLOGY**
An introduction to communication principles followed by a survey and simple explanation of the major technologies used by 20th and 21st century media.

**BMS 113 THEORIES OF MASS COMMUNICATION**
A survey of some major theories of Mass Communication, including their applications in communication practice (both mediated and non-mediated)

**BMS 223 INTRODUCTION TO TECHNIQUES OF DIGITAL MEDIA**
An introduction to principles and practice of design for digital media (desk-top publishing, digital imaging and web design).

**BMS 221 INTRODUCTION TO JOURNALISM**
A survey of print and on-line journalism industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a journalist, including the basic elements of story writing. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

**BMS 222 INTRODUCTION TO BROADCASTING**
A survey of radio and television industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a broadcaster.

**BMS 223 INTRODUCTION TO PR & ADVERTISING**
A survey of the Public Relations and advertising industries, including a description of the whole production process and the main requirements of a worker in the Public Relations and Advertising industries. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

**BMS 224 INTRODUCTION TO FILM & VIDEO**
A survey of the history of world film, from silent movies through to the digital age, including the major production methods.

**BMS 225 MEDIA ATTACHMENT (1)**
A one month internship in a media company during which the student observes and becomes familiar with media organization and participates in work practices

**BMS 226 MEDIA ETHICS (3)**
An analysis of theoretical issues concerning media ethics and their practical application in various case studies of media within Botswana and beyond.

**BMS 227 PRINT JOURNALISM REPORTING AND WRITING (3)**
A practical course in how to report and write stories for print media journalism. The course will be closely linked to UB Horizon, with students expected to write stories for the newspaper, for which they will be assessed.

**BMS 228 BROADCAST INTERVIEWING & PRESENTATION TECHNIQUES (3)**
Techniques of interviewing and presentation for radio and television (course split into radio or television after mid-semester break).

**BMS 229 BASICS OF VIDEO PRODUCTION (3)**
A mainly practical course on the basic requirements of pre-production, production and post-production in the making of video films.

**BMS 230 WRITING FOR PUBLIC RELATIONS & COPY WRITING (3)**
A mainly practical course on the basic requirements of copy-writing for both print and broadcast media in the field of Public Relations and Advertising. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

**BMS 231 MAJOR CINEMA & VIDEO GENRES (3)**
A survey of the major genres, such as comedy, adventures, blockbusters, thrillers, art films, dramas and animated films.

**BMS 320 MEDIA & SOCIETY (3)**
A theoretical course analyzing the way media represent various social groups and the way the media impact upon society.

**BMS 321 MEDIA LAW (3)**
A survey of laws relevant to journalism, broadcasting and telecommunications, with case studies to illustrate their application.

**BMS 322 AUDIO TECHNOLOGY (3)**
A mostly technical course training students in the correct use of various types of microphones, mixers and other examples of audio technology.

**BMS 323 PHOTOJOURNALISM (3)**
The fundamentals of taking and editing both digital and non-digital photographs for print, television and on-line journalism. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.
BMS 324 BROADCAST NEWS WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Electronic news gathering, news writing and production for both radio and television.

BMS 325 BASICS OF TV PRODUCTION (3)
The techniques of planning, writing and production of television programmes both in the studio and outside.

BMS 326 RESEARCH FOR PUBLIC RELATIONS & ADVERTISING (3)
Market and product research in order to motivate campaigns in the fields of Public Relations and Advertising.

BMS 327 HISTORY OF FILM & VIDEO DOCUMENTARY (3)
The history and genres of Film and Video documentary, linked to practical work in documentary and feature script-writing.

BMS 328 COMMUNICATION RESEARCH METHODS (3)
An intensive course explaining the principles of research and useful quantitative and qualitative media research methodologies.

BMS 329 DEVELOPMENT COMMUNICATION (3)
A survey of major development communication theories and their application in different media projects as part of total communications strategies.

BMS 330 MEDIA ATTACHMENT II (3)
A three month internship in a media company during which the student observes and participates in work practices.

BMS 331 PRINT JOURNALISM EDITING (3)
A course that grounds students in the principles and practices of editing for print journalists and editors. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 332 BEAT REPORTING (3)
A course that prepares students for reporting in specialized fields such as crime, sport, environment, health and entertainment.

BMS 333 RADIO DOCUMENTARY WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Skills for script-writing (and other pre-production work), production and post-production for radio documentaries and features.

BMS 334 TV AND VIDEO DOCUMENTARY WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Skills for pre-production work, production and post-production for TV/Video documentaries and features.

BMS 335 MOTION GRAPHICS (3)
A mainly practical course in special visual effects and animation for television and video.

BMS 336 PR & ADVERTISING CAMPAIGNS (3)
Skills for planning, designing, writing and implementing total campaigns for Public Relations and Advertising. Course and assessment linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 337 CINEMA LANGUAGE IN WORLD FILM (3)
A survey of important cinematography and editing styles (such as montage, neo-realism, cinema noire and magic realism), along with mini video projects to apply the theories in practice.

BMS 420 MEDIA PROJECT & DOSSIER I (2)
The course will allocate students to individual tutors who will take students through the research process up to the completion of the project proposal for their chosen topics.

BMS 421 CURRENT ISSUES IN AFRICAN MEDIA (3)
The course will provide an overview of current issues affecting African media including the press or broadcast organizations that influence the media.

BMS 422 BROADCAST PROGRAMMING (3)
How to design short and long term programme schedules for radio and television broadcasting. The 2nd half of the semester may be split into radio & television.

BMS 423 INVESTIGATIVE JOURNALISM (3)
In depth, carefully researched, critical journalism for print or broadcast media. For students taking the print pathway; the course and assessment are linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 424 RADIO DRAMA SCRIPT-WRITING & PRODUCTION (3)
Writing drama scripts and producing them for radio broadcasts, including casting, rehearsing, recording and post-production editing.

BMS 425 TV & VIDEO DRAMA (3)
Writing drama scripts and producing them for TV and Video drama, including casting, rehearsing, recording and post-production editing.

BMS 426 ECONOMIC & SOCIAL ISSUES IN PR & ADVERTISING (3)
The impact of economic and social issues on Public Relations and Advertising campaigns including issues of ethics and corporate responsibility.

BMS 427 AFRICAN CINEMAS (3)
The course will include skills in film reviewing.

BMS 428 MEDIA PROJECT & DOSSIER II (3)
A research project involving any one or any combination of media to show the student has acquired the skills of using media techniques for communication.

BMS 429 MEDIA MANAGEMENT & ENTREPRENEURSHIP (3)
A practical and theoretical course on how to set up and grow a small media company, and how management/organizational issues relate to the wider economic landscape.

BMS 430 ON-LINE MEDIA PRODUCTION (3)
Preparation of material for online publishing; this includes streaming of video and audio content, formatting images and text, and web-programming. Course and assessment linked to Media Studies and UB Horizon web-sites.

BMS 431 HEALTH & SCIENTIFIC REPORTING (3)
A journalism course on the special skills needed for researching and writing stories on issues of Health and Science. The course and assessment are linked to UB Horizon.

BMS 432 LIVE RADIO BROADCASTING (3)
Techniques of radio for Studio and Outside live Broadcast shows in News, Educational and Entertainment fields.

BMS 433 TV/VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SHOWS (3)
Production of entertainment programmes such as game shows, talk shows, and music shows for television or video.

BMS 434 PUBLIC COMMUNICATION CAMPAIGNS (3)
Planning, designing and implementation of public media communication campaigns for government or NGO social change agencies.

BMS 435 CURRENT CINEMA (3)
Current issues in film and video production, distribution, exhibition, reception and aesthetics.

DEPARTMENT OF THEOLOGY AND RELIGIOUS STUDIES

Bachelor of Arts in Humanities and Degree Programme

1. Theology and Religious Studies is offered as a Single Major Subject, a Major Subject in a Combined Major programme, a Major and Minor Subject and as a multidisciplinary degree as stipulated in General Regulations 22.37 and 00.2114 and departmental regulations. A multidisciplinary degree including Theology and Religious Studies may, in accordance with General Regulation 00.2114 be approved in special cases, but only at the discretion of the TRS Department.

2. All courses offered in the TRS Department will be semester long. However, students taking TRS 326 Directed Research I will also be required to take TRS 420 Directed Research II.

3. All courses listed may be offered in any special cases, but only at the discretion of the TRS Department.

5. Not all courses listed may be offered in any
one semester.
6. Students pursuing a Single Major in TRS are required to take a total of 96 credits in TRS consisting of 48 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
7. Students pursuing a Major in TRS as part of a combined Major/Minor are required to take a total of 84 credits in TRS consisting of 48 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
8. Students pursuing a Major in TRS as part of a combined Major/Minor are required to take a total of 60 credits in TRS consisting of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
9. Students pursuing a Minor in TRS as part of a combined Minor/Major are required to take a total of 36 credits in TRS consisting of 24 credits from the core courses and additional credits from optional and other courses.
10. Unless otherwise specified in the published course description or in a written syllabus distributed by the instructor to the students during the first week of class lectures, course assessment will be by a standard (750-1,000 word) written assignment, a mid-term test, and a final examination, weighted 1: 1: 2 respectively.
11. Students from other departments and other faculties, who wish to take TRS courses as electives, may take any course for which they have the pre-requisites.
12. Students pursuing a Single Major with concentration in Biblical studies are recommended to include Biblical languages either Hebrew (for Old Testament) or Greek (for New Testament).

Programme Structure

Single Major Programme
In a Single Major Degree, a student shall take the following:

Level: 100
Semester 1: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 2: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 200
Semester 3: 1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 4: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 300
Semester 5: Three core courses and any three optional courses.
Semester 6: Three core courses and any three optional courses.

 Semester 7
Three core courses and any three optional courses.

 Semester 8
Three core courses and any three optional courses.

MAJOR (TRS)/ MINOR
In a Major/Minor Degree a student shall take the following courses:

Level: 100
Semester 1
1 core course, any one optional course.

Semester 2
1 core course, any one optional course.
Level: 200
Semester 3
1 core course, any one optional course.
Semester 4: 1 core course, any one optional course.

Level: 300
Semester 5
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 301 for Theology, TRS 302 for Religious Studies, TRS 303 for Biblical Studies and TRS 304 for Philosophy), and any two optional courses.

Semester 6:
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 314 for Theology, TRS 315 for Religious Studies, TRS 316 for Biblical Studies and TRS 317 for Philosophy) and any two optional courses.

Level: 400
Semester 7:
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 401 for Theology, TRS 402 for Religious Studies, TRS 403 for Biblical Studies and TRS 404 for Philosophy) and any two optional courses.

Semester 8:
1 core course in the area of specialisation (TRS 415 for Theology, TRS 416 for Religious Studies, TRS 417 for Biblical Studies and TRS 418 for Philosophy) any two optional courses.

Minor (TRS) /Minor
In a Minor/ Major Degree the student shall take the following courses:

Level: 100
Semester 1: 1 core course.
Semester 2: 1 core course.

Level: 200
Semester 3: 1 core course.
Semester 4: 1 core course.

Level: 300
Semester 5: 1 core course from the area of specialisation (TRS 415 for Theology, TRS 416 for Religious Studies, TRS 417 for Biblical Studies and TRS 418 for Philosophy), and any two optional courses.

Major (TRS)/ Major
In a Major/Major Degree a student shall take the following courses:

Level: 100
Semester 1
1 core course and any one optional course.
Semester 2: 1 core course and any one optional course.

Level: 200
Semester 3
1 core course and any one optional course.
Semester 4: 1 core course and any one optional course.

Level: 300

Entry Requirements
The normal entry requirements shall be as stipulated in General 20.2 and Departmental Regulations.

### Level 100

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**
- TRS101 Introduction to Biblical Studies (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS102 Religion and Science (3)
- TRS103 Religions of Botswana (3)
- TRS104 Christianity and the rise of New Religions Movements in Botswana (3)
- TRS105 Asian Religions: A Survey (3)
- TRS106 Ethics: Classical Theories (3)

#### Semester 2

**Core Courses**
- TRS107 African Traditional Religions (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS108 History of Philosophy I: Classical Greek Philosophy (3)
- TRS109 Biblical Interpretation (3)
- TRS110 God in the Hebrew Bible (3)
- TRS111 Epistemology I: Theory of Knowledge (3)
- TRS112 Bible and Gender (3)

### Level 200

#### Semester 3

**Core Courses**
- TRS201 Logic I: Introduction to Logic (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS202 Hebrew Bible Narratives (3)
- TRS203 African Traditional Religions in Botswana (3)
- TRS204 Theologies of Gender (3)
- TRS205 History of Philosophy II: Post-Aristotle to Medieval (3)
- TRS206 Beginning Biblical Greek I: New Testament Greek (3)
- TRS207 Introduction to Christian Theology (3)
- TRS208 The Hebrew Bible as History & Story (3)

#### Semester 4

**Core Courses**
- TRS209 History of Christian Thought (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS210 Gospel Narratives (3)
- TRS211 Ecclesiology (3)
- TRS212 Beginning Biblical Greek II: New Testament Greek (3)
- TRS213 Johannine corpus (3)
- TRS214 Beginning Arabic I: Intro. to the Basic Arabic (3)
- TRS215 Metaphysics I: Appearance and Reality (3)
- TRS216 History of Philosophy III: Post-Medieval to 19th Century (3)
- TRS220 Critical Thinking (3)
- TRS221 Politics of Gender (3)
- TRS222 Religion and development (3)

### Level 300

#### Semester 5

**Core Courses**
- TRS301 Christology (3)
- TRS302 Missionaries in 19th Century South Africa (3)
- TRS303 Creation and the Bible (3)
- TRS304 African Philosophy and Culture (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS305 Judaism (3)
- TRS306 Intermediate Greek I: Exam. of selected texts (3)
- TRS307 Beginning Arabic II: Arabic construction (3)
- TRS308 Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Script (3)
- TRS309 Psychology of Religion (3)
- TRS310 Professional Ethics (3)
- TRS311 Metaphysics II: Idealism (3)
- TRS312 Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (3)
- TRS313 History of Christianity: Medieval to the Reformation (3)

#### Semester 6

**Core Courses**
- TRS314 Christian Moral Theology (3)
- TRS315 Sociology of Religion (3)
- TRS316 History and Mythology of Jesus (3)
- TRS317 Theodicy: The Co-existence of God and Evil (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS318 Beginning Biblical Hebrew II: Translation of Hebrew Texts (3)
- TRS319 Philosophy of Religion (3)
- TRS320 Epistemology II: Theories of Truth (3)
- TRS321 Metaphysics III: Body/mind Problem (3)
- TRS322 History of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)
- TRS323 Intermediate Greek II: Translation of selected texts (3)
- TRS324 Intermediate Arabic I: Arabic grammar (3)
- TRS325 Foundational Structures of Islam (3)
- TRS326 Directed Research I: Research Methods (3)

#### Semester 7

**Core Courses**
- TRS401 New Religious Movements (3)
- TRS402 Religion and Politics (3)
- TRS403 The Doctrine of Sin in the Bible (3)
- TRS404 Metaphysics IV: Personal Identity (3)

**Optional Courses**
- TRS405 Intermediate Hebrew I: Examination of selected Hebrew texts (3)
- TRS406 Intermediate Arabic II: Translation of Arabic texts (3)
- TRS407 Islam's socio-cultural, legal and political structures (3)
- TRS408 Directed Research I: Research Methods (3)
- TRS409 African Christian Theologies (3)

**Theology and Religious Studies Course Descriptions**

**TRS101 Introduction to Biblical Studies (3)**
- This course will present a general overview of the contexts in which the Old Testament and the New Testament came into being and a survey of the contents of both testaments. It will consider various ways in which the Bible is used in Judaism and Christianity.

**TRS102 Religion and Science (3)**
- This course will study the assumptions, practices, and methodologies of what is commonly called "religion" and what is commonly called "Science". It will ascertain the similarities and differences, continuities and discontinuities between the two domains.

**TRS103 Religions of Botswana (3)**
- This course will study the different religious traditions that exist in Botswana with the view towards a better understanding of their beliefs, rituals and practices. It will survey ATR, Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, Bahá’í, Sikhism and Buddhism as they have developed and are currently practiced in Botswana.

**TRS104 Christianity and the Rise of New Religions Movements in Botswana (3)**
- This course will study changes that have taken place in the Christian churches of Botswana since independence. It will examine the rise of...

**TRS105  Asian Religions A Survey (3)**
This course will present a comprehensive survey of Asian religions, namely Jainism, Sikhism, Zoroastrianism, Confucianism, Bahá’í, Shinto and Taoism.

**TRS106  Ethics: Classical Theories (3)**
This course will offer an introduction to moral philosophy particularity by exploring the origins of ethical reflection among the classical Greek philosophers, including the Sophists, Socrates, Plato and Aristotle.

**TRS107  African Traditional Religions (3)**
This course will study the beliefs and practices of African traditional religions from a phenomenological point of view. It will focus in particular on the traditional religions of Southern Africa.

**TRS108  History of Philosophy I: Classical Greek Philosophy (3)**
This course will study the thought of major Greek Philosophers of the classical period, including the pre-Socratics (e.g Parmenides, Heraclitus, Pythagoras and Pragoras), Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle, and the post-Aristotle schools of Stoicism, Epicureanism and Skepticism.

**TRS109  Biblical Interpretation (3)**
This course will study different methods, both modern and contemporary, of reading the Bible. It will explore modern historical critical methods like textual, form, compositional and redactional criticisms.

**TRS110  God in the Hebrew Bible (3)**
This course will study the diverse depictions of God in the Hebrew Bible, including the identities of the surrounding cultures. In particular, it will explore such themes as anthropomorphism, creation, monotheism and mythology, the justice of God, the figure of Wisdom, female imagery and God.

**TRS111  Epistemology I: Theory of Knowledge (3)**
This course will introduce students to the theory of knowledge. Students will explore how Plato, René Descartes, Baruch de Spinoza and Gottfried von Leibniz approached the theory of knowledge from a rationalist point of view.

**TRS112  Bible and Gender (3)**
This course will explore the construction of gender and identity in the Hebrew and Christian Testaments. It will examine how different types of biblical literature constructed gender over various times and circumstances.

**TRS201  Logic I: Introduction to Logic (3)**
This course will define “Philosophy” and “Logic”, and examine in detail informal fallacies and deductive methods of reasoning. It will explore the nature of definitions, decisions, and classifications.

**TRS202  Hebrew Bible Narratives (3)**
This course will study several short narratives from the Hebrew Bible selected from different books. Focus will be on the literary dimension of the story, narrative technique, effect on a reader, ideology and social location implied in the narrative.

**TRS203  African Traditional Religions in Botswana (3)**
This course will study the beliefs and practices of traditional religions in Botswana. It will survey a large number of the ethnic groups in the country, with emphasis on continuity and change in their mutual relationships and in their development.

**TRS204  Theologies of Gender (3)**
This course will explore theological questions surrounding the issues of gender and gender identity. It will examine traditional theological positions as well as those of feminist/womanist theologians.

**TRS205  History of Philosophy II: Postaristotle to Medieval (3)**
This course will study the development of philosophy from the time following the classical Greek Philosophers until the Middle Ages. In particular it will examine the interaction of philosophy and religious thought, both Christians and Islamic.

**TRS206  Beginning Greek I: New Testament Greek (3)**
This course will introduce students to the basic elements of New Testament Greek (Koine) and teach them how to write it. It will focus on basic Koine grammar and how to read some prescribed texts.

**TRS207  Introduction to Christian Theology (3)**
This course will study the nature of theology, its different branches and its relevance to society. It will focus on the different methods used in doing theology, its sources, its relationships with other sciences and its application.

**TRS208  The Hebrew Bible as History and Story (3)**
This course will study both the historical texts in the Hebrew Bible and the eternal historical factors that have shaped the formation of the Hebrew Bible. It will examine in detail the theological focus and agenda of Hebrew Bible historical texts.

**TRS209  History of Christian Thought (3)**
This course will study the development of Christianity and Christian thought from the New Testament period to its establishment as the state religion of the Roman Empire under Constantine. It will emphasize relations between the Church and the state and how these affected the life of the Church and of Christian believers.

**TRS210  Gospel Narratives (3)**
This course will study gospels of the New Testament, Mark, Matthew, Luke and John. Students will study the gospels through employing different perspectives such as historical, literacy, sociological and liberation methods.

**TRS211  Ecclesiology (3)**
This course will study the doctrine of the Christian Church, its nature and functions in relation to other doctrines, such as the doctrine of God, Christology, and sacraments. It will examine the scriptural, historical and systematic dimensions of the doctrine of the Church from its origin in New Testament times through the patristic period, the Reformation, and the post-Reformation period.

**TRS212  Beginning Arabic I: Introduction to Basic Arabic (3)**
This course will introduce students to the Arabic script and teach them how to write it. It will study basic Arabic grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

**TRS213  Johannine Corpus (3)**
This course will study the Johannine Corpus both the Gospel of John and the Epistles of John. It will examine the historical, philosophical and political factors that shaped its theology in the apostolic period.

**TRS214  Beginning Arabic II: Introduction to Advanced Arabic (3)**
This course will introduce students to Arabic script and teach them how to write it. It will study basic Arabic grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

**TRS215  Metaphysics I: Appearance and Reality (3)**
This course will introduce students to the basic and fundamental concepts of metaphysics. Students will examine why the Platonic theory assigns reality to the “forms” and appearance to the sensible objects.

**TRS216  History of Philosophy III: Post-Medieval of 19th Century (3)**
This course will survey the main strands of philosophy from the Renaissance to modern times. It will consider Renaissance philosophy, the critical examination of reason and pragmatism.

**TRS 220  Critical Thinking (Optional 3 Credits)**
This course will train students not to take anything they hear, read, write and do for granted without first critically assessing and analyzing them. In order to do these students will examine key logical concepts and principles such as laws of identity, non contradiction and exclude middle. Some logical formal and informal will also be dealt with.

**TRS 221  The Politics of Gender (Optional 3 Credits)**

**TRS 222  Religion and Development (Optional 3 Credits)**
This course undertakes a study of religion amidst social transformation in different countries with special reference to sub-Saharan Africa. In the process of assessing the role of religion, taking into account the theories of development, secularization and modernization, it also looks at the paradigms in conflict in the socio-political and economic spheres.

**TRS301 Christology (3)**

This course will study the meaning and significance of the person of Jesus Christ. It will examine critically the life of Jesus from the time of his conception to his resurrection and the developing understanding of Christology through the first five years of Christian thought.

**TRS302 Missionaries in Nineteenth Century Southern Africa, (3)**

This course will investigate early missionaries’ attitudes toward African culture, beliefs and practices. It will draw much of its information from primary sources.

**TRS303 Creation and the Bible (3)**

This course will focus on the creation texts of the Hebrew Bible. They will be compared and contrasted with other ancient Near Eastern creation accounts. This will also examine creation in the New Testament.

**TRS304 African Philosophy and Culture (3)**

This course will examine how philosophy and culture have interacted in an African context. It will investigate the thought of several African thinkers.

**TRS305 Judaism (3)**

This course will present an introduction to the main beliefs and practices of the several forms of post-biblical Judaism. The course will cover some of the milestones of the history of the Jewish people.

**TRS306 Intermediate Greek I: Examination of Selected Texts (3)**

This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II.

**TRS307 Beginning Arabic II: Arabic Construction (3)**

This course is a continuation of Beginning Arabic I.

**TRS308 Beginning Biblical Hebrew I: Introduction to Hebrew Script (3)**

This course will introduce the student to the Hebrew script and teach them how to write it. It studies basic Hebrew grammar and how to read basic prescribed texts.

**TRS309 Psychology of Religion (3)**

This course will critically discuss the relationship between religion and psychology. It will study and examine the various theories, principles, and methods pursued by the psychologists of religion.

**TRS310 Professional Ethics (3)**

This course will examine the question of whether professional morality is independent of and separate from ordinary morality. It will look at business, medicine, law and political ethics.

**TRS311 Metaphysics II: Idealism (3)**

This course will study issues of particular importance in the philosophy of the metaphysical idealists George Berkeley, Immanuel Kant, George W. F. Hegel and others. Concepts such as existence, being causality, change, time and other shall be examined.

**TRS312 Logic II: Logic and the Sciences (3)**

This course will examine the place of logic in philosophy, the sciences, and other human activities and relations. It will study the concepts (in) validity and soundness of arguments, and the different patterns that arguments can follow. It will consider the benefits of symbols and will introduce students to the use of elementary symbolic language.

**TRS313 History of Christianity: Medieval To Reformation (3)**

This course will study the development of the church from the Middle Ages to the Reformation. It will examine the separation between Eastern and Western Christianity, scholasticism, sacramentalism and opposition to monarchical papacy.

**TRS314 Christian Moral Theology (3)**

This course will examine the moral implications of being a Christian in a secular society in the context of the teachings of the Christian church. It will focus on issues related to Christian behaviour in regard to marriage and other ethical issues.

**TRS315 Sociology of Religion (3)**

This course will study the influence of religion in society. It will examine sociological theories of religion and the concrete interaction of religion and particular societies.

**TRS316 History of Mythology (3)**

This course will study the presentation of Jesus in the four gospels. It will investigate how each gospel characterizes Jesus and the significance of such characterization, as well as the character of Jesus that emerges in Paul’s writings.

**TRS317 Theology: The Co-existence of God and Evil (3)**

This course will examine various philosophical arguments for the existence of God. It will discuss the various proofs that have been proposed concerning the existence of God and will examine the problem of evil and the difficulties it poses for arguments for the existence of God.

**TRS318 Beginning Biblical Hebrew II:**

**Translation of Biblical Texts (3)**

This course is a continuation of Beginning Biblical Hebrew I.

**TRS319 Philosophy of Religion (3)**

This course will study some fundamental issues connected with the human activity called “religion”. It will use rational, critical analysis to investigate the nature of belief, worship, and sacrifice, the question of the existence of a supernatural being, and the roles that religion plays in the lives of human beings.

**TRS320 Epistemology II: Theories of Truth (3)**

This course will examine the concepts of knowledge and belief and relate them to theories of truth. It will discuss theories such as the “correspondence theory”, the “coherence theory”, and the “pragmatist theory”.

**TRS321 Metaphysics III: Body/mind Problem (3)**

This course looks at the mind and body problem. It will examine different theories that arose as an attempt to answer the questions concerning dualism, behaviourism, functionalism, epiphenomenalism and others.

**TRS322 History Of Christianity in Southern Africa (3)**

This course will study the origin and development of the Christian Church in Southern Africa from its inception to the present. It will examine the cultural context in which the Church was introduced and the role of foreign missionary societies in that process.

**TRS323 Intermediate Greek II: Translation of Selected Texts (3)**

This course will build on the knowledge of New Testament vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Koine Greek I and II and intermediate Koine Greek I. Students will translate and study closely selected passages from one book of the New Testament.

**TRS324 Intermediaries Arabic I: Arabic Grammar (3)**

This course will study intermediate Arabic grammar and examine classical and contemporary Arabic texts. It will also expose the student to standard Arabic oral drills.

**TRS325 Foundation Structures of Islam (3)**

This course will study the basic doctrines and practices of Islam. It will introduce the primary sources of Islam and survey the social history of the Muslim community from its emergence through its early years.

**TRS326 Directed Readings: Research Methods (3)**

In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising
and instructing the student in matters of research method as well as content.

**TRS401 New Religious Movements (3)**
This course will examine new Christian theologies from new Christian movements emerging today in various regional, social and intellectual settings across the world. It will pay special attention to theological and social developments in Africa.

**TRS402 Religion And Politics (3)**
This course will foster a rethinking of the relationship between religion and politics and analyze the changing dimensions of society, religion, and the state.

**TRS403 The Doctrine of Sin In The Bible (3)**
This course examines the concepts of "Sin" and 'evil" in the Hebrew Bible and the Christian New Testament. It will investigate related concepts such as law and commandment, purity/imimpurity, judgement, punishment, and forgiveness.

**TRS404 Metaphysics IV: Personal Identity (3)**
This course will examine the question of personhood. The course will look at different criteria of personal identity. It will also look at divided minds and consciousness.

**TRS405 Intermediate Hebrew: Examination of Selected Texts (3)**
This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. The student will study closely set texts from all three main divisions of the Hebrew Bible.

**TRS406 Intermediate Arabic II: Translation of Arabic Texts (3)**
This course is continuation of Intermediate Arabic I yet students who have not successfully completed that course may take TRS 406.

**TRS407 Socio-Cultural, Legal and Political Structures of Islam (3)**
This course will study the growth of the early Muslim community. It will trace and reflect critically upon the development and evolution of the theological, jurisprudential and mystical schools. It will explore the thoughts and practices of individual representatives of these schools.

**TRS409 African Christianity Theologies (3)**
This course will comprise readings from African theologians that focus on important theological issues facing the African Church today. It will examine the question of the enculturation of the Church in Africa, taking into account the cultural, social, economic and political factors in both colonial and postcolonial Africa.

**TRS410 Theories of Government (3)**
This course will discuss the theory of the state, such thinkers as Plato, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke, Jean-Jacques Rousseau and Karl Marx have presented it.

**TRS411 Politics and the Development of Biblical Thought (3)**
This course will foreground the idea that the texts of the Bible were written, collected, edited and read in political environments. Political agendas, in turn, have left discernible traces in biblical literature.

**TRS412 Ecumenical Theology (3)**
This course will study the theological foundations of the ecumenical movement, whose aim is to achieve organic church unity. It will investigate the New Testament, especially the Johannine and Pauline writings, to discern the scriptural basis for ecumenical theory and practice.

**TRS413 Hinduism (3)**
This course will study Hinduism from the Harrapan culture to contemporary period. The approach will be thematic including themes such as creation, sacrifice, polytheism and others.

**TRS414 Metaphysics V: Materialism (3)**
This course will examine the main tenets of materialism: the uniformity of law, the denial of teleology, the denial of any form of existence beyond that envisaged by the natural sciences. Particularly attention will be given to the thought of Karl Marx, William James and John Dewey.

**TRS415 Twentieth Century Theologians (3)**
This course will study several major theologians, Protestant and Roman Catholic, of the twentieth century, and the contributions their thought has made to the development of contemporary systematic theology.

**TRS416 Religion and Modernity (3)**
This course will study the relationship and interaction between religion and popular culture. It will explore the significance and importance of religious expressions contained in various media such as films, theatre, music and others.

**TRS417 Paul's Epistle (3)**
This course will cover the Pauline and Deutero-Pauline letters of the New Testament. It will use different methods to analyze the socio historical context that gave rise to Pauline letters.

**TRS418 Contemporary African Philosophy (3)**
This course will study some of the major issues that have shaped, and continue to shape, African's social, economic and political landscape. It will examine the development and application of such theories as humanism, African socialism and others.

**TRS419 Intermediate Hebrew II: Hebrew Texts and Dead Sea Scrolls (3)**
This course will build on the knowledge of Biblical Hebrew vocabulary, grammar and syntax acquired in Beginning Biblical Hebrew I and II. Set texts from the Hebrew Bible and the Dead Sea Scrolls will be studied closely.

**TRS420 Directed Research (3)**
In this course the student will undertake independent study under the guidance of a supervisor who will be responsible for advising and instructing the student in matters of research method as well as content.

**TRS421 History of Christianity: Modern and Contemporary (3)**
This course will study the expansion of the church from Europe and America to other parts of the world during the missionary era of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. It will discuss issues such as colonialism and missiology.

**TRS422 Epistemology: Rationalism and Empiricism (3)**
The student will study the philosophy position that knowledge is only attained through the senses, and that truth must conform to the rules of logic and of material science.

**TRS423 History of Contemporary Philosophy (3)**
This course will study the basic tenets of logical positivism and ordinary language philosophy. It will also explore philosophical questions that arise from contemporary concerns such as war and peace and others.

**TRS424 Buddhism (3)**
This course will study the origin, development and basic concepts of Buddhism. It will trace ways in which different "Buddhisms" developed.

**TRS425 The Theology of the Reformation (3)**
This course will study the religious, social economic and political factors that led to the Reformation and counter –Reformation in the sixteenth century Europe. It will consider some of the important theological themes that dominated the thinking of the Reformers.

**TRS426 Religious Rituals and Sacred Places (3)**
This course will study the role of sacred sites, shrines, rivers, mountains, worship centers and other sacred places in several religious traditions.

**TRS427 Applied Ethics (3)**
This course will study the concept of human rights, the nature and origin of human rights, and some specific contemporary ethical issues that arise from the question of human rights, such as abortion, infanticide and others.

**TRS428 Religion and Pluralism (3)**
This course will discuss the relationship between religion and religious pluralism. It will
explore the theories pertaining to religious pluralism, and probe the related notions of religious language, religious dialogue and inter-religious cooperation.

**DEPARTMENT OF VISUAL AND PERFORMING ARTS**

**Bachelor of Fine Arts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COURSES</th>
<th>Level 100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFA100</td>
<td>Introduction to the Theatre 100 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 102</td>
<td>Theatre in Botswana 100 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 101</td>
<td>Workshop Theatre<strong>100</strong> Core 28 weeks 6 Practical</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COURSES</th>
<th>Level 200</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFA 200</td>
<td>Theatre History<strong>1</strong>200 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 201</td>
<td>Production Workshop I 200 Core 28 weeks 6 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 202</td>
<td>Theatre in Botswana [Popular Theatre] 200 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 203</td>
<td>Acting, Movement &amp; Mime I 200 Core 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 204</td>
<td><strong>Playwriting</strong>300 Core 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 205</td>
<td>Design &amp; Technical Theatre I 200 Core 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 206</td>
<td>Theatre in Africa II 200 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COURSES</th>
<th>Level 300</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFA 309</td>
<td>Directing I 300 Core 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 310</td>
<td>Dramatic Literature I [Africa] 300 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 312</td>
<td>Stage Management 300 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory/Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 313</td>
<td>Theatre Ethics 300 Core 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 302</td>
<td>Theatre in Botswana [Theatre &amp; Mass Media] 300 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 303</td>
<td>Acting, Movement &amp; Mime II 300 Optional 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 304</td>
<td>Playwriting II 300 Optional 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 305</td>
<td>Design &amp; Technical Theatre II 300 Optional 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 306</td>
<td>Theatre in Africa II<strong>300</strong> Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 308</td>
<td>American Theatre 300 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 311</td>
<td>Playback Theatre 300 Optional 6 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 314</td>
<td>Theatre History [Europe]<strong>300</strong> Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 318</td>
<td>Theatre Attachment 300 Core: 4 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COURSES</th>
<th>Level 400</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFA 400</td>
<td>Theatre History: Asia<strong>400</strong> Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 403</td>
<td>Acting, Movement &amp; Mime III 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 404</td>
<td>Playwriting III<strong>400</strong> Optional 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 405</td>
<td>Design &amp; Technical Theatre III 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 406</td>
<td>Theatre &amp; Society in Africa [Special Author] 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 409</td>
<td>Advanced Directing 400 Optional 28 weeks 6 Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 410</td>
<td>Dramatic literature II [Europe]<strong>400</strong> Optional 14 weeks Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 411</td>
<td>Theories of Modern Drama [1920-Present] 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 412</td>
<td>Theatre Administration 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory/Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 415</td>
<td>Drama-in-Education [DIE] 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory/Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 416</td>
<td>Senior Project 400 Core 28 weeks 6 Theory/Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 417</td>
<td>Theatre-for-Development 400 Optional 28 weeks 6 Theory/Practical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA 418</td>
<td>Theatre &amp; Tourism 400 Optional 14 weeks 3 Theory/Practical</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**
- Emboldened courses are newly created courses for the proposed programme.
- All practical courses are assessed on a 70% [practical exam] and 30% [CA] format. The practical examination is a semester-long/year-long extensive work on a theatre project that culminates in a performance.
- * This course will assessed on a 60% [ensemble production] and 40% [CA] format.
- ** These are existing courses in the Department of English.
- *** These courses are part of ENG327 [Practical Theatre] and ENG417 [Theory and Practice of Drama] currently being offered in the Department of English.
- ** All practical courses shall, to a large degree, employ a hands-on, out-of-class experience by going on attachments/apprenticeships to relevant theatre organizations.

**OPTIONAL COURSES FROM OTHER DEPARTMENTS****

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COURSES</th>
<th>Level 400</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL142</td>
<td>The Study of Drama in Indigenous Languages 100 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARB121</td>
<td>Design Communication 100 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARB123</td>
<td>History of Art 100 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC111</td>
<td>Communication and Study Skills 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC121</td>
<td>Communication &amp; Information Skills 100 EC 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC122</td>
<td>Computing &amp; Information Skills Fundamentals II 100 EC 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTK100</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing 100 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSW207</td>
<td>Culture, Change and Social Work in Botswana 200 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTB222</td>
<td>Graphics 200 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPP201</td>
<td>Art Introduction 200 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPP202</td>
<td>Practical Arts Skills for the Teacher 200 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC200</td>
<td>GEC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC200</td>
<td>GEC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MKT200</td>
<td>Integrated Communications 200 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL 343</td>
<td>Introduction to African Popular Theatre 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL 352</td>
<td>Epic Performance in Africa 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS 301</td>
<td>Scripting for the Electronic Media [3 Credits] 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS 310</td>
<td>Popular Culture in Society &amp; the Media 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS 314</td>
<td>Public Relations II 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS329</td>
<td>Developmental Communication 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS333</td>
<td>Radio Documentary Writing &amp; Production 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS334</td>
<td>TV and Video Documentary Writing &amp; Production 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBT 312</td>
<td>Aesthetics 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPP 302</td>
<td>Practical Skills in Teaching of Art 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC300</td>
<td>GEC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC300</td>
<td>GEC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE358</td>
<td>Fashion and Society 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE359</td>
<td>Design Fundamentals 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MKT304</td>
<td>Advertising [Prerequisite: MKT200] 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP302</td>
<td>Research Methods 300 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL454</td>
<td>Children's/children and Dramatics 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS401</td>
<td>Image in Africa 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS405</td>
<td>Public Relations III 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS409</td>
<td>TV &amp; Video Production IV [includes TV/Video drama] 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS410</td>
<td>Radio Production IV [includes Radio drama] 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS424</td>
<td>Radio Drama Script-writing &amp; Production 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC400</td>
<td>GEC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC400</td>
<td>GEC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEE457</td>
<td>History and Conservation of Textiles 400 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHR424</td>
<td>Movement &amp; Creative Dance Technique 40 Optional 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** ****All optional courses from other Departments are existing courses.
APPENDIX 1: THEATRE PROGRAMME [ABBREVIATED COURSE DESCRIPTIONS]

INTRODUCTION TO THE THEATRE

**LEVEL 1 [CORE] 3 CREDITS**

This course offers a theoretical panoramic coverage of important theoretical foundations from the ancient Greek period to the modern period. Course spread touches on most arms of the arts of Theatre, ranging from stage movement to costume, scene design and construction, acting and directing. This course helps to familiarize students with the traditions, components and development of Theatre and dramatic arts from the earliest times to the 21st century.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework
60% Written exam

THEATRE IN BOTSWANA

**LEVEL 1 [CORE] 3 CREDITS**

This introductory course offers a composite coverage of the socio-historical contexts and philosophical bases of drama, performance and Theatre practices in Botswana and traditions in Botswana looking at indigenous performances and Theatre practices, colonial and postcolonial literary drama and Theatre in Botswana.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework
60% Written exam

WORKSHOP THEATRE

**LEVEL 1 [OPTIONAL] 6 CREDITS**

An introduction to the paradigm shifts from conventional to the actor, dancer and musician’s Theatre. The course is geared towards nurturing the talents of emerging Theatre practitioners and to focus the students’ natural sense of play on the creative process of Theatre. This course will enable students to understand the concepts techniques used in the devising plays, and facilitation of community-Theatre. Students will acquire workshop skills in creating independent plays, while providing them with fresh insights into collaborative and ensemble playing.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Exam

**ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME**

**LEVEL 2 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS**

This course offers a critical and creative introduction to acting, movement and mime for the stage. The course, devoted to the development of the physical instrument of the actor [the body], will include basic physical, vocal, imaginative skills, miming skills, and development of general stage movement for the beginning actor.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Exam

DESIGN AND TECHNICAL THEATRE

**LEVEL 2 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS**

An introduction to the techniques involved in costume, light, set, and sound designing for the Theatre. Productions currently being presented at the University will serve as the sources for study.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Practical exam

PLAYWRITING

**LEVEL 2 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS**

Principles of playwriting will be taught through practices. Development of techniques required for dramatic stage scripts include original writing and adaptations with emphasis on play construction, character development, dialogue, and mood.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Exam

**THEATRE HISTORY**

**LEVEL 1 [1642–1800] 3 CREDITS**

This is a follow-up on the Theatre History course in Level I. this course specifically tracks the historical development of British Theatre and drama from the Middle Ages to 1800, the Spanish Theatre to 1700, and Theatre in France 1500–1700.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Practical exam

**THEATRE IN AFRICA**

**LEVEL 2 [CORE] 3 CREDITS**

This course explores the nexus between history, culture and identity in African performance. The course raises questions about representation and the production of theatrical knowledge within and across African cultures. While play-texts dealing with cultural practices, history, politics, religion and social problems plaguing the African continent will be studied, in-depth historical and sociological studies of indigenous forms of drama in Africa will also be surveyed.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.
THEATRE IN BOTSWANA [POPULAR THEATRE]

LEVEL 2 [CORE] 3 CREDITS

This course is a continuation of Theatre in Botswana at Level 1. The course will now take a more detailed look at popular performances and Theatre-for-Development in Botswana. Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework 60% Written exam

DESIGN AND TECHNICAL THEATRE II

LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course is a follow-up to Design and Technical Theatre I. In this course the techniques involved in costume, light, set, and sound designing for the Theatre are taken to a higher level. Productions currently being presented at the University will serve as the sources for study. Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework 60% Written exam

PLAY BACK THEATRE

LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course will place Playback Theatre in a literary and historical context as a modern development of oral traditional ceremonial ritual. Students will learn about stories and how they work; about the history of the approach and its comparison to Theatre of the oppressed, Theatre for development, and other forms of interactive Theatre; and about the underlying theories of respect for persons and positive social change on which it is based. The basic forms of Playback Theatre will be taught experientially, and students will practice the roles of actor, musician, conductor, and teller. Also introduced will be the group dynamics necessary for successful encounters with community audiences. Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework 60% Practical exam

AMERICAN THEATRE [20–21st CENTURY]

LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS

This course focuses on the development of the American Theatre from the 20th to the 21st century, paying attention to the changing conditions of the Theatre in the United States and other American nations. Topics include black Theatre, women’s Theatre, off-Broadway and Minority Theatre. It examines the plays as theatrical experiences to such aspects as staging, acting, lighting and music and the responses of American drama to changing social and political thought in the Americas. Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework 60% Written exam

DRAMATIC LITERATURE [AFRICA]

LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course focuses on the history and development of drama in Africa. Dramatic literature refers to the texts of plays that can be read, as distinct from being seen and heard in performance. Therefore, drama will be studied primarily as a literary form but attention will also be given to placing the drama in the Theatre and cultural milieu from which it developed. Authors to be studied will include, for instance, Soyinka, J.P. Clark, Wilde, Shaw, Aidoo, Fugard etc. Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework 60% Practical exam
STAGE MANAGEMENT
LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS

This course deals with the techniques and conventions commonly in use for staging the production, planning, rehearsals, coordinating, technical requirements, and professional standards expected in staging a production. 
Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

THEATRE ETHICS

LEVEL 3 [CORE] 3 CREDITS

This course will examine a series of contemporary plays and Theatre productions in relation to the ethics of representation. It will explore the writer's or the director's responsibilities in staging the self and the other in Theatre and the strategies they adopt to highlight and problematize this process. By combining theoretical, textual and performance analysis, the course will engage with debates surrounding, for instance, alterity, community research, consent, cultural and autobiographical memory, defamation, intellectual property rights, representation of violence, sexuality, and trauma in Theatre. The course will also look at concepts such as meta-Theatre and the role of the author in the Theatre text as well as practices that aim to embody ethical positions in and through performance. Theatre Ethics will combine the pleasure and excitement of attending live Theatre, with the challenge of exploring and discussing the principles that frame moral choice. 
Outcomes: Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

THEATRE HISTORY: EUROPE
LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course surveys the heritage and beginning of modern European drama, investigating significant movements and key personalities in Theatre practice from 1875-1915. This course will provide a theoretical base for the exploration, as well as providing a conceptual framework for Theatre research in modern European drama. 
Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

THEATRE IN AFRICA II
LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course is an extension of Theatre in Africa I. the course seeks to imbue students with knowledge of drama, thematic concerns, and theatrical practices [performance mode and style] as they obtain in West and east Africa from pre-colonial days to the present. Play-texts which explore African problems from the colonial period to the present will be studied. Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

THEATRE IN BOTSWANA [THEATRE AND THE MASS MEDIA] LEVEL 3 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

The focus of this course will be contemporary Theatre in Botswana, taking particular look at Botswana Theatre and the mass media - television drama; video drama/movie. Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME III
LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS: PREREQUISITE: ACTING, MOVEMENT AND MIME II

A much more advanced course on acting, movement, and mime for the stage. This course continues development of skills acquired in Acting, Movement and Mime II. Helps students develop believable characters while working on acting, movement and mime exercises and duet scenes from contemporary dramatic literature. The students offering this course will form the core of actors for students offering Advanced Directing. Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

ADVANCED DIRECTING
LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 6 CREDITS

This course is an advanced exploration of the directing process. This course is the principal training forum for the directing specialization. It is a rigorous practicum that hones the vision of each student-director. Each directing student will analyze a play script to uncover dramatic events, beats, dramatic structure, spine or through-line, and inciting incident which will culminate in the performance of a full-length play by each student offering this course. 
Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

DESIGN AND TECHNICAL THEATRE III
LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

A study of the technical aspects of Theatre including set, properties construction, scene designing and painting, costumes construction, lights and sound design at an much advanced level. This course will also include script analysis, the creation of floor plans, elevated drawings of stage sets, construction of a stage model, lighting plot, phases of costume design, analysis of characters, and period research. Students specialize in one of the following areas: costume/make-up, lighting, or set design. Each specialization offers students an opportunity to receive an advanced hands-on training and contribute to a range of staged theatrical productions. 
Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.
cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Practical exam

DRAMA-IN-EDUCATION
LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course introduces Drama-in-Education as a methodology for learning. It enables communication between individuals exploring person to person experiences. Drama brings people in touch with play, improvisation, group interaction, role play and creative problem solving. While the Drama-in-Education course will consist mainly of practical and experiential work, there will also be an important theoretical aspect included.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Practical exam

DRAMATIC LITERATURE II [EUROPE]
LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course is a continuation of the introductory work done in third year at an advanced level. This course will entail detailed study of dramatists and play texts. Among the dramatists to be studied will be Aeschylus, Sophocles, Euripides, Menander, Seneca, the Wakefield Master, Marlowe, Shakespeare, Ben Jonson, Lope de Vega, Moliere, Racine, Dryden, and Congreve.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework
60% Practical exam

PLAYWRITING III
LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

In Playwriting III [Advanced playwriting] each student is expected to produce a full-length play of any style. This course is for the student who has developed experience in creating a narrative presentation, this course will further the study of the dramatic structure of short and full length plays, screenplays, and teleplays. This course focuses on the writing of an original full-length play.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 30% coursework
70% Practical exam

THEATRE AND SOCIETY IN AFRICA [SPECIAL AUTHOR] LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS

This course provides the students the opportunity of studying in depth the work of a particular African author. The author, content, bibliography and mode of teaching this course will be determined from time to time as circumstances allow. The study of such an author affords the students the opportunity of also surveying the role of African Theatre and playwrights in their engagement with the nagging problems of the environment and cultural super-structures, including econopolitical conditions in African societies. This course responds to the growing awareness of the contributions, and impact of Theatre on African societies and arms students with the tools of theatrical/dramatic criticism of society.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Cross-cultural fluency.

Mode of Assessment 40% coursework
60% Written exam
information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

**Mode of Assessment** 100% coursework

**THEATRE-FOR-DEVELOPMENT**
**LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 6 CREDITS**

This course introduces students to the concept of Theatre as an instrument of conscientization and empowerment for the socially deprived communities. In this course, Theatre will be approached as an agent of integrated rural development used as a method for non-formal adult education in rural and marginalized areas. The course will enable students to perceive the relationship between popular Theatre and non-formal education as it will be anchored on the grassroots approach to education and development. The course will also train students to become catalysts and participants in rural development.

Outcomes: Information and communication technology knowledge and skills; Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Organizational and teamwork skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; Cross-cultural fluency; Accountability and ethical standards.

**Mode of Assessment** 30% coursework
70% Practical exam

**THEATRE HISTORY: ASIA**
**LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS**

This course will explore the history and origins of the major forms of Asian Theatre, performance and production style and practices of both the traditional Asian Theatre and the contemporary theatrical trends and influences with the objective of exposing students to, and broadening their appreciation of, the theatrical arts of Asia. This course will also identify the similarities and the differences between the various Asian theatrical forms, and explore the influences of western style Theatre on Asian theatrical practices, and the significant influences of Asian Theatre on the west.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Communication skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; Social responsibility and leadership skills; Interpersonal skills; and Cross-cultural fluency.

**Mode of Assessment** 40% coursework
60% Practical exam

**THEORIES OF MODERN DRAMA**
**[1920–PRESENT] LEVEL 4 [OPTIONAL] 3 CREDITS**

The course involves the study of the major modern theories and developments that have shaped the Twentieth Century Theatre from 1920 to the present. Students will be trained to become familiar with modern and experimental developments of Theatre and drama.

Outcomes: Self-directed, lifelong learning skills; Critical and creative thinking skills; Problem-solving skills; Entrepreneurship and employability skills; Research skills and information literacy; and Cross-cultural fluency.

**Mode of Assessment** 40% coursework
60% Written exam
Faculty of SCIENCE

DEAN
Prof. M.P. Modisi, BSc (Ibadan)
MS (South Dakota School of Mines and Tech), PhD (McMaster)

DEPUTY DEAN
Prof. V.R.K. Murty, BSc, PhD (Andra)
LMRIPS, MSAPI, MISRP

FACULTY ADMINISTRATOR
L.M. Paledi, BA, MPA (UB)

MANAGER, HR
P.G. Morapedi
BA, PhD (UB) MSc (HR+ER)
(Brunel University)

ICPMS SENIOR SCIENTIST
M. Zhai, BSc (Beijing), PhD (McMaster)

NMR SENIOR SCIENTIST
M. Bezahih, BSc, MSc (Addis) PhD (UB)

E.M. SCIENTIST
Mr. E.M. Coetzee
MPhil Physics, BSc Applied Sciences
NHD Mech. Eng. ND Electron Microscopy

MASS SPECTROMETRE SCIENTIST
Dr. K. Sichilongo, BSc Chemistry,
MSc Analytical Chemistry and Instrumentation, PhD Mass Spectrometry and Separation Science
**DEPARTMENT OF BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES**

**Bachelor of Science Biological Sciences**

**General Provisions**

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

**Programmes and Titles of Degrees**

The Department of Biological Sciences offers the following programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:

(i) Single Major programme leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (Biological Sciences, Single Major); B.Sc.

(ii) Combined degree (Major/Minor) programme with Biological Sciences as the Major leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).

(iii) Combined degree (Major/Minor) programme with Biological Sciences and another Science subject leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).

(iv) Combined degree (Minor/Major) programme with Biological Sciences as the Minor leading to the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).

**Entrance Requirements**

Admission to the Biological Sciences shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Special Regulations. Entrance requirements specific to particular programmes shall be as specified under the specific programmes below.

**Structure of the Programme**

The Department of Biological Sciences shall:

(i) Offer courses at levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programme

(ii) From time to time, design and offer courses for specific needs of other Departments in the University provided there are no suitable courses already on offer.

(iii) Contribute to General Education Courses offered through the Faculty of Science.

(iv) Offer a Single Major Degree programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.1.

(v) Offer a Combined Degree Major/Minor programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.2.

(vi) Offer a Combined Degree Major/Major programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.3.

(vii) Offer a Combined Degree Minor/Major programme as per Departmental Special Regulations 2.4.

**SINGLE MAJOR (Biological Sciences)**

To be admitted into the Single Major (Biological Sciences) programme, a student must have obtained at least Grade C (GPA: 2.5) in both BIO111 and BIO112.

**Semesters 1 and 2**

All students who wish to pursue the Biological Sciences programme as Single Major should, in addition to BIO111 and BIO112, take CHE101 and CHE102.

**Semesters 3 and 4**

Students must take BIO211, BIO214, BIO217 and BIO218 in Semester 3. Students must take BIO212, BIO213, BIO215 and BIO216 in Semester 4. Students are also advised to take as electives CHE211 & CHE213 (Analytical Chemistry), CHE232 & CHE234 (Organic Chemistry) and CHE242 & CHE244 (Physical Chemistry).

**Semesters 5 and 6**

Students must take BI0301, BI0307 and at least two Optional Courses in Semester 5. Students must take BI0306, BI0308 and at least two Optional Courses in Semester 6.

**Semesters 7 and 8**

Students must take BI0450 and at least 3 Optional Courses in semester 7. Students must take BI0450 and at least 3 Optional Courses in semester 8.

**Level Semester Core Courses**

All courses are worth 3 credits each except BIO111 and BIO112 (worth 4 credits each) and BI0450 (which is worth 6 credits). Students who wish to pursue Single Major, Major/Minor or Major/Major in Biological Sciences must take and pass BI0111 & BI0112.

**Semester 1**

- **BIO111** Principles of Biology (pre-req. to Single Major/Major/Minor and Major/Major (4)
- **BIO122** Anatomy, Physiology and Biochemistry (3)

**Semester 2**

- **BIO111** Diversity of Animals and Plants (pre-req. to Single Major, Major and Minor/Major (4)
- **BIO120** Introductory Biochemistry (3)
- **BIO123** Introduction to Microbiology and Stored Products Entomology

**Semester 3**

- **BIO211** Cell Biology (pre-req. to BIO307) (3) (also offered in sem.4)
- **BIO212** Genetics (pre-req. to BIO308) (3) (also offered in sem.4)
- **BIO214** Intro. to Mammalian Physiology (pre-req. to BIO317) (3)
- **BIO216** General Microbiology (pre-req.to BIO309, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436) (3)(also offered in sem.4)
- **BIO217** Animal Diversity (pre-req. to BIO315) (3)
- **BIO218** Biology of Flowering Plants (3)
- **BIO223** Parasitology for Health Sciences (3)
- **BIO231** Human Anatomy (3)

**Semester 4**

- **BIO211** Cell Biology (3) (also offered in sem.3)
- **BIO212** Genetics (3) (also offered in sem.3)
- **BIO213** Plant Structure and Function (pre-req. to BIO316) (3)
- **BIO215** Principles of Ecology (pre-req. to BIO313, BIO314, BIO408, BIO409, BIO411, BIO412, BIO426, BIO429, BIO434) (3)
- **BIO216** General Microbiology (pre-req. to BIO309, BIO310, BIO312, BIO416, BIO418, BIO419, BIO420, BIO436) (3)(also offered in sem.3)
- **BIO225** Human Physiology and the Environment (3)
- **BIO232** Human Physiology (3)

**Semester 5**

- **BIO301** Quantitative Biology (3)
- **BIO307** Biochemistry (pre-req. to BIO417) (3)
- **BIO309** Mycology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
- **BIO313** Dynamics of Savannah Ecosystems (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
- **BIO315** Invertebrate Zoology (3)
- **BIO316** Plant Physiology (pre-req. BIO213) (3)
- **BIO317** Comparative Vertebrate Physiology (pre-req. to BIO214) (3)

**Semester 6**

- **BIO305** Insect Pests (Vector Control) (3)
- **BIO306** Developmental Biology (3)
- **BIO308** Molecular Biology (pre-req. to BIO417) (3)
- **BIO310** Bacteriology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
- **BIO311** Plant Systematics (3)
- **BIO312** Virology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
- **BIO314** Conservation Biology (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
- **BIO318** Chordates (3)

**Semester 7**

- **BIO403** Applied Botany (3)
- **BIO409** Life History Strategies (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
- **BIO412** Aquatic Biology (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
- **BIO417** Biotechnology (pre-req. BIO307 & BIO308) (3)
- **BIO419** Medical Microbiology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
- **BIO421** Entomology (3)
- **BIO423** Exercise Physiology (3)
- **BIO425** Parasitology (3)
- **BIO431** Plant Responses to Environmental Stress (3)
- **BIO432** Plant Tissue Culture (3)
- **BIO436** Environmental Microbiology (pre-req. BIO216) (3)
- **BIO437** Micro techniques in Biology (3)
- **BIO450** Research Project (yr long - 6)

**Semester 8**

- **BIO408** Wildlife Biology of Southern Africa (pre-req. BIO215) (3)
- **BIO411** Wetlands Ecology and
### Department of Chemistry

1.0 Departmental Regulations for Undergraduate Courses

The Department has a curriculum that will enable undergraduates to qualify for a Bachelors Degree in the single subject of Chemistry, and a Bachelors Degree with a Major in Chemistry and a Major or a Minor in one other Science subject. The Department also offers a Minor programme in Chemistry. The Department offers the following programmes:

- Single Major programme leading to a Bachelor of Science Degree in Chemistry
- A Combined Degree with a Major in Chemistry and a Major or Minor in another Science subject leading to a Combined Bachelor of Science Degree

#### 1.1 Entry Requirements

To enter into any of the Chemistry programmes, in addition to fulfilling the faculty requirements for progression from Year One to Year Two, students must have a minimum average grade of C+ for Single major), C (for Major in Chemistry) and C- (for Minor in Chemistry) in CHE101 and CHE102.

#### 1.2 Programme Outlines and Structures

(a) Common First Year Programme

Two general Chemistry courses, CHE101 and CHE102, each consisting of 3-credit lectures and a 1-credit lab, will be offered to the common programme for first year Science students.

(b) Single Major Programme

In the Single Major programme, students take 85 credits of core courses, 20 credits of General Education courses, and will have opportunities to select more credits from a range of optional and elective courses. Eleven (11) credits of Mathematics and Physics courses, are included in the core credits.

(c) Combined Degree Programme (Chemistry Major)

Students in the Combined Degree programme with a Major in Chemistry, in addition to the 34 credits taken in Year One, must complete a minimum of 47 credits in Chemistry, a minimum of 3 credits each in Mathematics and Physics, and 12 credits in General Education courses. Students must also meet the requirements for the second Major or Minor as specified by the appropriate department.

(d) Combined Degree (Major/Minor) Programme (Chemistry Minor)

Students in the Combined Degree (Major/Minor) programme with a Minor in Chemistry, in addition to the 34 credits taken in Year One, must complete 18 credits in Chemistry core courses consisting of 12 core credits in Year Two, 4 core credits in Year Three, and 2 credits of Year Three practicals.

#### Common First Year Programme

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>CHE101</td>
<td>General Chemistry I</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAT111</td>
<td>Introductory Mathematics I</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PHY111</td>
<td>Geometrical optics, Mechanics, Vibrations &amp; Waves</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PHY119</td>
<td>Physics Practicals I</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GEC111</td>
<td>Communication &amp; Study skills</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Service Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE107</td>
<td>Chemistry Applied to Home Economics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE109</td>
<td>Introductory Chemistry for BNS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Recommended Electives

- ECO111: Basic Microeconomics (3)
- MGT100: Principles of Management (3)

#### Semester 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE102</td>
<td>General Chemistry II</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT122</td>
<td>Introductory Mathematics II</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY121</td>
<td>Electricity &amp; Magnetism, Modern Physics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY129</td>
<td>Physics Practicals I</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEC121</td>
<td>Communication &amp; Study skills II</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Recommended Electives

- ACC100: Introduction to Accounting (3)
- ECO112: Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- MKT100: Principles of Marketing (3)

#### Chemistry as Single Major Programme

#### Semester 3

#### Core Courses

- CHE211: Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102)
- CHE213: Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102; Co-req CHE211)
- CHE232: Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102)
- CHE234: Organic Chem. Lab I (1) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102)
- MAT201: Engineering Mathematics I (3)
- PHY211: Mechanics & Physical Optics (2)
- PHY219: Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

#### Semester 4

#### Core Courses

- CHE221: Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102)
- CHE223: Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102; Co-req CHE221)
- CHE242: Introductory Physical Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102, MAT122)
- CHE244: Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) (pre-req. CHE101 & CHE102; Co-req CHE242)

#### Semester 5

#### Core Courses

- CHE311: Separation Techniques (3)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 4</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE234</td>
<td>Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE211 &amp; CHE213)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE322</td>
<td>Physical Organic Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE311 &amp; CHE312)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE334</td>
<td>Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE234 &amp; CHE331)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE342</td>
<td>Quantum Chemistry II &amp; Its Applications (2) (pre-req. CHE242 &amp; CHE341)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Co-req CHE322)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE352</td>
<td>Literature Project (1) (pre-req. CHE351)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 5</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE311</td>
<td>Separation Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE211)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE321</td>
<td>Coordination Chemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE221 &amp; CHE223)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE323</td>
<td>Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE221 &amp; CHE223)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE341</td>
<td>Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2) (pre-req. CHE242)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE343</td>
<td>Physical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE242 &amp; CHE344)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE351</td>
<td>Chemical Informatics (1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 6</th>
<th>Recommended Electives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIO307</td>
<td>Biochemistry (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHY313</td>
<td>Mathematical Methods of Physics I (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 7</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE411</td>
<td>Advanced Analytical Techniques (3) (pre-req. CHE311 &amp; CHE312)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE421</td>
<td>Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3) (pre-req. CHE322)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE 431</td>
<td>Heterocyclic Chemistry, Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3) (pre-req. CHE331 &amp; CHE332)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE441</td>
<td>Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3) (pre-req. CHE341)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 8</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHE342</td>
<td>Quantum Chemistry &amp; Its Applications (3) (pre-req. CHE242 &amp; CHE341, Co-req. CHE322)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE334</td>
<td>Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) (pre-req. CHE234 &amp; CHE331)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHE452</td>
<td>Student Research Project (3) (pre-req. CHE352)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Elective

ENV476 Natural Resources Management and Economics (2)
Chemistry As Minor Subject In Combined Degree

Semester 3
Core Courses
CHE211 Introduction to Analytical Chemistry (2) [pre-req, CHE 101 & CHE102]
CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) [Co-req CHE101 & CHE102, Co-req CHE211]
CHE232 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups I (2) [pre-req, CHE 101 & CHE102]
CHE234 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I (1) [pre-req, CHE 101 & CHE102]

Semester 4
Core Courses
CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2) [pre-req, CHE 101 & CHE102]
CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1) [pre-req, CHE 101 & CHE102, Co-req CHE221]
CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry (2) [pre-req, CHE 101 & CHE102, Matt122]
CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I (1) [pre-req, CHE101&CHE102, CHE242]

Required to take at least 6 Credits including 2 Credits of Laboratory from the CHE Courses in Semester 5 and 6

Semester 5
Core Courses
CHE311 Separation Techniques (3) [pre-req, CHE211]
CHE321 Coordination Chemistry (2) [pre-req, CHE221&CHE223]
CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) [pre-req CHE 223, Co-req CHE321]
CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups II (3) [pre-req, CHE232]
CHE341 Applications of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2) [pre-req, CHE242]
CHE343 Physical Chemistry Laboratory II (1) [pre-req, CHE242 & CHE 244]
CHE351 Chemical Informatics (1)

Semester 6
Core Courses
CHE312 Analytic Spectroscopy (2) [pre-req, CHE211]
CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II (1), [pre-req, CHE 211/213, Co req CHE 311 & CHE 312]
CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3) [pre-req, CHE321]
CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry (2) [pre-req, CHE232 & CHE 331]
CHE334 Organic Chemistry Laboratory II (1) [pre-req, CHE234 & CHE 331]
CHE342 Quantum Chemistry and Applications (3) [pre-req, CHE242 & CHE 341, Co-req CHE323]
CHE352 Literature Project (1credit) [pre-req, CHE351]

Recommended Electives

Bio308 Molecular Biology (3)
MGT303 Entrepreneurship and New Business Formations (3)

Semester 7
Not required to take any Chemistry courses.

Semester 8
Not required to take any Chemistry courses.

Recommended Electives

ENV476 Natural Resources Management and Economics (2)

1.3 Assessment and Examination
The coursework shall be continuously assessed. Continuous assessment shall consist of written tests, assignments and laboratory exercises where applicable. The weighting of final examination where applicable, shall not be less than 50% of the overall grade for a given course.

1.4 Progression from one Semester to the next Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

1.5 Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

Programmes and Programme Titles
The Department of Computer Science offers the following undergraduate and postgraduate programmes:
- Single major programme leading to award of:
  - a) BSc (Computer Science);
  - b) BIS (Computer Information Systems);
- Combined major/minor programme leading to award of:
  - a) BSc (Computer Science (major), other subject (minor));
  - Combined major/minor programme leading to award of:
  - a) BSc (Computer Science, minor), other subject (major);

Entry Requirements
Undergraduate Entry Requirements
For admission into the Single major or Combined programmes students must meet the Faculty of Science entry requirements as specified in special regulations of the Faculty of Science 23.2. In addition, the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply for entry to Level 200. For admission into Level 200 of the Department of Computer Science the student must have met one of the following requirements:
- a) Passed with minimum grade of C in each of MAT111, MAT122, or STA 101 and STA 102, and one other Science subject.
- b) Awarded a Diploma in Computer Studies or equivalent programme from this University or other similar institution and passed with a minimum average of 60%
- c) Passed A-level or equivalent examination and achieved at least D in Mathematics and Physics and any other science subject

Bachelor of Science, Computer Science
Single Major
Semesters 1-2
(Courses shall apply as prescribed in the relevant Faculty regulations)

Semester 3
Core Courses
CSI314 Discrete Mathematics I (3)
CSI321 Structured Programming (4)
CSI261 Machine Organisation (3)
CSI292 Information Syst. Fundamental (3)

Optional Courses
MAT221 Calculus (3)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)
PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)

Semester 4
Core Courses
CSI231 Discrete Mathematics II (3)
CSI242 Data Abstraction and Structures (4)
CSI252 Operating System Concepts (3)
CSI272 Communication Network Fundamentals (3)
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)

Optional Courses
MAT212 Linear Algebra (3)
PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)

Semester 5
Core Course
CSI311 File Systems and Data Management (4)
CSI322 Algorithms Analysis and Design (3)
CSI341 Introduction to Software Engineering (3)
CSI361 Computer Architecture (3)
CSI315 Web Technology and Applications (3)

Optional Courses
CSI314 Decision Support Systems (3)
CSI372 Expert Systems (3)
CSI351 Assembly Language Programming (3)
CSI331 Numerical Methods (3)

Semester 6
Core Course
CSI332 Programming Languages (3)
CSI342 Systems Analysis and Design (3)
CSI352 Industrial Attachment (2)
CSI362 Database Concepts (3)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>CSI382</strong> Formal Languages and Automata (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI272</strong> Communication Networks Fundamentals (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI392</strong> Human Computer interaction (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI232</strong> Discrete Mathematics II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI393</strong> Multimedia Computing (3)</td>
<td><strong>MAT212</strong> Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI312</strong> Programming Languages Translation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI403</strong> Project I (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI423</strong> Systems Programming (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI461</strong> Communication Networks Management (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>CSI42</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI411</strong> Complexity and Computability Theory (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI433</strong> Algorithmic Graph Theory (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI414</strong> Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI451</strong> Knowledge Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI431</strong> Formal Methods (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI434</strong> Knowledge Management Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI422</strong> Operations Research (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI452</strong> Operating Research (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Intelligent Interfaces and Systems Management (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>CSI403</strong> Project I (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI461</strong> Communication Networks Management (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Programming Languages (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI434</strong> Knowledge Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI431</strong> Formal Methods (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI431</strong> Formal Methods (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bachelor of Science, Computer Science

- Combined Major

Students must take a minimum of 12 credits from core CS courses and a minimum of 3 credits from another approved programme, excluding GEC courses, in each semester. Students may also take any optional courses offered by the Department.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>CSI382</strong> Formal Languages and Automata (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI452</strong> Computer Simulation and Modelling (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI392</strong> Human Computer interaction (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI422</strong> Operations Research (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI393</strong> Multimedia Computing (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Intelligent Interfaces and Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI312</strong> Programming Languages Translation (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Artificial Intelligence (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI494</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td><strong>CSI494</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td>Bachelor of Computer Science – Combined Minor Students must take a minimum of 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td>credits from core CS courses and a minimum of 9 credits from other approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td>programmes, excluding GEC courses, in each semester. Students may also take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td>optional courses offered by the Department.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI431</strong> Formal Methods (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>CSI405</strong> Project II (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI426</strong> Distributed Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI441</strong> Software Engineering (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI471</strong> Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI481</strong> Database Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI432</strong> Operating Systems (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI442</strong> Computer Graphics II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI491</strong> Pattern Recognition (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CSI493</strong> Computer Graphics I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional Courses

- **CSI311** File Systems and Data Management (4)
- **CSI351** Assembly Language Programming (3)
- **CSI331** Numerical Methods (3)
- **CSI315** Web Technology and Applications (3)
- **CSI421** Structured Programming (4)
- **CSI261** Machine Organization (3)
- **MAT212** Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
- **CSI242** Data Abstraction and Data Structures (4)
- **CSI272** Communication Network Fundamentals (3)
- **CSI292** Information Systems Fundamentals (3)
- **CSI232** Discrete Mathematics II (3)
- **CSI341** Introduction to Software Engineering (3)
- **CSI311** File Systems and Data Management (4)
- **CSI361** Computer Architecture (3)
- **CSI351** Assembly Language Programming (3)
- **CSI331** Numerical Methods (3)
- **CSI315** Web Technology and Applications (3)
- **CSI341** Introduction to Software Engineering (3)
- **CSI311** File Systems and Data Management (4)
- **CSI361** Computer Architecture (3)
- **CSI351** Assembly Language Programming (3)
- **CSI331** Numerical Methods (3)
- **CSI315** Web Technology and Applications (3)
- **CSI341** Introduction to Software Engineering (3)
- **CSI311** File Systems and Data Management (4)
- **CSI361** Computer Architecture (3)
- **CSI351** Assembly Language Programming (3)
- **CSI331** Numerical Methods (3)
- **CSI315** Web Technology and Applications (3)
- **CSI341** Introduction to Software Engineering (3)
### Management (4)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 8</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI471 Object-Oriented Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI481 Database Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Business Information Systems Bachelor of Science (Computer Information Systems)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 3</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI231 Discrete Mathematics I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI241 Structured Programming (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI261 Machine Organisation (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI292 Information System Fundamental (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIS223 Digital Libraries (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT203 Quantitative Methods (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT221 Calculus I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 4</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI232 Discrete Mathematics II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI242 Data Abstraction and Structures (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI252 Operating System Concepts (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI272 Communication Networks Fundamentals (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAT212 Linear Algebra (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAT Calculus II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS227 Intro to Knowledge Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT200 Organisational Design &amp; Development (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 5</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI311 File Systems and Data Management (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI341 Introduction to Software Engineering (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI315 Web technology and Applications (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BIS302 Decision Support Systems I (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI371 Information Systems Resource Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS300 Online Information Retrieval (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS310 Health Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT301 Organisational Behaviour (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI322 Algorithm Analysis and Design (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI361 Computer Architecture (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 6</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI342 Systems Analysis and Design (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI352 Industrial Attachment (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI362 Database Concepts (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI314 Decision Support Systems II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI392 Human Computer Interaction (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI372 Expert Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI373 Economics of Information Technology (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI393 Multimedia Computing (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS311 Business Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS312 Legal Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS314 Agricultural Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIS309 Accounting Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI332 Programming Languages (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI382 Formal Languages and Automata (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 7</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI403 Project I (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI461 Communication Networks Management (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI414 Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI451 Knowledge Engineering (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGT400 Strategic Management (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS407 Emerging Technologies (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV440 Geographic Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI421 Operating Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 8</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CSI405 Project II (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI441 Software Engineering (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSI481 Database Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIS425 Global Information Systems (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIS417 Information Systems Auditing (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

#### 4. Entrance Requirements
Normal entry requirements shall be as stipulated in General Regulation 20.00 in this Calendar and Departmental Regulation 1.4 (see Departmental Handbook).

#### 5.1 Human Environment Programmes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Urban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2, Area 1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 1</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV101 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV103 Elementary Quantitative Techniques in Geography I (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 2</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV102 Introduction to the Physical and Human Environments II (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV104 Elementary Quantitative Techniques in Geography II (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENV215 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 3</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV211 Elements of Human Geography I (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV214 Elements of Physical Environment I (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semester 4</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENV216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENV219 Elements of Human Geography II (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV220 Elements of Physical Environment II (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Levels 300 to 400

#### Single Major Programmes
In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, in each of Semesters 5 to 8 the Single Major Programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 10 to 12 core and optional courses for each of the Human Environment Areas of Specialisation, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Availability of courses and areas of specialisation are subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year. In accordance with General Academic Regulation 1.4, entry into the programme is by application to HoD.

Human Environment Areas of Specialisation Courses in the Human Environment Areas of Specialisation fall into the following career areas:

- **a)** Population, Economy and Resources;
- **b)** Rural and Agricultural Development;
- **c)** Management of the Urban and Industrial Environment;
- **d)** Tourism Development and Policy.

### Semester 5

#### Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIS303 Directed Readings (2, all areas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIS304 Quantitative Techniques in Human Geography (3, all areas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIS305 Rural Geography (2, Area 2) (not available in 2010/11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIS309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Area 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Area 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, Area 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

154
Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2010/11)
ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/POP303/URP200/204)
ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)
ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)
ENV311 Environment, Population and Development (3, Area 1) (pre: ENV302 or POP120)
ENV312 Sustainable Development (2, all areas) (pre: ENV301)
ENV313 Elementary Techniques in Population Geography (3, Area 1) (pre: ENV302)
ENV314 Project Proposal (2, all areas) (pre: ENV303)
ENV315 Environmentalism and Social Theory (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/383/POL301/SOC322/SOC327)
ENV316 Agricultural Development (2, Area 2)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis (2, Area 4) (pre: ENV309)
ENV320 Botswana's Environment (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV315 Environmentalism and Social Theory (2, all areas)(ENV210/211/212/219/383/POL301/SOC322/SOC327)
ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis (2,Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV309)
POP305 Population Dynamics, Policies and Programmes (3, Area 1)

Semester 7
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV400 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting I (1, all areas)(pre:ENV214)
ENV426 GIS for Socioeconomic Applications (3, all areas) (pre: ENV215)
ENV401 Advanced Techniques in Population Geography (3, Area 1) (pre: ENV313)
ENV402 Natural Resource Conservation and Management (3, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV404 Rural Development Theory and Practice (2, Area 2)
ENV405 Urban and Rural Survey Techniques (2, Area 2)
ENV407 Ecotourism (2, Area 4) (pre: ENV309/338)
ENV423 Urban Social Theory (2, Area 3) (pre: ENV315/338/POL301/SOC421/433/URP400/407)
ENV424 Industry and the Environment (2, Area 3) (not available 2010/11)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV406 Regional Development Studies (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV425 The African Environment (3, all areas)
ENV447 Environmental Hazards (2, all areas)
ENV404 Rural Development Theory and Practice (2, Areas 1 and 4)
ENV407 Ecotourism (2, Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV300/318)
ENV423 Urban Social Theory (2, Area 1) (pre: ENV315/338/POL301/SOC421/433/URP400/407)
ENV424 Industry and the Environment (2, Area 4) (not available 2010/11)

Semester 8
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV408 Tourism and Development (2, Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV300/338)
ENV414 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting II (2, all areas)(pre: ENV400)
ENV456 Remote Sensing for Socio-economic Applications (3, all areas) (pre:ENV216)
ENV415 Rural Development in Botswana (2, Areas 1 and 2)
ENV418 Environmental Policy (2, Area 4)
ENV481 Concepts and Principles of Industrialisation (2, Area 3)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV403 Gender and Environment (2, all areas)
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment (3, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV427 Energy and Environment (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV476 Natural Resource Management and Economics (2, all areas)
ENV416 Transport and Environment (2, Areas 2, 3 and 4) B
ENV419 Development Geography (3, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV483 Advanced Map-work and Air Photo Interpretation (3, all areas)
ENV484 Urbanisation and Environment (2, Area 3) (pre: ENV307/321)

Major/Minor Programme with Environmental Science as the Major

In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, in each of Semesters 5 to 8, the Single Major Programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 7 to 8 core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from accompanying lists. The areas of specialisation specified under Regulation 2.1 shall also apply to this Programme. Availability of courses and areas of specialisation are subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year. In accordance with Departmental Regulation 1.4, entry into the programme is by application to HoD.

Semester 5
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV301 Environmental Issues (2, all areas)
ENV302 Concepts and Principles in Geography (2, Area 1)
ENV304 Quantitative Techniques in Social Science (3 credits, all areas)
ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Area 2) (not available 2010/11)
ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Area 4)
ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and Developing Countries (2, Area 3) (not available 2010/11)
ENV383 Advanced Human Geography (2, Humanities Students) (pre: ENV102/211/219)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV306 Globalisation, Socioeconomic and Environmental Change (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV307 Human Settlements: Principles and Morphology (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/POP303/URP200/204)
ENV310 Medical Geography (2, all areas)
ENV319 Economic Geography (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)
ENV305 Rural Geography (2, Areas 1 and 4) (not available 2010/11)
ENV309 Tourism I: Principles and Practices (2, Areas 1 and 2)
ENV317 Industrialisation Trends and the Developing World (2, Areas 1 and 2) (not available 2010/11)
ENV321 Urbanisation in the Developing World (2, all areas) (pre: ENV210/211/212/219/POP303/URP200/204)

Semester 6
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV311 Environment, Population and Development (3, Area 1)
ENV312 Sustainable Development Theory and Economics (2, all areas)
ENV313 Elementary Techniques in Population Geography (3, Area 1)
ENV314 Project Proposal (2, all areas)
ENV315 Environmentalism and Social Theory (2, all areas)
ENV316 Agricultural Development (2, Area 2)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis (2, Area 4) (pre: ENV309)
ENV320 Botswana's Environment (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)

ENV315 Environmentalism and Social Theory (2, all areas) (ENV210/211/212/219/383/POL301/SOC322/SOC327)
ENV339 Methods and Techniques in Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis (2,Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV309)
POP305 Population Dynamics, Policies and Programmes (3, Area 1)
Semester 8
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV415 Rural Development in Botswana
(2, Areas 2 and 4)
ENV418 Environmental Policy (2, Area 4)
ENV424 Industry and Environment
(2, Area 3) (not available 2010/11)
Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV403 Gender and Environment
(2, all areas)
ENV412 Environmental Impact Assessment
(3, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV418 Environmental Policy
(2, Areas 1, 2 and 3)
ENV419 Development Geography
(2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV427 Energy and Environment
(2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV456 Remote Sensing for
Socioeconomic Applications
(3, all areas) (pre: ENV216)
ENV476 Natural Resource Management and
Economics (2, all areas)
ENV416 Transport and Environment
(2, Areas 2, 3 and 4)
ENV483 Advanced Map-work and
Air Photo Interpretation
(3, all areas)
ENV484 Urbanisation and Environment
(2, Area 3) (pre: ENV307/327/URP213,310)
POP423 Population and Development
(3, Areas 1 and 2)

Combined Major/Major Programme
Combined Major/Major students shall take 5 to 6 credits of core and/or optional Environmental Science courses in each of Semesters 5 to 8. No areas of specialization are prescribed under this Programme. However, candidates could use templates for Single Majors or Major/Minors (Environmental Science Major) to guide their selection of courses. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year.

Semester 5
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 5, Combined Major/Minor students shall take core course ENV301 and at least 2 additional credits from the following Environmental Science optional courses: ENV302, ENV304, ENV305, ENV306, ENV307, ENV309, ENV310, ENV317, ENV319, ENV321, ENV339 and ENV383. For students registered in the Faculty of Humanities, ENV383 shall be taken as a core course.

Semester 6
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 6, Combined Major/Minor (Environmental Science Minor) students shall take core course ENV312 and at least 2 additional credits from the following Environmental Science optional courses: POP305, ENV313, ENV311, ENV315, ENV316, ENV318, ENV320, and ENV384. For students registered in the Faculty of Humanities, ENV383 shall be taken as a core course.

Semester 7
(See above or Dept Handbook for course pre-req.)
In Semester 7, Combined Major/Minor (Environmental Science Minor) students shall take 3 to 4 credits from the following Environmental Science options: ENV401, ENV402, ENV404, ENV405, ENV406, ENV407, ENV408, ENV423, ENV424, ENV425, ENV440, and ENV447.

Optional Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
POP306 Population and Development
(3, all areas)
ENV315 Environmentalism and Social
Theory (2, all areas) (ENV210/211/212/219/383/POPL301/ SOC322/327)
ENV320 Geography of Botswana (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV339 Methods and Techniques in
Environmental Appraisal (2, all areas) (not available 2010/11)
ENV318 Tourism II: Tools and Analysis
(2, Areas 1 and 2) (pre: ENV309)
POP305 Population Dynamics, Policies and
Programmes (3, Area 1)

Semester 7
Core Courses (By Area of Specialisation)
ENV401 Advanced Techniques in
Population Geography (3, Area 1) (pre: ENV313)
ENV404 Rural Development Theory and
Practice (2, Area 2)
ENV405 Rural Survey Techniques
(2, Area 2)
ENV407 Eco-tourism (2, Area 4) (pre: ENV309/ENV318)
ENV424 Industry and the Environment
(2, Area 3) (not available 2010/11)
**Semester 8**  
(See above or Dept Handbook for course prereqs.)

In Semester 8, Combined Major/Minor (Environmental Science Minor) students shall take 3 to 4 credits from the following Environmental Science options: ENV402, ENV403, ENV412, ENV415, ENV416, ENV418, ENV419, POP423, ENV427, ENV456, ENV476, ENV481, ENV482, ENV483 and ENV484.

### 5.2 Physical Environment Programmes

The Physical Environment Programmes are designed for students registered in the Faculty of Science and are subject to Departmental Regulations 1.4.1.2 to 1.4.1.5.

#### Level 100

In accordance with Faculty Special Regulation 23.45, Environmental Science is not offered at this level to students registered in the Faculty of Science.

#### Levels 200 to 400

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**
- ENV210 Introduction to the Human Environment I (2)
- ENV213 Introduction to the Physical Environment I (2)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV215 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)

**Semester 4**

**Core Courses**
- ENV212 Introduction to the Human Environment II (2) (pre: ENV210)
- ENV218 Introduction to the Physical Environment II (2) (pre: ENV213)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

**Single Major Programme**

In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, in each of Semesters 5 to 8 the Single Major Programme in Environmental Science shall consist of 10 to 12 core and optional courses for each of the Physical Environment Areas of Specialisation, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester and/or year.

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**
- ENV301 Environmental Issues (2)
- ENV303 Directed Readings (2)
- ENV330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: ENV216)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV331 Hydro-meteorology (2)
- ENV332 Air Photography (3) (pre: ENV215/216)
- ENV334 Principles of Soil Science (3)
- ENV338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: ENV218)
- ENV340 Biogeography (2)
- ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)

**Semester 6**

**Core Courses**
- ENV312 Sustainable Development (2) (pre: ENV301)
- ENV314 Project Proposal (2) (pre: ENV303)
- ENV336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV335 Principles of Hydrology (3)
- ENV337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)
- ENV339 Methods and Techniques for Environmental Appraisal (2) (not available 2010/11)
- ENV427 The Climate System (3)
- ENV385 Soil Geography (3)

**Combined Major/Minor Programme with Environmental Science as the Major**

In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, the Combined Major/Minor Programme in Physical Environment shall consist of 7 to 8 credits from core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Courses ENV303, ENV400 and ENV414 jointly satisfy Faculty Regulation 23.47. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester.

**Semester 3**

**Core Courses**
- ENV210 Introduction to the Human Environment I (2)
- ENV213 Introduction to the Physical Environment I (2)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV215 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)

**Semester 4**

**Core Courses**
- ENV212 Introduction to the Human Environment II (2) (pre: ENV210)
- ENV218 Introduction to the Physical Environment II (2) (pre: ENV213)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV216 Introduction to Remote Sensing (3)

**Semester 5**

**Core Courses**
- ENV301 Environmental Issues (2)
- ENV303 Directed Readings (2)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: ENV216)
- ENV331 Hydro-meteorology (2)
- ENV332 Air Photo Interpretation (3) (pre: ENV215/216)
- ENV334 Principles of Soil Science (3)
- ENV338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: ENV218)
- ENV340 Biogeography (2)
- ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)

**Semester 6**

**Core Courses**
- ENV312 Sustainable Development (2) (pre: ENV301)
- ENV314 Project Proposal (2) (pre: ENV303)
- ENV336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)

**Optional Courses**
- ENV335 Principles of Hydrology (3)
- ENV337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)
- ENV339 Methods and Techniques for Environmental Appraisal (2) (not available 2010/11)
- ENV342 The Climate System (3)
- ENV385 Soil Geography (3)
Semester 7  
Core Course  
ENV400 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting I (1) (pre: ENV314)  
Optional Courses  
ENV440 Geographical Information Systems (3) (pre: ENV215)  
ENV441 Applied Hydrology I (3) (pre: ENV335)  
ENV442 Boundary Layer Climates (3)  
ENV447 Environmental Hazards (2)  
ENV449 Land Reclamation (3)  
ENV450 Rangeland Management I (3) (pre: ENV350)  
ENV462 Environmental Quality and Management: Land and Air (3) (pre: ENV382)  
ENV475 Pedology (2) (pre: ENV332)  
Semester 8  
Core Course  
ENV414 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting II (2, all areas) (pre: ENV400)  
Optional Courses  
ENV445 Arid Lands Geomorphology (2) (pre: ENV338)  
ENV451 Rangeland Management II (2) (pre: ENV450)  
ENV452 Soil Survey and Land Evaluation (3) (pre: ENV334/385)  
ENV458 Water Resources Development and Management (2)  
ENV462 Environmental Quality and Management: Water and Wastewater (3) (pre: ENV462)  
ENV478 Climates of Southern Africa (2) (pre: ENV342)  
ENV479 Applied Hydrology II (3) (pre: ENV335)  
Combined Major/Major Programme In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, the Major/Major Programme in Physical Environment shall consist of 5 to 6 credits from core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Course ENV485 satisfies Faculty Regulation 23.47. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester.  
Semester 3  
Core Courses  
ENV210 Introduction to the Human Environment I (2)  
ENV213 Introduction to the Physical Environment I (2)  
Optional Courses  
ENV209 Quantitative Techniques for Environmental Science I (3)  
ENV215 Introduction to Spatial Analysis (3)  
Semester 4  
Core Courses  
ENV212 Introduction to the Human Environment II (2)  
Optional Courses  
ENV445 Arid Lands Geomorphology (2) (pre: ENV335)  
ENV451 Rangeland Management II (2) (pre: ENV450)  
ENV452 Soil Survey and Land Evaluation (3) (pre: ENV334/385)  
ENV458 Water Resources Development and Management (2)  
ENV463 Environmental Quality and Management: Water and Wastewater (3) (pre: ENV462)  
ENV478 Climates of Southern Africa (2) (pre: ENV335)  
ENV485 Research Essay (2)  
Combined Minor/Major Programme with Environmental Science as Minor In accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.62, the Major/Major Programme in Physical Environment shall consist of 3 to 4 core and optional courses, with optional courses selected from the following lists. Availability of courses is subject to the staffing situation in the particular semester.  
Semester 5  
Core Courses  
ENV310 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting II (2, all areas) (pre: ENV400)  
Optional Courses  
ENV330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: ENV216)  
ENV331 Hydro-meteorology (2)  
ENV332 Air Photography (3) (pre: ENV215/216)  
ENV334 Principles of Soil Science (3)  
ENV336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)  
ENV337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)  
ENV338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: ENV218)  
ENV340 Biogeography (2)  
ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)  
Semester 6  
Core Courses  
ENV312 Sustainable Development (2) (pre: ENV301)  
ENV336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)  
ENV337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)  
ENV338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: ENV218)  
ENV340 Biogeography (2)  
ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)  
Semester 7  
Core Courses  
ENV301 Environmental Issues (2)  
Optional Courses  
ENV440 Geographical Information Systems (3) (pre: ENV215)  
ENV441 Applied Hydrology I (3) (pre: ENV335)  
ENV442 Boundary Layer Climates (3)  
ENV447 Environmental Hazards (2)  
ENV449 Land Reclamation (3)  
ENV450 Rangeland Management I (3) (pre: ENV350)  
ENV462 Environmental Quality and Management: Land and Air (3) (pre: ENV382)  
ENV475 Pedology (2) (pre: ENV332)  
Semester 8  
Core Courses  
ENV310 Project Data Collection, Analysis and Reporting II (2, all areas) (pre: ENV400)  
Optional Courses  
ENV330 Remote Sensing for Environmental Science (3) (pre: ENV216)  
ENV331 Hydro-meteorology (2)  
ENV332 Air Photography (3) (pre: ENV215/216)  
ENV334 Principles of Soil Science (3)  
ENV336 Advanced Statistical Techniques for Environmental Science (3)  
ENV337 Dynamic Meteorology (3)  
ENV338 Introduction to Geomorphology (3) (pre: ENV218)  
ENV340 Biogeography (2)  
ENV382 Analytical Methods for Specific Hazards (3)  
Semester 9  
Core Courses  
ENV312 Sustainable Development (2) (pre: ENV301)  
Optional Courses  
ENV440 Geographical Information Systems (3) (pre: ENV215)  
ENV441 Applied Hydrology I (3) (pre: ENV335)  
ENV442 Boundary Layer Climates (3)  
ENV447 Environmental Hazards (2)  
ENV449 Land Reclamation (3)  
ENV450 Rangeland Management I (3) (pre: ENV350)  
ENV462 Environmental Quality and Management: Land and Air (3) (pre: ENV382)  
ENV475 Pedology (2) (pre: ENV332)
DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY

Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Geology offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned Degrees:

(a) Single Major Programme, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Geology as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
(b) Combined Major/Minor with a Geology major leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
(c) Combined Major/Minor Programme with Geology and one of Chemistry, Environmental Science and Physics leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulations 2.2
(d) Master of Science Programme leading to the award of a Master of Science Degree in Hydrogeology as per Departmental Regulation 4.0.

Entry Requirements

(a) Admission to the Geology Single Major and Combined Degree Programmes shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulations 23.2.1 and 23.4.
(b) Students who wish to register for Geology (Single Major or Combined Degree) at Level 200 must have taken and passed Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry and Geology or Mathematics, Physics and Chemistry at Level 100.
(c) In accordance with the Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.2.4, a Geology student (Single Major and Combined Degree) can register directly at Level 200 but cannot be exempted from Level 100 Geology courses.
(d) A student admitted to Level 200 Geology who has not completed Level 100 Geology courses must take them during the first semester of Level 200.
(e) A student admitted to Level 200 Geology who has successfully completed Level 100 Geology courses must comply with the University of Botswana Academic General Regulations 00.311 by taking relevant General Education courses or Elective courses in consultation with the Head of Department.

Award of Degree

To be awarded a Bachelor of Science Degree in Geology or a Bachelor of Science for a Combined Degree involving Geology as a subject, a student must satisfy General Academic Regulations 00.85 and 00.9 and Faculty of Science Special Regulation 23.7.

Course Structure

Geology courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the Undergraduate Programme as outlined in Regulations 2.1 to 2.4 below and Levels 600 to 700 for Master of Science candidates.

Level 100

Semester 1

GEO101 Introduction to Geology (4)

Semester 2

GEO102 Introduction to Mineralogy (3)

Levels 200, 300 and 400

Bachelor of Science, Geology Single Major

At Level 200, the Single Major Programme consists of 19 credits of core courses and 9 credits of elective courses from Statistics and Mathematics. In addition, students must take a minimum of 4 credits of General Education Courses.

Semester 3

Core Courses

GEO201 Structural Geology (3)
GEO204 Sedimentology (3)
GEO205 Introduction to Hydrogeology (3)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)
STA113 Basic Statistics (3)

Level 200

At level 200, the Major/Minor programme shall consist of 19 credits of core courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant
Bachelor of Science, Combined Major
Level 200
At level 200, the Major/Major Programme shall consist of 11 credits of core courses for all streams (Geology/Chemistry; Geology/Environmental Science; and Geology/Physics). In addition, the student must take the relevant General Education Courses and comply with Academic General Regulation 00.62

Semester 3
Core Courses
GEO201 Structural Geology (3)
GEO204 Sedimentology (3)
GEO205 Introduction to Hydrogeology (3)

Students who are registering at level 200 and have not taken GEO101 and GEO102 in the first year have to register for these courses at level 200.

Semester 4
Core Courses
GEO202 Optical Mineralogy (2)
GEO203 Photogeology and Remote Sensing Applied to Geology (2)
GEO206 Petrography (3)
GEO207 Chemical Geology (3)

Level 300
At Level 300, the Major/Minor Programme (Geology Major) shall consist of 23 credits. In addition, the students must take relevant General Education Courses.

Long Vacation/Winter Semester
GEO301 Field Mapping (3)

Semester 5
Core Courses
GEO305 Ore Geology (3)
GEO307 Petrology I (2)
GEO312 Research Methods & Computer Applications in Geol. (2)
GEO315 Introduction to Exploration Geophysics (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
GEO304 Advanced Structural Geology (4)
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3)
GEO313 Theoretical Geochemistry (3)
GEO314 Petrology II (2)

Level 400
At Level 400, the Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 15 credits of core courses and at least 2 to 3 credits from optional courses.

Long Vacation/Winter Semester
GEO401 Research Project (Data Acquisition)

Semester 7
Core Courses
GEO401 Research Project (year long)
GEO404 Geology of Africa (3)
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)

Semester 8
Core Courses
GEO401 Research Project (6)
GEO403 Exploration Geochemistry (3) Optional Courses (choose at least 1)
GEO402 Geotectonics (2)
GEO405 Engineering Geology (3)

Bachelor of Science, Combined Major
Level 400
At level 400, the Major/Major Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses and 5 to 6 credits of optional courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant General Education courses and comply with the Faculty of Science General Regulation 00.62

Semester 7
Core course
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)

Semester 8
Optional Courses (choose at least 2)
GEO402 Geotectonics (2)
GEO403 Exploration Geochemistry (3)
GEO405 Engineering Geology (3)

Important Notice for 4th Year Combined Major Students
(a) Students who wish to do a research project in Geology must register for GEO406 (in semester 2).
(b) Students who do not register for GEO406 must register for a project in the other subject.

Bachelor of Science, Combined Major (Geology/Environmental Science)

Semester 5
Core Courses
GEO305 Ore Geology (3)
GEO307 Petrology I (2)

Semester 6
Core Courses
GEO309 Hydrogeology (3)
GEO314 Petrology II (2)

Level 400
At level 400, the Major/Major programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses and 5 to 6 credits of optional courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant General Education courses and comply with the Faculty of Science General Regulation 00.62

Semester 7
Core course
GEO408 Environmental Geology (3)
Semester 6
Core Courses
GEO101  Hydrogeology (3)
GEO314  Petrology II (2)

Level 400
At level 400, the Major/Major programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses and 5 to 6 credits of optional courses. In addition, the students must take the relevant General Education courses and comply with the Faculty of Science General Regulation 00.62.

Semester 7
Core course
GEO404  Geology of Africa (3)
GEO408  Environmental Geology (3)

Semester 8
GEO402  Geotectonics (2)
GEO405  Engineering Geology (3)

Important Notice for 4th Year Combined Major Students
(a) Students who wish to do a research project in Geology must register for GEO406 (in semester 2).
(b) Students who do not register for GEO406 must register for a project in the other subject.

Bachelor of Science, Combined Major/Minor (Geology minor)

The combined Major/Minor programme with Geology as a Minor shall consist of 24 credits of core courses taken in Semesters 3 to 8. Core Courses
GEO101  Introduction to Geology (4)
GEO102  Introduction to Mineralogy (3)
GEO201  Structural Geology (3)
GEO204  Sedimentology (3)
GEO205  Introduction to Hydrogeology (3)
GEO206  Petrography (3)
GEO305  Ore Geology (3)
GEO401  Environmental Geology (3)

It is important to note which courses are taken in the first semester or second semester of the academic year (Refer to Single Major Programme for such information).

Service Courses
The following are offered as service courses for non-Geology Majors
GEO103  Geology for Teachers (3)
GEO109  Introductory Geology for Engineers(2)

General Education Courses
GEC250  Earth Processes, Mineral Resources and Development (2)
GEC251  Groundwater and Society (2)

Assessment and Examination
(a) 2.5.1 If not stated otherwise, the examination will represent 2/3 and the continuous assessment 1/3 of the final marks.
(b) GEO301 shall be examined by continuous assessment only.

Progression
Student progression is made in accordance with The University of Botswana General Academic Regulation 00.9.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS

Programmes and Titles of Degrees

The Department of Mathematics offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:

• Single Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Mathematics as per Departmental Regulation 2.1
• Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Major, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.2
• Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Minor, leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as per Departmental Regulation 2.4. It is stipulated that the student must be registered in the Faculty of Science.

Entry Requirements

Admission to the Mathematics Programmes shall be as specified in Faculty of Science Regulation 23.21.

Single Major (Mathematics Major)
Level 100
Semester 1
MAT111  Introductory Mathematics I (4)

Semester 2
MAT122  Introductory Mathematics II (4)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
MAT211  Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221  Calculus I (3)

Optional Courses (5 credits)
MAT251  Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271  Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
MAT212  Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222  Calculus II (3)

Optional Courses (5 credits)
MAT242  Computing I (3)
MAT244  Numerical Methods (3)
MAT252  Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 5 credits of core courses. An additional 6 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT311  Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT312  Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT321  Real Analysis I (3)
MAT322  Real Analysis II (3)
MAT323  Vector Calculus (3)

Optional Courses (6 credits)
MAT261  Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271  Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)
MAT361  Maths. Programming and Game Theory (3)
MAT371  Mathematical Statistics I (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. An additional 6 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT312  Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322  Real Analysis II (3)
MAT324  Differential Equations (3)
MAT342  Computing II (3)
MAT344  Numerical Methods for Linear Algebra (3)
MAT352  Dynamics I (3)
MAT372  Mathematical Statistics II (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. An additional 6 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62. The project course MAT400 shall run over Semesters 7 and 8.

Core Courses
MAT400  Project (3)
MAT411  Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421  Functions of a Complex Variable (3)

Optional Courses
MAT423  Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425  Measure Theory (3)
MAT431  General Topology (3)
MAT441  Numerical Analysis (3)
MAT451  Dynamics II (3)
MAT453  Electromagnetic Theory (3)
MAT461  Optimisation and Control Theory (3)
MAT471  Multivariate Statistics (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Optional Courses
MAT404 Topics in Advanced Mathematics (3)
MAT412 Number Theory (3)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT422 Functional Analysis (3)
MAT424 Dynamical Systems (3)
MAT426 Partial Differential Equations (3)
MAT432 Algebraic Topology (3)
MAT442 Computational Mathematics (3)
MAT452 Quantum Mechanics (3)
MAT454 Introduction to Fluid Dynamics (3)
MAT462 Mathematical Modelling (3)
MAT472 Linear Models (3)
MAT474 Stochastic Processes (3)
MAT476 Statistical Computing (3)

Combined Major/Minor Programme (Mathematics Major)

Semester 3
In Semester 3, the Combined Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as the Major shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and 3 credits from optional courses.
Core Courses
MAT211 Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 4
In Semester 4, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and 3 credits from optional courses.
Core Courses
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 Calculus II (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT242 Computing I (3)
MAT244 Numerical Methods (3)
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses.
Core Courses
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses.
Core Courses
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT400 Project (3)
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)

Combined Major/Minor Programme

Semester 3
In Semester 3 the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Core Courses
MAT211 Introductory Set & Number Theory (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
Optional Courses
MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)
MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)

Semester 4
In Semester 4, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Core Courses
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 Calculus II (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT242 Computing I (3)
MAT244 Numerical Methods (3)
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Core Courses
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 3 credits of core courses. An additional 3 credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.
Core Courses
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)
Optional Courses
MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)
MAT342 Computing II (3)
MAT344 Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)
MAT352 Dynamics I (3)
MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses. The project course MAT400 shall run over Semesters 7 and 8.
Core Courses
MAT400 Project (3)
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
Optional Courses (3)
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425 Measure Theory (3)
MAT431 General Topology (3)
MAT441 Numerical Analysis (3)
MAT451 Dynamics II (3)
MAT453 Electromagnetic Theory (3)
MAT461 Optimisation and Control Theory (3)
MAT471 Multivariate Statistics (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 9 credits of optional courses.
Optional Courses (3)
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT412 Number Theory (3)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT422 Functional Analysis (3)
MAT424 Dynamical Systems (3)
MAT426 Partial Differential Equations (3)
MAT432 Algebraic Topology (3)
MAT442 Computational Mathematics (3)
MAT452 Quantum Mechanics (3)
MAT454 Introduction to Fluid Dynamics (3)
MAT462 Mathematical Modelling (3)
MAT472 Linear Models (3)
MAT474 Stochastic Processes (3)
MAT476 Statistical Computing (3)
courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62. The project course MAT400 shall run over Semesters 7 and 8.

Core Courses
MAT411 Linear Algebra (3)
MAT421 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)

Optional Courses
MAT361 Maths. Programming and Game Theory (3)
MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3)
MAT400 Project (3)
MAT423 Mathematical Methods (3)
MAT425 Measure Theory (3)
MAT431 General Topology (3)
MAT441 Numerical Analysis (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Optional Courses
MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3)
MAT402 History of Mathematics (3)
MAT414 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
MAT416 Abstract Algebra III (3)
MAT422 Functional Analysis (3)
MAT442 Computational Mathematics (3)
MAT462 Mathematical Modelling (3)

Combined Major/Minor Programme (Mathematics Minor)

Semester 3
In Semester 3, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT211 Introductory Set and Number Theory (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)

Semester 4
In Semester 4, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT212 Introduction to Linear Algebra (3)
MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)
MAT323 Vector Calculus (3)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 3 credits of core courses.

Core Course
MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 3 credits of core courses.

Core Course
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Major/Minor Programme with Mathematics as Minor shall consist of 6 credits of core courses.

Core Courses
MAT322 Real Analysis II (3)
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)

Courses for Non-Mathematics Majors (Service course)
MAT201 Ancillary Mathematics (3)
Engineering Mathematics
MAT191 Design Mathematics I (3)
MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)
MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)
MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3)
MAT391 Engineering Mathematics III (3)
MAT392 Engineering Mathematics IV (3)
MAT394 Engineering Mathematics IVB (3)
MAT491 Engineering Mathematics V (3)
MAT492 Engineering Mathematics VI (3)

Bachelor of Education Degree (Secondary)
In Semesters 5 to 8, students pursuing the Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Programme shall take credits from the following core courses.

Semester 5
MAT381 Calculus for Teachers I (3)
MAT383 Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)
MAT387 Mechanics for Teachers I (3)
MAT389 Linear Programming and Game Theory for Teachers (3)

Semester 6
MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)
MAT384 Computing for Teachers (3)
MAT388 Mechanics for Teachers II (3)

Semester 7
MAT481 Geometry for Teachers I (3)
MAT483 Real Analysis for Teachers (3)
MAT485 Number Theory and Abstract Algebra for Teachers (3)

Semester 8
MAT324 Differential Equations (3)
MAT482 Geometry for Teachers II (3)
MAT484 Introduction to Probability and Statistics for Teachers (3)

Assessment and Examination
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks in the ratio of 1:2, except for the computing courses, where the ratio shall be 1:1. The project course MAT 400 will have 30% of the final mark allocated to the supervisor’s evaluation of the work done, 50% of the final mark allocated to the final report, which will be assessed by two internal examiners and 20% of the final mark allocated to the oral examination.

Progression from Semester to Semester
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a cumulative GPA, which is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

Award of Degree
To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 23.71.

DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

1.0 Departmental Regulations

1.1 General Provisions
Subject to the provisions of General Academic Regulations and the Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

1.2 Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Department of Physics offers the following Programmes leading to the award of the mentioned degrees:

• Single Major Programme leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree in Physics as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.1
• Combined Major/Minor with a Physics Major leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.2
• Combined Major/Major Programme with Physics and another subject other than Physics as Majors leading to the award of a Bachelor of Science Degree as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.3
• Combined Major/Minor with Physics as the Minor leading to the award of the Degree in which the student is enrolled, as/Departmental Regulation 2.3.4
• Master of Science Programme in Physics leading to the award of a Master of Science Degree as/Departmental Regulation 5.0
• MPhil and PhD Programmes in Physics leading to the award of MPhil (Physics) and PhD (Physics) Degrees, respectively, as/Departmental Regulation 6.0.
1.3 Entry Requirements

1.3.1 Admission to the Physics Programmes shall be as specified in the Faculty of Science Regulation 23.21.

1.3.2 To register in Level 300 of the Physics Single Major Programme, a student must have obtained a minimum of a CGPA of 3.0 in Physics courses by the end of Level 200.

1.4 Award of Degree

To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of General Academic Regulation 23.71.

2.0 Programme Structure

2.0.1 The Physics courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programme as outlined in Regulations 2.1 to 2.3 below, Levels 600 to 700 for the Master of Science candidates and Levels 800 and 900 for the MPhil and PhD candidates.

2.0.2 In addition to Physics courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in Physics shall take General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in accordance with General Regulation 00.2124.

2.0.3 The Department of Physics offers service courses in Physics to Non-Physics Majors as outlined in Regulation 2.4.

2.0.4 The Department of Physics offers GECs under Area 5: Science and Technology as outlined in Regulation 2.5.

2.1 Level 100

Semester 1
PHY111 Geometrical Optics, Mechanics, Vibrations and Waves (3)
PHY119 Physics Practicals 1.1 (1)

Semester 2
PHY121 Electricity and Magnetism, Modern Physics (3)
PHY129 Physics Practicals 1.2 (1)

2.2 Level 200

Semester 3
PHY211 Mechanics and Physical Optics (2)
PHY212 Properties of Matter and Thermodynamics (2)
PHY219 Physics Practicals 2.1 (1)

Semester 4
PHY221 Electricity and Magnetism (2)
PHY222 Electronics and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY229 Physics Practicals 2.2 (1)

2.3 Levels 300 and 400

2.3.1 Single Major Programme

Semester 5

In Semester 5, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY311 Mechanics (2)
PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY313 Mathematical Methods for Physics I (2)
PHY314 Electronics I (2)
PHY339 Physics Practicals 3.3 (2)
PHY412 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)

Optional Courses
PHY315 Introduction to Potential Fields in Geophysics (2)
PHY331 Relativity (2)
PHY332 Literature Survey in Physics (2)

Semester 6

In Semester 6, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
PHY323 Vibrations, Waves and Optics (2)
PHY341 Mathematical Methods for Physics II (2)
PHY349 Physics Practicals 3.4 (2)
PHY421 Solid State Physics I (2)

Optional Courses
PHY324 Electronics II (2)
PHY325 Environmental Physics (2)
PHY425 Applied Acoustics (2)

Semester 7

In Semester 7, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY431 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics II (2)
PHY432 Quantum Mechanics II (2)
PHY433 Mathematical Methods for Physics III (2)
PHY438 Research Project in Physics I (2)
PHY439 Physics Practicals 4.3 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY413 Energy Physics (2)
PHY414 Digital and Microprocessor Systems (2)
PHY415 Applied Optics (2)
PHY434 Fluid Dynamics (2)

Semester 8

In Semester 8, the Single Major Programme shall consist of 12 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY422 Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY441 Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY442 Solid State Physics II (2)
PHY443 Mathematical Methods for Physics IV (2)
PHY448 Research Project in Physics II (2)
PHY449 Physics Practicals 4.4 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY423 Introduction to Seismology (2)
PHY424 Radiation Physics (2)
PHY444 Electronics III (2)
PHY445 Atomic Physics (2)

2.3.2 Combined Major/Minor Programme

Semester 5

In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY311 Mechanics (2)
PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY313 Mathematical Methods for Physics I (2)
PHY314 Electronics I (2)
PHY315 Introduction to Potential Fields in Geophysics (2)

Semester 6

In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
PHY329 Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY323 Vibrations, Waves and Optics (2)
PHY324 Electronics II (2)
PHY325 Environmental Physics (2)

Semester 7

In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY431 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics II (2)
PHY432 Quantum Mechanics II (2)
PHY433 Mathematical Methods for Physics III (2)
PHY438 Research Project in Physics I (2)
PHY439 Physics Practicals 4.3 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY413 Energy Physics (2)
PHY414 Digital and Microprocessor Systems (2)
PHY415 Applied Optics (2)
PHY419 Physics Practicals 4.1 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY413 Energy Physics (2)
PHY414 Digital and Microprocessor Systems (2)
PHY415 Applied Optics (2)
PHY418 Project in Physics 4.1 (2)

Semester 8

In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Minor Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses and at least 4 credits from optional courses.

Core Courses
PHY422 Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY441 Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY442 Solid State Physics II (2)
PHY443 Mathematical Methods for Physics IV (2)
PHY448 Research Project in Physics II (2)
PHY449 Physics Practicals 4.4 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY423 Introduction to Seismology (2)
PHY424 Radiation Physics (2)
PHY444 Electronics III (2)
PHY445 Atomic Physics (2)
courses.

Core Courses
PHY421 Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY422 Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY429 Physics Practicals 4.2 (2)

Optional Courses
PHY423 Introduction to Seismology (2)
PHY424 Radiation Physics (2)
PHY425 Applied Acoustics (2)
PHY428 Project in Physics 4.2 (2)

2.3.3 Combined Major/Major Programme

Semester 5
In Semester 5, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses from PHY313, PHY314 and PHY315 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY311 Mechanics (2)
PHY312 Quantum Mechanics I (2)
PHY319 Physics Practicals 3.1 (2)

Semester 6
In Semester 6, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken as optional courses from PHY323, PHY324 and PHY325 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY321 Electromagnetism (2)
PHY322 Thermal Physics (2)
PHY329 Physics Practicals 3.2 (2)

Semester 7
In Semester 7, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken as optional courses chosen from PHY413, PHY414, PHY415 and PHY418 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY411 Atomic and Nuclear Physics (2)
PHY412 Statistical Mechanics and Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY419 Physics Practicals 4.1 (2)

Semester 8
In Semester 8, the Combined Major/Major Programme shall consist of 6 credits of core courses. Additional credits may be taken from optional courses chosen from PHY423, PHY424, PHY425 or PHY428 in accordance with General Regulation 00.62.

Core Courses
PHY421 Solid State Physics I (2)
PHY422 Microcomputing for Physics (2)
PHY429 Physics Practicals 4.2 (2)

2.3.4 Combined Major/Minor Programme (Physics Minor)

Semesters 5 to 8
In Semesters 5 to 8, the Combined Major/Minor (Physics Minor) Programme shall consist of 4 to 5 credits of any of the Physics courses from the core courses or optional courses of the Combined Major/Minor Physics Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.2, in the given semester. To complete the Physics Minor Programme, a candidate must take 4 credits of practical courses, PHY319 or PHY329 at Level 300, and PHY419 or PHY429 at Level 400.

2.4 Service Courses
The following Physics courses are offered as service courses for non-Physics majors.

PHY161 Physics for Nurses (3)
PHY162 Physics Applied to Home Economics (3)
PHY360 Air Pollution Control I (2)
PHY460 Air Pollution Control II (2)

Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Degree
Semesters 5 to 8
In Semesters 5 to 8, students pursuing the Bachelor of Education (Secondary) Degree Programme shall choose credits from the core courses or optional courses of the Combined Major/Minor Physics Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.2, or from the Combined Major/Major Programme as defined in Regulation 2.3.3, in the given semester. The courses chosen must include practical courses PHY319, PHY329, PHY419 and PHY429.

2.5 General Education Courses
The Department of Physics offers the following courses under the Area 5: Science and Technology, with a tag of General Education Courses.

GEC251 Origin of the Universe (2)
GEC252 Energy and Society (2)

3.0 Assessment and Examination
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks in the ratio of 1:2, except for Physics practicals and Physics projects, which will be assessed by continuous assessment only.

4.0 Progression from Semester to Semester
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must maintain a cumulative GPA, which is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

COURSE LISTINGS

Department of Chemistry

100 Level Courses
CHE101 General Chemistry I (4 credits)
Course covers fundamental concepts and principles of chemistry, i.e. the structure of matter, quantitative as well as qualitative aspects of chemistry.

CHE102 General Chemistry II (4 credits)
This is a continuation of CHE101. The fundamental principles associated with properties of chemical systems will be presented.

CHE107 Chemistry Applied to Home Economics (3 credits)
The role that chemistry plays in everyday life will be presented. Atomic structure, periodic table, oxidation and reduction, chemistry of carbon compounds, acids and bases, soaps and detergents, food and energy, fats, carbohydrates, proteins, minerals and vitamins, additives, poisons and toxins, gases, polymers and plastics, cosmetics.

CHE109 Introductory Chemistry for Bachelor of Nursing Science, Bns (3 credits)
Topics include: Structure and bonding, stoichiometry, solutions, chemistry of certain elements, electricity and chemical change, osmosis, reaction rates and catalysis, radioactivity.

200 Level Courses
CHE211 Introduction To Analytical Chemistry (2 credits)
Basic principles of analytical chemistry, concepts of classical and modern methods in analytical chemistry, statistical treatment of experimental data including error analysis and significance tests; Gravimetry, titrimetry, Introduction to analytical spectroscopy and electro analytical chemistry.

CHE213 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory I (1 Credit)
Practical experience in analytical procedures, classical and modern methods of analytical chemistry, an overview of analytical instrumentation and the progress made towards development of analytical methodology, gravimetric analysis, titrimetric analysis, Electro analytical spectrophotometry.

CHE221 Atomic Structure, Bonding and Main Group Chemistry (2 Credits)
Structure of the atom based on elementary quantum theory. Bonding in simple molecules based on molecular orbital and valence bond theories; Trends in periodic properties and chemical reactions of s- and p-block elements.

CHE223 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory I (1 credit)
This course covers qualitative inorganic analysis, the synthesis of a selection of compounds, as well as solution chemistry of main group elements.

CHE232 Structure And Survey Of Functional Groups I (2 credits)
Survey of various functional Groups; Aspects of stereochemistry; Review of alkanes, alkenes and alkynes: addition and substitution reactions. Organic halogen compounds:
CHE324 Organic Chemistry Laboratory I
(1 credit)
Course topics include: Purification and separation of organic compounds-distillation and fractional distillation, crystallization and recrystallization melting point and refractive index determination; Introduction to qualitative analysis of organic compounds; Preparations of simple organic compounds.

CHE242 Introductory Physical Chemistry
(2 credits)
Basic principles of thermodynamics: first, second and third laws of thermodynamics; rates of chemical reactions.

CHE244 Physical Chemistry Laboratory I
(1 credit)
This is an introduction to laboratory techniques in physical chemistry, Experiments dealing with properties of solutions, Calorimetry, thermodynamics, electrochemistry and chemical kinetics.

300 Level Courses
CHE311 Separation Techniques (3 credits)
Introduction to chromatographic separation and detection techniques: Liquid-liquid extraction; column chromatography, TLC, GC and HPLC, Supercritical fluid; Capillary electrophoresis. Detection systems include FID/ECD & thermal conductivity for GC; UV-Vis./ DAD/ fluorescence detector for HPLC. Electrochemical / conductivity detectors for Ion Chromatography.

CHE312 Analytical Spectroscopy (2 credits)
Introduction to spectroscopic methods. Molecular absorption & emission:- UV-visible, IR, phosphorescence, fluorescence, Fourier transform spectroscopy. Atomic absorption & emission techniques; AAS / AES and ICP-MS; NMR and X-ray spectroscopy.

CHE314 Analytical Chemistry Laboratory II
(1 credit)
Introduction to practical aspects of spectroscopic methods of analysis: UV-visible, IR, Fourier transform spectroscopy, GC, HPLC, AAS/AES, etc.

CHE321 Coordination Chemistry
(2 credits)
Introduction to nomenclature, properties and reactions of coordination compounds & complexes; isomerism and magnetic properties. Valence bond and crystal field theories; absorption spectra; field strength; Jahn-Teller effects; covalency and electron delocalization in complexes. Thermodynamics of complex formation. Hard and soft acids and bases. Non-aqueous chemistry. The chemistry of d-block elements and their compounds. Trends in the properties of elements of groups 3 to 12.

CHE322 Group Theory and Organometallic Chemistry (3 credits)
Introduction to group theory and basic knowledge of organo-metallic chemistry. Fundamental concepts of organometallic chemistry; organometallic chemistry of transition elements; catalytic applications of organometallic compounds.

CHE323 Inorganic Chemistry Laboratory II
(1 credit)
Involves use of modern instruments to characterize organic compounds. Synthesis of inorganic compounds and their characterization using various techniques such as NMR, IR and UV-VIS spectroscopy; Reactions of transition elements and their compounds.

CHE331 Structure and Survey of Functional Groups II (3 credits)

CHE332 Physical Organic Chemistry
(2 credits)

CHE333 Organic Chemistry Laboratory III
(1 credit)
Introduction to modern synthetic and characterization methods for organic compounds: Preparation of liquid and solid products then separation, purification and identification by physical and spectroscopic properties- UV, IR and NMR techniques. Chemical and spectroscopic methods in qualitative analysis of organic compounds. Molecular modeling. Simulation of spectra.

CHE334 Applications Of Thermodynamic and Electrochemistry (2 credits)
Introduction to the applications of chemical thermodynamics to solutions and electrochemical processes. Partial molar quantities, thermodynamics of mixing, properties of ideal solutions, non-ideal solutions, activity and activity coefficient, phase diagrams, chemical equilibrium, conductivity, ionic activities, standard potentials, electrochemical cells applications of standard potentials.

CHE342 Quantum Chemistry And Its Applications (3 credits)
Microscopic concepts of physical chemistry. Basic principles of quantum mechanics, postulates, simple quantum mechanical systems (particle in a 1-D and 3-D box), rotational and vibrational energy levels in molecules, rotational, vibrational and electronic spectroscopy, photophysical and photochemical processes in molecules and atoms, photochemical kinetics.
CHE413 Advanced Analytical Chemistry Laboratory (2 credits)
Modern instrumental methods of analysis: atomic absorption (AAS), flame emission, graphite furnace-AAS, inductively coupled plasma-AAS. Sample handling strategies. Micro high performance anion exchange chromatography. Hyphenated techniques; LC-MS, MS-capillary electrophoresis, electrochemistry workstations

CHE416 Environmental Chemistry (2 credits)
Introduction to environmental pollutants and their analysis using local case studies e.g., SO2 emission from the BCL mine; Pesticide analysis, industrial waste management; Selection of safe methods of disposal. Degradation reactions and the dispersal pathways of materials into the environment.

CHE418 Special Topics in Analytical Chemistry (2 credits)
Special topics selected from the following: Application of Analytical Chemistry, Food, Drugs and Forensic Analysis, Chemostatistics and Clinical Analysis.

CHE421 Advanced Transition Metal Chemistry (3 credits)
Advanced topics in transition metal chemistry and introductory bio-inorganic chemistry. Electronic properties of transition metal complexes; magnetic properties of transition metal complexes; inorganic reaction mechanisms; introduction to photo-chemical reactions; f-block chemistry; introduction to bioinorganic chemistry

CHE422 Advanced Organometallic and Solid State Chemistry (3 credits)
Organometallic Chemistry: Main group organometallics; structure and chemistry of (CSH5)2MnL complexes; organometallic chemistry in synthesis; stereocchemically non-rigid molecules; metal clusters and metal-metal bonds; low- and high-nucleity clusters; NMR spectra; Latimer diagrams, oxidation state stability. Solid state chemistry: lattices; crystal packing; ionic structures; crystal defects; metallic bonding; spinels.

CHE423 Advanced Inorganic Laboratory (2 credits)
Physical methods in Inorganic Chemistry: the study of physical and chemical properties of transition metal and organometallic complexes using electronic, infrared, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy techniques as well as optical isomerism, reaction kinetics, and inert atmosphere techniques.

CHE426 Special Topics in Inorganic Chemistry (2 credits)
Selection may be made from the following specialised topics: Nanochemistry, Synthesis of inorganic materials for the fabrication of semiconductors; Molecular orbital calculations; Kinetics and mechanisms of inorganic reactions in solution media; Applied homogeneous catalysis with organometallic compounds; Chemistry and applications of boranes, carboranes and metalaboranes.

CHE431 Heterocyclic Chemistry Synthetic Reactions and Design of Organic Synthesis (3 credits)
Aromaticity and reactions of heterocyclic compounds – furan, pyrrole, thiophene, pyridine, indole, and quinoline. Synthetic reaction, Protective groups; Molecular rearrangements. Design of organic synthesis: introduction to disconnection approach / retrosynthetic analysis.

CHE432 Secondary Metabolites and Biomolecules (2 credits)

CHE433 Advanced Organic Chemistry Laboratory (2 credits)

CHE434 Special Topics in Organic Chemistry (2 credits)
Selection may be made from the following specialised topics: Chemistry of drugs; Chemistry of lipids; Selected natural products; Agrochemicals; Free radicals and photochemistry; Polymer materials

CHE435 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3 credits)

CHE436 Special Topics in Organic Chemistry (2 credits)
Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3 credits)

CHE441 Advanced Physical Chemistry I (3 credits)

CHE442 Advanced Physical Chemistry II (3 credits)
Reaction kinetics, techniques of fast reactions, theories of reaction rates, reaction in solution, composite reactions, chain reactions, explosions, Transport phenomena. Polymers, kinetics of polymerization, osmometry, viscometry, gel-permeation chromatography, TGA, DSC. Introductory polymer processing.

CHE443 Physical Chemistry Laboratory III (2 credits)
Laboratory experiments in polymers, surface and colloid chemistry.

CHE446 Special Topics in Physical Chemistry (2 credits)
Detailed treatment of topics chosen from: solid-state chemistry; irreversible thermodynamics; molecular dynamics; intermolecular forces; atmospheric and/or astrophysical chemistry. CHE452 Senior Research Project (3 credits)
The course involves scientific bench work research. Will comprise a study leading to a written report and shall be based on an original investigation of a chemical problem. To be carried out under the supervision of a member of staff.

CHE470 Excited State Chemistry (2 credits)

Department of Computer Science

2.5 Bsc/BIS Degree Course Details

CSI231 Discrete Mathematics I (3)
Sets, relations and functions Propositional and predicate calculus; Mathematical proofs; Induction; Basic number theory – well-ordering, divisibility and congruence; Discrete probability; Algebraic structures – groups and rings

CSI232 Discrete Mathematics II (2)
pre-req. : CSI231

CSI241 Structured Programming (4)
pre-req.: GEC122
Problem solving with computer: The programming process. High level language programming: data types, input/output, control structures, functions, objects and classes, file I/O; simple data structures like arrays and records. Programme design concepts. Programme testing, debugging and documentation Practical problem-solving exercises.

CSI242 Data Abstraction and Structures (4)
pre-req. : CSI241
Abstraction, decomposition, Abstract Data Types, information hiding; records, sets, arrays, tables, stacks, queues, binary trees, trees, graphs, etc. Object-orientated paradigm; practical application in problem-solving.

CSI252 Operating System Concepts (3)
History, evolution, philosophies, structures of OS systems, introduction to the concepts processes; resource management; virtual machines; scheduling; memory management; file systems; device management, allocation
Machine Organization (3)

Introduction to computer hardware: Computer systems organization; CPU organization; memory organization; I/O devices characteristics. Digital logic circuit; Combinational logic: sequential logic. Data representation; data coding; error detection and correction. Microprogramming based on a simplified machine example; sample macro-architecture. Some examples from Intel-8086 architectures

Networks Fundamentals (2)

Network basic Concepts Data transmissions, Multiplexing, Concentrators; Front-end Controllers line connectors, components of data communications system, network topologies, ISO-OSI reference model, LAN, WAN, Internet; Network Components and Technologies. Installation of networks particularly LAN and WAN Network tools, cables, hubs, and routers, NICs. Practical involving cables preparations etc, network installation. NOS and installation.

Fundamental Systems Concepts; Systems components and relationships; IS in perspective; Information and knowledge economy; Information as an organizational resource; Processing models; IS Architectural Framework: IS infrastructure: Organisations as systems; IS in organizational context; IS Development frameworks: Life cycles and Methodologies; Global IS; Fundamentals of IS for Enterprise: Elements of Socio-economics of of IS. Case studies

File Systems and Data Management (4)

Techniques for storing, accessing, and managing long-term data in computer systems Hardware and software aspects of data processing: processors, storage devices, communications, file I/O control. Techniques for organizing and managing files: DBMS. Data organisation methods in relation to physical database design. Major practical data management systems implementation

Programming Language Translation (3)

The principles and design aspects of programming language translation. Compiler organisation Lexical analysis, Syntax analysis, type checking, code generation, optimisation. Alternative parsing strategies, comparison with respect to time and space trade offs. Grammars and ambiguity Data representation

Decision Support Systems II (3)

Structure of the decision problem DSS Framework and applications: DSS Model Representation, DSS; Data Warehousing, Data marting and Data Mining for DSS; DSS Re-engineering; Modelling and decision support; Decision model construction; Forecasting; Optimisation and Simulation; Group support systems. Model Based Management Systems. DS and IS DSS Development Tools Group DSS; DSS development project

Web Technology and Applications (3)

The Internet, intranet and Web technologies; Systems development; Rapid Applications Development concept; Web application development, architectures, environments, and technologies. Web applications Web Development using Web-authoring tools Database –Web connectivity Scripting languages for Web development; Web application Client/Server technologies Project.

Algorithm Analysis and Design (3)

Measuring algorithm performance: worst case analysis; average case analysis; lower bounds. Techniques of efficient algorithm design: greedy method, dynamic programming graph traversal. Illustration with topics from integer and polynomial arithmetic; matrix multiplication; random number generation; sorting; searching; graph and tree algorithms. Introduction to complexity theory Parallel and Randomized algorithms

Numerical Methods I (3)

Approximation and errors Finite differences Interpolation Solution of linear an non – linear equations. Numerical integration Curve fittings

Programming Languages (3)

Principles of programming language design. A brief history of major developments Procedural and non-procedural paradigms (languages-functional, logic, object-oriented, parallel) Virtual machines and language translation Binding time Sequence control. Representation of data types; data control, sharing, and type checking. Encapsulation Polymorphism Run-time storage management: allocation, recovery, and reuse of storage

Introduction to Software Engineering (3)

The software development process Design objectives. Function oriented and object oriented design methodologies. Documentation Implementation strategies Debugging, anti bugging Introduction to specifications verification, and validation Elementary proof of correctness Code and design reading, structured walkthroughs. Testing strategies Software reliability issues Configuration management. CASE tools Team project assignments

Systems Analysis and Design (3)

General Systems Theory: development life cycle; analysis; description and modelling techniques; Systems development project planning: concepts and tools; System Requirements; design: implementation, changeover and maintenance overview; Documentation; Systems development management; Modern systems development tools, implementation, techniques, and methodologies; Systems Analysis and Design project.

Assembly Language Programming (3)

Assembly language programming Language hierarchy, the assembly-linking process and the role of the OS in assembly level programming. Machine level data structures Assembly language programming techniques: advanced data structures like arrays; advanced I/O. Interrupt handling and introduction to concurrent programming. Use and definition of macros; conditional assembly object modules and linking Assembly/high-level language interface. Run-time considerations

Assembly Computer Architecture (3)

The computer system: interconnection structure; internal & external memory; input/output; relationship between the architecture and the OS. Advance topic in computer organization: pipelining; horizontal vertical microprogramming architecture; microprogramming applications. Alternative architectures; parallel processing; vector processing; RISC vs. CISC

Database Concepts (3)

Principles and concepts of the DBS DBMS architecture Databases and data modelling Services of DBMS Overview of database languages Transactions The relational model. Mapping from a conceptual model to a relational model Database design methodologies The network and hierarchical models. Database Design languages Overview of commercially available systems. Practical work with DBMS

Information Systems Resources Management (3)

Information Systems resources (ISR) ISR Management objectives, responsibilities, principles and environment. IS Management, Control and Maintenance (MCM) concepts IS Management tasks and state models; Tasks at ISR Tasks Management level; IS Control and Maintenance Processes modelling; Organisation of ISR management IS Management
CSI372 Expert Systems (3)  
pre-req.: CSI241  
Expert System technology forward and backward reasoning State space, decompositions and game tree Heuristic search. Plausible reasoning Bayesian probability theory Certainty factors and other approach to uncertainty Knowledge representation (KR) Knowledge acquisition. Hybrid expert systems design. ES development tools ES and database systems. Intelligent data handling

CSI373 Economics of Information Technology (3)  
Economic aspects of IT; systems managers, system users, the IT industry, and national policy-makers; the systems management perspective; performance and capacity, system financing, and price-for-service strategies. Cost/ benefit trade-off and measurement. Impacts of IT industries and markets National issues Global competition Informatics policies, and the role of IT in development

CSI382: Formal languages and Automata (3)  
pre-req.: CSI231 and CSI232  
Theory of formal languages The Chomsky hierarchy of formal grammars and the corresponding automata Finite state automata and regular expressions Deterministic and nondeterministic finite state automata, Criterion for regularity Context-free grammars and push down automata Pumping Lemma for regular and context-free languages Pushdown automata in parsing programming languages Decision problems

CSI392 Human Computer Interaction (3)  
Basic principles and methodology for user interface design, Background of human information processing and human factors. Practical case studies Techniques for user centered analysis and design Prototyping tools. Introduction to Usability Engineering and evaluation methods. Methods for enhancing system usability including systems ergonomics

CSI393 Multimedia Computing (3)  
Multimedia computing concepts and principles; Multimedia computing application, Multimedia computing application packages; Multimedia components - Sound, Graphics, Animation, Video; Understanding multimedia components and developing contents; Web Integration of multimedia components; Visual communication; Database integration of multimedia components.

CSI403 Project I (2)  
Project proposal, Literature review, Systems Analysis and Design It shall be a pre-req. course which must be passed before taking CSI405.

CSI405 Project II (4)  
pre-req.: CSI403  
Continuation of CSI405 covering implementation and full documentation in form of a project report

CSI411 Complexity and Computability theory (3)  
pre-req.: CSI232  
Computational complexity of algorithms Phrases like NP-Complete and NP-Hard have already become common to the lexicon of algorithm designers. Computability, addresses time-honoured issues such as the famous halting problem, and, of course, some of the more interesting variations on the Turing machine theme.

CSI412 Topics in Computer Science (3)  
A selected advanced topic in computer science may be offered depending on the qualification and interest of available teaching staff. This course would be offered in first semester Number of hours/week: 4 lecture hours, or equivalent.

CSI414 Information Interfaces and Presentation (3)  
General: Multimedia IS; Animations Artificial, augmented and virtual realities. Audio I/O; Hypertext Navigation and maps; Video; Users Interfaces; Auditory feedback: Benchmarking; Evaluation/methodology; Graphical user interface (GUI) I/O strategies; Interaction styles Natural language prototyping; Screen design Standardization; Style guides Theory and methods; User-centred design User interface management systems Voice I/O Windowing systems Group and Organization interface: Hypertext/Hypermedia: Sound and Music Computing.

CSI416 Topics in Information Systems (3)  
Selected current topics in Information Systems may be offered depending on the qualification and interest of available teaching staff. This course would be offered in first semester.

CSI421 Operating Systems (3)  
pre-req.: CSI252  
Issues in analyzing, designing and implementing operating systems (OSs) Models of OS structure Processes: models, scheduling. Memory management: allocation techniques, memory protection; virtual memory; paging and segmentation. File System: structure; directories; implementation; security and protection and deadlocks. Distributed OSs: design issues; communications; synchronization; processes and processors. In-depth case studies of implementation of selected Operating Systems.

CSI422 Operations Research (3)  
Operations Research (OR): concepts, tools, techniques, applications in solving practical problems. Topics include: linear programming, parametric programming, dual, post optimal analysis, integer programming, transportation problem, networks, simulation, queuing theory, inventory control and forecasting models. OR packages and their uses

CSI423: Systems Programming (3)  
pre-req.: CSI241  

CSI431 Formal Methods (3)  
Introduction to Formal Methods: Introduction; Rationale for use of formal methods; Review of specification methods; Properties of specifications; Specification classes; Overview of formal method approaches. Mathematical Basis for Formal Methods: Propositional logic; Predicate calculus; Theories and proof systems; Reasoning and proof techniques. Formal Specification using Z : Z notation and structure; Building Z specifications; Functional and data refinement; Proving properties of Z specifications; Use of automated theorem proving tools.

CSI432 Intelligent Interfaces and Systems (3)  
pre-req.: CSI372  
Introduction to Natural Language Processing Natural Language Interfaces The linguistic Application if NLP NLP as a tool for Linguistic Research. Software for Natural Language Systems Comparison between Natural Language Interactive Interfaces and direct manipulation, graphical interfaces

CSI433 Algorithmic Graph Theory (3)  
pre-req.: CSI322  
Graph Algorithms: depth first search, breadth first search, connected components, topological sorting, shortest path algorithm, network flow, string searching, parallel computation, graph partitioning, and graph isomorphism.

CSI434 Knowledge Management Systems (3)  
pre-req.: CSI362  
Knowledge systems theoretical foundations infrastructure enabling technologies, emerging applications and management Knowledge-based Economy; Knowledge Management systems; Types of knowledge Technologies KM technical infrastructure; Data Warehousing Data Mining and Knowledge delivery Systems; Knowledge modeling; Application of AI technologies in KMS development; Case studies;

CSI441 Software Engineering (3)  
pre-req.: CSI341  
Conventional development Requirements analysis architectural high-level design, implementation testing maintenance Formal development Project planning and control
Metrics and measurement Software reliability modelling AI/KBS approaches environments AI/KBS development techniques Principles of object-oriented systems Prototyping Software reuse

CSI442 Artificial Intelligence (3)  
pre-req.: CSI372  

CSI451 Knowledge Engineering (3)  
pre-req.: CSI372  
The facility of KE and problem solving – an overview Fuzzy sets and fuzzy operations Fuzziness and probability. Fuzzy systems Neural Networks Theoretical and Computational models Real and artificial neurons Fuzzy neurons and fuzzy neural networks NN for Knowledge Engineering and problem solving NN as a problem solving paradigm Hybrid Symbolic and Fuzzy Systems

CSI452 Computer Simulation (3)  
pre-req.: CSI331 and MAT271  
Models, model development, verification, and validation; Simulation Study; Discrete and Continuous Probability distributions Linear congruential method for generating uniform random numbers; Tests for uniformity and independence; Inverse transform technique, Acceptance-rejection technique ; Student, Chi-square and Kolmogorov-Smirnov tests, Covariance and Correlation, ANOVA; Testing for significance of regression.

CSI461 Computer Communications Networks Management (4)  
pre-req.: CSI272  

CSI462 Distributed Systems (3)  
pre-req.: CSI411 and CSI361  
Design issues of Distributed Systems (DS), Architecture, design, and implementation of DS. Comparison of DS to PCs and centralized systems. Performance security and reliability issues Process communication: IPC, remote procedure calls (RPC), java communications, transactions; processing and concurrency control. Naming, security, Distributed file system, replication, shared memory, distributed algorithms and message passing.

CSI471 Object Oriented Systems Development (3)  
pre-req.: CSI241  
Object-orientation paradigm; analysis design, OO databases; Software reusability Abstraction Polymorphism Object messages and encapsulation Classes, inheritance, and class categories Foundations and collection classes Iconic user interfaces. Design and implementation Survey of Object Oriented features of programming languages, modelling database and knowledge – based systems.

CSI472 Social Issues of Information Technology (3)  
Historical development and transfer of Science and Technology of computing; Social context of computing; Perspectives to computer systems development; Risks and liabilities of computer-based systems; intellectual property; Privacy and civil liberties; Computer crime; Ethics and professionalism issues; IT in socio-economic development: Computing technology transfer to Developing countries. Case studies

CSI481 – Database Systems (3)  
pre-req.: CSI362  
Database systems development framework, Planning; Logical and Physical DB design Query processing. Backup and recovery Concurrency Management; Performance tuning, DB security, integrity and control. DBS architectural frameworks: Client/Server, Distributed and parallel DBS. Object-oriented DB KB and DBS Intelligent Data and DBA; Data Warehouse DB Design; Web-DBS; DB Programming languages Current topics

CSI482 Information Systems Engineering (3)  
pre-req.: CSI362  
Information Systems(ISs) Engineering principles; Design for ISs; IS architectural (ISA): frameworks,models, and concepts; ISSStrategies, Planning; Methodologies; IS Requirements Engineering; IS Engineering; Enterprise IS Integration: Framework, dimensions, and impacts; Legacy IS re-engineering; Data Warehouse systems engineering; Web-based systems engineering; IS Engineering impacts assessment; . Practical I

CSI484 National Information Systems Infrastructure (3)  
IS Technology (IST) and techno-economic development; National IST (NIST); Components and Perspectives; IT structure and System. Human capital economic growth, and policy; National development vision versus IST infrastructure vision Models to Strategic thrusts: E-Governance; IST culture issues; Telecommunications regulation. Legislative framework for IST; translating vision to reality, thrusts to action; Case studies

CSI491 Pattern Recognition (3)  
pre-req.: CSI372  
Introduction to Pattern Recognition Statistical Decision theory, Image processing and Analysis. Pattern recognition models Pattern Recognition Design Methodology. NN for Pattern recognition Pattern Recognition implementation – interactive systems, special architectures Pattern recognition applications – computer vision, signal processing, text processing etc.

CSI493 Computer Graphics I (3)  
pre-req.: CSI241  
Computer Graphics (CG), Image Analysis(A) vs. CG. Hardware devices Software packages 2D-Graphics; homogenous coordinates, Transformations, Clippings 3D-Graphics 2D screens, projection Realism (basic illumination models, primary and secondary effects.

CSI494 Computer Graphics II (3)  
pre-req. : CSI493  
Colour Models and Colour Applications; Modelling in 3D; Surface Rendering; Lighting effects; Computer Animation; Interaction; Computer Graphics in Scientific Visualization; Graphics on the World Wide Web; Graphics and multimedia systems.

GEC Area 2  
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills for Degree Students I (2)  
Hardware and software systems concepts and principles OS and file management basics Applications areas of computers; Data Communications and network systems; Internet and Electronic mails basics; Computers and society issues; Information skills and organisation Information need, and sources Security and legal issues. Problem-solving with computers Practical laboratory exercises.

GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills for Degree Students II (2)  
pre-req.: GEC121  
Advanced operating systems file management; Spreadsheet and database management; Use of basic spreadsheet application package facilities; Basic database application package facilities; Principles of problem-solving with computers. Design and specification with pseudo-code and other tools; evaluating information sources; Practical

GEC 221 Information Management Skills (2)  
pre-req.: GEC122  
Word processing and database management; application package facilities; DB application package facilities; problem-solving methods Data communication and network systems Evaluating information sources; Electronic information resources. Information management using intermediate to advanced Database management; Electronic information communications Topic analysis; integrated information management.

GEC222 Problem-Solving with Spreadsheet (2)  
pre-req.: GEC122  
Problem solving concepts and principles Spreadsheet problem-solving methodology: Problem-specification and solution design. Advanced Spreadsheet features. Survey of Spreadsheet application domains Spreadsheet application Practical problem-solving using spreadsheet facilities Further information skills: Electronic information sourcing and evaluation; Information synthesis; Practical
lab exercises.

GEC 223 Web Application Skills (2)  
pre-req.: GEC122  
The Internet and Web technologies; Systems development Web Application development cycle; Web-Based Systems, structure and applications; Survey of Web application development tools and use; HTML components and syntax; Web planning, design using programmatic (e.g. scripting) and non-programmatic approaches; Use of tables and pictures; Validation and verification, error checking; Qualities of a good web site; Static versus Dynamic web concepts; Practical

GEC321 Multimedia Information  
Presentation Skills (2)  
pre-req.: GEC122  
Multimedia information resources; Use of facilities in appropriate Presentation application packages Integrated use of presentation application packages with related application packages (e.g. Word processing, Spreadsheet, and Database packages).Advanced information skills: Topic analysis - Information needs analysis and problem definition; Use of advanced electronic information resources.

Department of Mathematics

MAT111 Introductory Mathematics I (4)  
Basic algebra; Introduction to functions; Trigonometry; Series; Induction; Complex numbers; Permutations and combinations.

MAT122 Introductory Mathematics II (4)  
Calculus; Co-ordinate geometry; Vectors.

MAT191 Design Mathematics I (3)  
Basic Algebra; Trigonometry, Statistics.

MAT192 Design Mathematics II (3)  
Co-ordinate Geometry; Matrices and Determinants; Calculus.

MAT201 Ancillary Mathematics (3)  
Linear algebra; Calculus; Probability and statistics.

MAT211 Introductory Set And Number Theory (3)Logic; Sets; Relations; Integers; Modular Arithmetic.

MAT212 Introductory Linear Algebra (3)  
Linear equations; Matrices; Vector spaces; Transformations; Eigenvectors.

MAT 221 Calculus I (3)  
Techniques of integration; Applications of integration; Improper integrals; Generalized mean value theorem; Taylor’s theorem; Differential equations; Sequences and series.

MAT 222 Calculus II (3)  
Power series; Conic sections; Differential calculus; Multiple integrals.

MAT 242 Computing I (3)  
Elements of programming; Procedures and subroutines; Structured design; Introduction to modularization.

MAT244 Numerical Methods (3)  
Computer arithmetic; Numerical approximation and integration.

MAT251 Vectors and Introductory Mechanics (3)  
Vectors; Vector calculus; Particle motion in a straight line; Newton’s laws of motion; Kinematics; Dynamics in space; Statistics.

MAT252 Newtonian Mechanics (3)  
Work, power and energy; Momentum; Simple harmonic motion; Statics of rigid bodies; Centre of gravity; Dynamics of a rigid body.

MAT271 Introduction to Mathematical Statistics (3)  
Sample space and probability function; Distributions of random variables; Expectations; Normal distribution; Applications of t, chi-square and F distributions; Sampling distributions; Statement of central limit theorem; Confidence intervals and testing of hypothesis.

MAT291 Engineering Mathematics I (3)  
Determinants and matrices; Application of derivatives; Number sequences and series; Partial derivatives; Application of integration.

MAT292 Engineering Mathematics II (3)  
Ordinary differential equations; Statistics; Probability; Binomial, Poisson and normal distributions.

MAT311 Abstract Algebra I (3)  
Groups; Factor groups; Homomorphisms; Rings.

MAT312 Abstract Algebra II (3)  
Group actions; p-groups; Rings; Fields.

MAT 321 Real Analysis I (3)  
The real number system; Sequences of real numbers; Series; Functions; Continuity; Differentiability; Integration.

MAT 322 Real Analysis II (3)  
Introduction to R^n as a metric space; Differentiation in R^n; Power series; Integration in R^n.

MAT 323 Vector Calculus (3)  
Vectors and applications to lines and planes; Curves and surfaces; Differentiation and integration of vector functions; The divergence theorem and Stoke’s theorem.

MAT324 Differential Equations (3)  
Second order linear differential equations; Power series solutions to ordinary differential equations; Systems of differential equations; Boundary value problems for ordinary differential equations and partial differential equations.

MAT342 Computing II (3)  
Recursion, pointers and linked lists; Object oriented programming; Dynamic memory allocation; Mathematical usage of objects and modules.

MAT344 Numerical Methods of Linear Algebra (3)  
Direct and iterative methods for solving systems of linear equations; Numerical methods for computation of eigenvalues and eigenvectors of matrices.

MAT352 Dynamics I (3)  
Central forces, systems of particles, variable mass; Non-inertial frames; Rigid body motion; Lagrangian and Hamiltonian dynamics.

MAT361 Mathematical Programming and Game Theory (3)  
Graphical solution for linear programming; Simplex method and new developments; K-1 condition and basic methods for non-linear programming; Linear programming method for two person zero-sum games.

MAT371 Mathematical Statistics I (3)  
Review of probability; Distributions of random variables; Conditional distributions; Normal, gamma, t, chi-square and F distributions; Different modes of convergence; Limiting distributions; Introduction to estimation theory and hypothesis testing.

MAT372 Mathematical Statistics II (3)  
Estimation theory; Classical methods of estimation versus Bayes estimation; Theory of uniformly powerful tests and likelihood ratio tests; Introduction to linear models; Linear regression and ANOVA models.

MAT381 Calculus for Teachers I (3)  
Differentiation; Integration.

MAT382 Calculus for Teachers II (3)  
Complex numbers; Differential equations; Partial differentiation.

MAT383 Linear Algebra for Teachers (3)  
Linear equations; Matrices; Transformations; Vectors; Geometric equations.

MAT384 Computing for Teachers (3)  
Introduction to computing; Basics of programming; laboratory exercises.

MAT387 Mechanics for Teachers I (3)  
Vectors; Co-ordinate systems; Kinematics; Velocity; Acceleration; Projectiles; Relative motion and circular motion.

MAT388 Mechanics for Teachers II (3)  
Newton’s law of motion; Momentum and impulse; Conservation of momentum; Work, power and energy; Simple harmonic motion. MAT389 Linear Programming and Game Theory For Teachers (3)  
Mathematical formulation of linear programming (LP) problem; Graphical method; The simplex procedure and other techniques; Game theory; Two-person games; Zero-sum
games; Mixed strategies; Graphical solution; The best mixed strategy as an LP problem.

MAT431 Engineering Mathematics III (3)
Laplace transforms; Vector analysis; Interpolation; Numerical solution of differential equations; Fourier series representation of periodic functions.

MAT432 Linear Algebra (3)
Vector spaces; Linear transformations; Eigenvalues and eigenvectors; Inner product spaces; Multilinear algebra.

MAT433 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
Graphs; Planar graphs; Paths; Directed graphs; Networks; Matchings.

MAT434 Abstract Algebra III
Group theory; Field theory.

MAT435 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
The elementary functions; Analytic functions; Series; Calculus of residues; Introduction to conformal mappings and analytic continuation.

MAT436 Functional Analysis (3)
Normed linear spaces; Inner product spaces; Fundamental theorems for normed linear spaces; Applications.

MAT437 Mathematical Methods (3)
Laplace transforms and applications; Fourier series; Fourier transforms and applications; Classification of partial differential equations; Boundary value problems.

MAT438 Dynamical Systems (3)
Periodic attractors; Stability and bifurcations; Chaos and chaotic attractors.

MAT439 Measure Theory (3)
Measure spaces; Measurable functions; Integration; Spaces of functions; Product measures.

MAT440 Partial Differential Equations (3)
Initial boundary problems for parabolic, elliptic and hyperbolic equations.

MAT441 General Topology
Topological spaces; Bases and sub-bases; Continuous mappings; Hausdorff spaces; Compact spaces; Connected spaces.

MAT442 Algebraic Topology (3)
Homotopy theory; Homology theory; Categories and functors.

MAT443 Numerical Analysis (3)

MAT444 Computational Mathematics (3)
Symbolic calculations with a computer; Automatic symbolic differentiation and integration; Symbolic solution of differential equations; Approximation of functions with a computer.

MAT445 Dynamics II (3)
Further work on systems of particles; Lagrangian and Hamiltonian dynamics; Variational principles; Canonical transforms; Hamilton-Jacobi theory.

MAT446 Quantum Mechanics (3)
Quantumization rules; Application to the hydrogen atom; Schrödinger wave equation; Poisson brackets and commutation relations; The uncertainty principle.

MAT447 Electromagnetic Theory (3)
Electric field; Electric currents in linear conductors; Biot-Savart law; Magnetic field; Hamilton-Jacobi theory.

MAT448 Linear Algebra (3)
Vector spaces; Linear transformations; Eigenvalues and eigenvectors; Inner product spaces; Multilinear algebra.

MAT449 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
Graphs; Planar graphs; Paths; Directed graphs; Networks; Matchings.

MAT451 Abstract Algebra III
Group theory; Field theory.

MAT452 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
The elementary functions; Analytic functions; Series; Calculus of residues; Introduction to conformal mappings and analytic continuation.

MAT453 Functional Analysis (3)
Normed linear spaces; Inner product spaces; Fundamental theorems for normed linear spaces; Applications.

MAT454 Mathematical Methods (3)
Laplace transforms and applications; Fourier series; Fourier transforms and applications; Classification of partial differential equations; Boundary value problems.

MAT455 Dynamical Systems (3)
Periodic attractors; Stability and bifurcations; Chaos and chaotic attractors.

MAT456 Measure Theory (3)
Measure spaces; Measurable functions; Integration; Spaces of functions; Product measures.

MAT457 Partial Differential Equations (3)
Initial boundary problems for parabolic, elliptic and hyperbolic equations.

MAT458 General Topology
Topological spaces; Bases and sub-bases; Continuous mappings; Hausdorff spaces; Compact spaces; Connected spaces.

MAT459 Algebraic Topology (3)
Homotopy theory; Homology theory; Categories and functors.

MAT460 Numerical Analysis (3)

MAT461 Computational Mathematics (3)
Symbolic calculations with a computer; Automatic symbolic differentiation and integration; Symbolic solution of differential equations; Approximation of functions with a computer.

MAT462 Quantum Mechanics (3)
Quantumization rules; Application to the hydrogen atom; Schrödinger wave equation; Poisson brackets and commutation relations; The uncertainty principle.

MAT463 Electromagnetic Theory (3)
Electric field; Electric currents in linear conductors; Biot-Savart law; Magnetic field; Hamilton-Jacobi theory.

MAT464 Linear Algebra (3)
Vector spaces; Linear transformations; Eigenvalues and eigenvectors; Inner product spaces; Multilinear algebra.

MAT465 Combinatorics and Graph Theory (3)
Graphs; Planar graphs; Paths; Directed graphs; Networks; Matchings.

MAT466 Abstract Algebra III
Group theory; Field theory.

MAT467 Functions of a Complex Variable (3)
The elementary functions; Analytic functions; Series; Calculus of residues; Introduction to conformal mappings and analytic continuation.

MAT468 Functional Analysis (3)
Normed linear spaces; Inner product spaces; Fundamental theorems for normed linear spaces; Applications.
Faculty of SOCIAL SCIENCES

DEAN
Prof. H. K. Siphambe, BA (UB), MA (Western Michigan), PhD (Manitoba)

DEPUTY DEAN
R.G. Majelantle, BA (UB), PGDipPop-Stud (Rips, Ghana), MA (Pennsylvania)

FACULTY ADMINISTRATORS
M. B. Maje, BA PGDE (UB), MEd (Birmingham)
M.P. Ntshebo, BA(UB), MSc HRM (Salford)
Faculty of Social Sciences

Introduction
The Faculty of Social Sciences comprises the following Departments:
- Economics
- Law
- Political and Administrative Studies
- Population Studies
- Psychology
- Social Work
- Sociology
- Statistics.

Programmes of Study
Until recently, the Faculty concentrated mainly on its Combined Major Programmes, which allows students to choose any 2 areas of study from the Departments mentioned above, i.e. Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences (BASS), and with special permission, from courses offered by other Faculties or Departments, e.g. Environmental Science and Accounting.

However, in order to more effectively meet the demand for fully trained Social Scientists, the Faculty has been trying to activate its Single Major Programmes to provide for specialisation in particular areas. During the academic year 1981/82, the Faculty changed its Year 1 and Year 2 Programmes from the unit to the subject system. With the introduction of the subject system, students in the Faculty are still being provided with the facility of electing 1 of their majors as Environmental Science, and Accounting (Faculty of Business). Furthermore, in response to the growing need for middle-level manpower, the Departments of Population Studies, Social Work, Sociology and Statistics offer Programmes leading to the Diploma in Social Sciences.

Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences
24.00 General Regulations of the University shall apply.
24.01 Failure, without good cause, to deliver an assignment within the first 24 hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the assignment before the end of the week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

Bachelor of Arts in Economics Degree Programme

Special Departmental Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts in Economics (Combined Degree and Economics Minor)

Entry Requirements
Subject to the provisions of General Regulation 20.20, at least a credit in Mathematics shall be required for all students intending to take Economics as a Major or Minor subject. Alternative qualifications may be accepted as per General Academic Regulation 20.24b. Requirements for entry into the Bachelor of Arts (Economics) Degree Programme are determined by the Department of Economics Board and may vary from year to year. The Department offers Economics as a Single Major Bachelor of Arts (Economics) Degree, a Combined Major (Major/Major) Degree for the BASS and other Degrees, and a Minor in Economics. Students majoring in other subjects may take courses in Economics provided the pre-requisites are satisfied.

Single Major Programme
Students intending to take Economics as a Single Major shall take and pass the following courses:

Level 100
Core Courses
Semester 1
- ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
- STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
- STA116 Introduction to Statistics (3)
Semester 2
- ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
- STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)

Social Sciences II (3)

Level 200
Core Courses
Semester 1
- ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
- ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)
Semester 2
- ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
- ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)

Level 300
Core Courses
Semester 1
- ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
- ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
- ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)
- ECO341 Econometrics I (3)
- ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (3)
Semester 2
- ECO312 Microeconomics II (3)
- ECO322 Macroeconomics II (3)
- ECO332 Mathematics for Economists II (3)
- ECO342 Econometrics II (3)
- ECO465 History of Economic Thought (3)

Level 400
Core Courses
Semester 1
- ECO431 Research Methods in Economics (3)
- Plus: 4 Optional Courses.
Semester 2
- ECO432 Project in Applied Economics (3, core)
- Plus: 4 Optional Courses.

Optional Courses
- ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Majors
- ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors
- ECO411 Development Economics
- ECO412 Development Problems and Policy
- ECO421 International Trade
- ECO422 International Finance
- ECO441 Economics of Agriculture
- ECO442 Agricultural Policy and Rural Development
- ECO451 Environmental Economics

174
ECO452 Resource Economics
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa
ECO465 History of Economic Thought
ECO466 Public Finance
ECO467 Labour Economics
ECO468 Industrial Economics
ECO469 Money and Banking
ECO473 Financial Economics
ECO474 Health Economics
ECO475 Transport Economics

NB: ECO221 and ECO222 are not available for Students taking Economics as a Major.

NB: Students in Levels 300 and 400 may take any of the above-listed optional courses provided they satisfy the pre-requisites.

**Combined Major Programme**

Students intending to take Economics as a Combined Major shall take and pass the following courses:

**Level 100**
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)
STA116 Introduction to Statistics (3)

Semester 2
ECO112 Basic Macroeconomics (3)
STA102 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences II (3)
STA121 Elements of Probability (3)

**Level 200**
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
ECO231 Intermediate Mathematics for Economists (3)

Semester 2
ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
ECO232 Intermediate Statistics for Economists (3)

**Level 300**
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO311 Microeconomics I (3)
ECO321 Macroeconomics I (3)
ECO331 Mathematics for Economists I (3)

Semester 2
ECO312 Microeconomics II (3)
ECO322 Macroeconomics II (3)
ECO332 Mathematics for Economists II (3)

**Level 400**
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO341 Econometrics I (3)
ECO463 Economics of Botswana and Southern Africa (3)
Plus one Optional Course

Semester 2
ECO342 Econometrics II (3)
Plus: 2 Optional Courses.

**Minor in Economics**

Students intending to take Economics as a Minor subject shall take and pass the following courses:

**Level 100**
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

**Level 200**
Core Courses
Semester 1
ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
STA101 Mathematics for Business and Social Sciences I (3)

**Level 300 and 400**

Students are required to take 2 Optional Courses.

**Assessment**

The continuous assessment (CA) of each course will normally include at least 2 components as outlined in the General Academic Regulation 00.811. These 2 components will normally be in written form. However, non-written presentations will count for no more than 10 percent of the CA. The CA will count for 40 percent of the total assessment while the final examination will count for 60 percent of the total assessment. This applies to all courses except ECO432 (Project in Applied Economics).

**Research Proposal**

All students taking ECO431 Research Methods in Economics shall write a research proposal that shall be graded, and there shall be no final examination for that course. The proposal for this course will normally be used as a basis for ECO432 Project in Applied Economics.

Progression from one Semester to Semester Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulations 00.9

---

**DEPARTMENT OF LAW**

The Department of Law offers programmes and courses leading to the award of the following qualifications:

- Bachelor of Laws (LLB)
- Master of Laws (LLM)

**Bachelor of Laws (LLB) Degree**

**Entry Requirements**

1. The normal requirement for admission to the Bachelor of Laws degree programme shall be the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) obtained at one sitting with a minimum of five credits, one of which shall be in English language, or an equivalent qualification.

2. An applicant in possession of a Diploma in Law from this University, obtained with a minimum classification of a credit, or an equivalent qualification shall also be eligible for admission to the LLB programme.

3. Subject to Academic General Regulation 00.4, a student admitted to the LLB programme with a Diploma in Law shall be exempted from taking Levels 100 and 200 courses on the LLB programme designated by the Departmental Board as equivalent to courses passed under the Diploma in Law Programme and shall be allocated comparable credits under the LLB programme for the exemptions. A student admitted to the LLB programme with a Diploma in Law will not normally be entitled to register for courses offered at levels 300, 400 and 500 of the LLB programme before completing and accumulating credits for levels 100 and 200 Core, Optional, Electives and General Education Courses.
Duration
The normal duration for the LLB degree programme shall be ten (10) semesters on a full-time basis. Students entitled to exemptions in terms of Academic General Regulations, Faculty and Special Departmental Regulations may however complete the programme within a shorter period which, for students with a Diploma in Law, may not be less than six (6) semesters on a full-time basis.

Programme Structure
1. The LLB programme shall consist of specified Core (C) and Optional (O) courses in the principal subject Law offered at Levels 100 to 500, and Electives (E) and General Education Courses (GEC) in other subject areas offered at comparable levels.
2. Students shall normally be required to take and complete credits for the Core courses in the manner and sequence indicated in the programme structure. The Core courses at each level and semester from Levels 100 to 400 have generally been designed and arranged to prepare LLB students for other Core courses at each successive higher level.
3. Optional courses on the LLB programme shall be offered subject to optimal student and approval of the Departmental Board.
4. Subject to changes approved from time to time, LLB courses shall be arranged as follows:-

Level 100
Semester 1
GEC111 Communication and Study Skills (2)
GEC121 Computer and Information Skills Fundamentals I (2)
LAW131 Introduction to Law (3)
LAW132 Comparative Legal History and Systems (3)
LAW133 Law of Persons (3)
GEC / Elective (4)
Total Number of Credits 17

Semester 2
GEC112 Communication and Study Skills II (2)
GEC122 Computer and Information Skills Fundamentals II (2)
LAW106 Customary Law (3)
LAW134 Family Law (3)
LAW135 Law and Social Research Methods (2)
GEC / Elective (4)
Total for Number of Credits 16

Level 200
Semester 3
LAW231 Criminal Law, General Principles (3)
LAW232 Delict, General Principles (3)
LAW233 Contract Law (4)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
GEC / Elective (2)
Total Number of Credits 15

Semester 4
LAW235 Specific Offences in Criminal Law (3)
LAW236 Specific Delicts (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
LAW201 Introduction to Property Law (3)GEC / Elective (4)
Total Number of Credits 16

Level 300
Semester 5
LAW202 Land and Mineral Resources Law (3)
LAW331 Civil Procedure and Practice (4)
LAW332 Evidence (4)
LAW333 Criminal Procedure (3)
LAW334 Employment Law (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Semester 6
LAW335 Sale, Lease and Credit Agreements (3)
LAW336 Negotiable Instruments and Banking Law (3)
LAW337 Labour Relations Law (3)
LAW338 Law and the Environment (3)
LAW339 Succession and Administration of Estates (2)
And one of
LAW340 Insurance and Agency Law (3)
LAW217 Insolvency and Secured Transactions (3)
LAW218 Tax Law in Botswana (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 7
LAW431 Public International Law I (3)
LAW432 Jurisprudence (4)
LAW433 Clinical Legal Education I (4)
LAW434 Law of Business Associations I (3)
And One of
LAW439 Gender and the Law (3)
LAW440 Law and the Media (3)
LAW441 Law and Health Care (3)
LAW442 Social Security Law (3)
Elective (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Semester 8
LAW435 Public International Law II (3)
LAW436 Clinical Legal Education II (4)
LAW437 Human Rights Law (3)
LAW438 Law of Business Associations II (3)
And one of
LAW439 Gender and the Law (3)
LAW440 Law and the Media (3)
LAW441 Law and Health Care (3)
LAW442 Social Security Law (3)
Elective (3)
Total Number of Credits 16

Level 500
Semester 9
LAW531 Clinical Legal Education III (4)
LAW532 Conveyancing Principles and Practice (4)
LAW535 Research Paper (3)
And at least two of
LAW536 International Moot (3)
LAW537 Private International Law I (3)
LAW538 International Organizations (3)
LAW539 International Business Transactions (3)
LAW540 Intellectual Property Law I (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Semester 10
LAW533 Introduction to Notarial Practice (4)
ACC407 Accounting for Lawyers (4)
And at least three of
LAW536 International Moot (3)
LAW541 Intellectual Property Law II (3)
LAW542 International Trade Law (3)
LAW538 International Organizations (3)
LAW543 Private International Law II (3)
LAW539 International Business Transactions (3)
Total Number of Credits 17

Minimum Total Credits for the Programme: 165 Credits

Award of Degree
A student shall be eligible for the award of the LLB degree upon completion of a minimum of 165 credits from the Core, Optional, Electives and GECs indicated in the programme structure.

Assessment
1. The following Special Regulations shall supplement Academic General Regulations and Faculty of Social Sciences Regulations on assessment and grading of law courses on the
LLB programme.
2. Except for courses LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods; LAW433, Clinical Legal Education I; LAW436, Clinical Legal Education II; LAW531, Clinical Legal Education III; LAW535, Research Paper; and LAW536, International Moot, each Core and Optional course on the LLB programme shall be assessed through continuous assessment and a formal written examination taken at or before the end of the semester.

Continuous Assessment
1. Continuous assessment shall consist of at least two or more of the following pieces of work: written assignments, written tests, oral tests, mock trials, moots, class or seminar exercises, practicals, projects, research exercises or independent study.
2. Except for the courses LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods; LAW433, Clinical Legal Education I; LAW436, Clinical Legal Education II; LAW531, Clinical Legal Education III; LAW535, Research Paper; and LAW536, International Moot, the ratio between continuous assessment and the formal examination in law courses shall be 2:3.
3. Law and Social Research Methods, LAW135, Law and Social Research Methods, shall be assessed through at least two or more pieces of continuous assessment work. Each piece of continuous assessment work shall be marked and shall contribute towards the final mark of 100 per cent for the course.
4. Clinical Legal Education Courses I to III shall be assessed as follows:
   a) LAW 433 Clinical Legal Education I
      1. Participation in seminars and written assignments - 30%
      2. Oral examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 20%
      3. End of semester examination - 50%
      Total 100%
    b) LAW 436 Clinical Legal Education II
      1. Oral Examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 40%
      2. Moot/Mock trial documents and performance - 60%
      Total 100%
    c) LAW 531 Clinical Legal Education III
      1. Internship Report - 30%
      2. Moot/mock trial documents and performance - 50%
      Total 100%
3. Oral examination on work performed in the Legal Clinic - 20%
   Total 100%

International Moot
The Course Laws536, International Moot, shall be assessed as follows:
1. Documents prepared for the Moot - 60%
2. Advocacy skills in the Moot - 40%
Total 100%

Research Paper
The final version of the research paper in course LAW535 shall be submitted for examination by the relevant date and marked out of 100 per cent. A student who fails to submit the research paper for examination by the relevant date shall be awarded an incomplete Grade (I) in accordance with Academic General Regulation 00.844. Delay and Failure to Submit Continuous Assessment Work Subject to Special Departmental Regulations 3.6.4 and 3.65, failure without good cause to submit continuous assessment work within twenty-four hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 5 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within forty-eight hours of the due date shall carry a penalty of 50 percentage marks. Failure to submit the work within one week from the due date shall incur a zero mark.

Formal Examinations
Formal written examinations for Core and Optional law courses on the LLB programme shall be of the type and for the duration approved by the Departmental Board and indicated in the course outline or at the beginning of each course.

Service Courses
Subject to optimal student demand and the availability of staff and other resources, the Department of Law shall offer the following courses at levels 100 to 600 to students not registered for law programmes.

Level 100
GEC277 Law and Society in Botswana (2 sem 1 or 2)
LAW151 Law and Social Work (4 sem 1)

Level 200
LAW251 Foundations of Business Law (3, Sem 1)
LAW252 Specific Business Transactions (4, Sem 2)

LAW253 Foundations of Engineering Law (3, Sem 3)

Level 300
LAW351 Introduction to Company Law (4, Sem 1)
LAW353 Planning and Environmental Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)

Level 400
LAW452 Construction Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)
LAW453 Labour and Industrial Property Law (3, Sem 1 or 2)

DEPARTMENT OF POLITICAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE STUDIES

Subject to the provisions of the General Academic Regulations, the following Departmental Regulations shall apply.

4.2 Programmes and Titles of Degrees
The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers the following undergraduate programmes leading to the award of the under-mentioned degrees:
4.2.1 Single Major Public Administration Programmes (PAS Regulations 2.1) leading to the award of the BA (Public Administration)
4.2.2 Single Major Political Science Programme (PAS Regulations 2.2) leading to the award of the BA (Political Science)
4.2.3 Combined Major/Major Programme (PAS Regulations 2.3) leading to the award of the BA (Social Sciences)
4.2.4 Combined Major/Minor Programme (PAS Regulations 2.4.1 and 2.4.2) leading to the award of the BA (Social Sciences)
4.2.5 Combined Minor in Public Administration + Major in Other Programme
4.2.6 Combined Minor in Political Science + Major Other Programme

4.3 Entry Requirements
Admission to the programmes offered by the Department shall be on the basis of performance in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) examination, or its equivalent, and as specified in the General Academic Regulations.

4.4 Assessment
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment and final examination marks in the ratio of
2.3 in favour of the final examination. The only exceptions are internships, projects and seminars, which shall be assessed only through assignments. The final examination for every course shall normally be 2 hours long. However, the department reserves the right to review the mode of assessment, and respective lectures shall specify approved mode of assessment prior to any intake or at the start of the semester in which the course is taken.

4.5 Award of Degree
To be awarded a Degree, a student must satisfy the appropriate provisions of the General Academic Regulation 23.71 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences.

4.6 Degree Structure
4.6.1 The Public Administration and Political Sciences courses shall be offered at Levels 100 to 400 for the undergraduate programmes.
4.6.2 In addition to Public Administration and Political Sciences courses, an undergraduate candidate majoring in these courses shall take the General Education Courses (GECs) and Electives in accordance with the General Regulation 00.2124.
4.6.3 The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers undergraduate Public Administration and Political Science courses (as Combined Majors including a Major combined with a Minor) to students majoring in other subjects. In addition, the Department offers single majors in Political Science and Public Administration.
4.6.4 The Department of Political and Administrative Studies offers GECs as outlined in the General Academic Regulations.

5.0 Undergraduate Degree Course Listings

5.1 Bachelor of Social Science Degree in Public Administration (Single Major)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 100</th>
<th>Semester 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core Courses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAD101</td>
<td>Introduction to Public Administration (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO111</td>
<td>Basic Microeconomics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POL 101</td>
<td>Introduction to Political Science (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA III</td>
<td>Basic Statistics (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Credits 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Semester 2 |
| Core Courses |
| PAD102 | Institutions and Processors of Public Administration (3) |
| POL 102 | Modern State (3) |
| ECO112 | Basic Microeconomics (3) |
| STA112 | Statistical Tools for Social Research (3) |
| Plus one Elective and two GECs |
| Total Credits 16 |

5.2 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme in Political Science (Single Major)

| Level 100 | Semester 1 |
| Core Courses |
| POL101 | Introduction to Political Science (3) |
| ECO111 | Basic Microeconomics (3) |
| STA111 | Basic Statistics (3) |
| Total Credits 16 |

| Semester 2 |
| Core Courses |
| PAD304 | Public Enterprise Management (3) |
| PAD307 | Human Resource Development (3) |
| LAW237 | Administrative Law (3) |
| Plus one Elective |
| Total Credits 16 |
Semester 2
Core Courses
POL102 Modern State (3)
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Admin. (3)
ECO112 Basic Macro Economics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus One Elective and two GECs.
Total Credits 16

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors or 211: Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for non-major or 211: Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
One Optional Course from
POL204 Media and Politics (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

Semester 3
Core Courses
POL306 International Relations (3)
POL307 Comparative Politics (3)
POL409 Security Studies (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL403 Modern Ideologies (3)
POL411 Research Project in Political Science (3)
PAD408 International Administration (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

5.3 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme
Major in Public Administration + Major in Political Science

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
Plus one Elective and two GECs.
Total Credits 16

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)
POL102 The Modern State (3)
ECO112 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus two GECs.
Total Credits 16

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3); or ECO211: Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3); or ECO212: Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL204 Media and Politics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
Plus one GEC
Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (4)
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
Three Optional Courses from
POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)
PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)
PAD302 Politics in South Africa (3)
PAD303 Local Government Management (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)
PAD308 Industrial Relations (3)
Plus one GEC (2)
Total Credits 18
Three Optional Courses from
POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3)
POL308 Politics and Management of Natural Resources (3)
ENV 301: Environmental Issues (2) or ENV 476: Natural Resource Management & Economics (2)
Plus one GEC
Total Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD401 Development Administration (3)
POL 401 International Relations (3)
PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
Three Optional Courses from
PAD403/POL410 Internship in Public Administration/Political Science (3)
PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
PAD 405 Case Studies in Public Policy
PAD413 Leadership & Governance
POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
POL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
Plus on Elective
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
POL405 Comparative Politics (3)
Two Optional Courses from
PAD 406 Ethics and Public Management (3)
PAD408 International Administration (3)
POL 410 Public Financial Administration
POL409 Security Studies (3)
PAD 412/ POL411 Research Project in Public Administration/Political Science (3)
Plus one Elective and one GEC
Total Credits 17

5.4 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme

Major in Political Science and Major in Another Subject.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
ECO111 Basic Micro-Economics (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
Plus 2 GECs and one Other Major course (6), Total Credits 19

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL102 Modern State (3)
ECO112 Basic Macro Economics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus 2 GECs and One Other Major course (6).
Total Credits 19

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
LAW 234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-Economists (3) or ECO211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
Plus 2 GECs and one Other Major course (6).
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macroeconomics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO212 Intermediate Macroeconomics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
Plus one GEC and one Other Major course (6)
Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (3)
One Optional Course from
POL302 Politics of South Africa (3)
SOC334 Sociology of Development (3)
or Optional Course from Other Major
Plus one Elective or one GEC
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
One Optional Course from
POL305 Politics of Southern (3)
POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
Plus one GEC and one Other Major course (6)
Total Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL401 International Relations (3)
POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL406 Africa in World Politics (3)
POL407 Civil Military Relations (3)
POL411 Research Project in Political Science (3) or Optional Course from other major
Plus Other Major course (6)
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL405 Comparative Politics (3)
Two Optional Courses from
POL403 Modern Ideologies (3)
POL409 Security Studies (3)
PAD408 International Administration (3) or Optional Course from other major
Plus one Elective or one GEC and Other Major course (6)
Total Credits 18

5.5 BA Social Science Degree Programme Major Public Administration + Other Major

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
ECO111 Basic Micro Economics (3)
STA 111 Basic Statistics (3)
Total Credits 19

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD102 Institutions & Processes of Public Administration (3)
ECO112 Basic Macro Economics (3)
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)
LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Microeconomics for Non-majors (3) or ECO 211 Intermediate Microeconomics (3)
Plus one GEC and one Other Major course.
Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO211 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
One Optional Course from LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective or, two GECs and one Minor course.
Total Credits= 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macro Economics (3) or ECO212 Intermediate Macro Economics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor course.
Total Credits 17

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
PAD401 Development Administration. (3)
PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
Two Optional Courses from PAD403 Internship (3)
PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
PAD405 Case Studies in Public Policy (3) or Optional Course from other major
One other Major Course
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
One Optional Course from PAD406 Ethics and Accountability (3)
PAD408 International Administration (3)
PAD 410 Public Financial Administration (3)
PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration or Optional Course from other major
Plus one Elective, one GEC and other Major Courses (6)
Total Credits 18

Level 6.6 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Major in Political Science and Minor in other subject

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)
ECO111 Basic Microeconomics (3)
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)
Total Credits 19

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL102 The Modern State (3)
PAD102 Institutions and Processes in Public Admin. (3)
ECO112 Basic Macro Economics (3)
STA 112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)
Plus two GECs and one Minor course.(3)
Total Credits 19

Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL201 Botswana Politics (3)
ECO221 Intermediate Micro Economics for Non-Majors (3) or ECO211 Intermediate Micro Economics (3)
One Optional Course from LAW234 Constitutional Law (3)
Plus one Elective or, two GECs and one Minor course.
Total Credits= 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL202 Classical Political Thought (3)
ECO222 Intermediate Macro Economics (3) or ECO212 Intermediate Macro Economics (3)
SOC226 Concepts & Principles of Social Research (3)
One Optional Course from POL204 Media and Politics (3)
SOC236 Social Inequality (3)
Total Credits 17

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)
POL310 Contemporary Africa (3)
One Optional Course from POL302 Politics of South Africa (3)
POL306 International Political Economy (4)
SOC338 Democracy and Development (3)
Total Credits 18

Semester 2
Core Courses
POL307 Politics of Regionalism (3)
POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)
LAW237 Administrative Law (3)
One Optional Course from POL309 Politics of Poverty in Southern Africa (3)
POL308 Politics and Management of Natural Resources (3) or
ENV301 Environmental Issues (2) or
ENV476 Natural Resource Management and Economics (2)
Total Credits 17

Total Credits 18
### Level 400

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**
- POL401 International Relations (3)
- POL402 Democratic Theory and Practice (3)
- One Optional Course from POL406 Africa in World Politics (3) and POL407 Civil Military Relations (3)
- POL410 Internship in Political Science (3)

Plus one Elective and one Minor Course

Total Credits 15

#### Semester 2

**Core Courses**
- POL405 Comparative Politics (3)
- POL409 Security Studies (3)
- One Optional Course from POL403 Modern Ideologies (3) and POL411 Research Project in Political Science (3)

Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor Course

Total Credits 17

### Level 300

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**
- PAD302 Human Resource Management (3)
- PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (3)
- Two Optional Courses from PAD303 Local Government Management (3) and PAD308 Industrial Relations (3)
- SOC326 Sociology of Development (3)

Plus one GEC and one Minor Course

Total Credits 17

#### Semester 2

**Core Courses**
- PAD307 Human Resource Development (3)
- LAW 237 Administrative Law (3)
- One Optional Course from PAD304 Public Enterprise Management (3)
- POL308 Politics and Management of Natural Resources (3)
- ENV301 Environmental Issues (2) or ENV476 Natural Resource Management and Economics (2)

Plus two GECs and one Minor Course.

Total Credits 16

### 5.8 Bachelor of Social Science Degree Programme: Minor Political Science + Major in Other Subject

#### Level 100

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses for Minor**
- POL101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
- STA111 Basic Statistics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses (6), and two GECs.

Total Credits 16

#### Semester 2

**Core Courses for Minor**
- POL102 The Modern State (3)
- STA112 Basic Statistics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs.

Total Credits 16

#### Level 200

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses for Minor**
- POL201 Botswana Politics (3)

Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs.

Total Credits 16

#### Level 300

#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**
- PAD301 Development Administration (4)
- PAD402 Government Budgeting (3)
- One Optional Course from PAD403 Internship (3)
- PAD407 Comparative Public Administration (3)
- PAD405 Case Studies in Public Policy

Analysis (3)

Plus one Elective and one Minor course

Total Credits 15

#### Semester 2

**Core Courses**
- PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration (3)
- PAD410 Public Financial Management (3)
- One Optional Course from PAD406 Ethics and Public Management (3) and PAD411 Local Government Finance (3)
- PAD412 Research Project in Public Administration (3)

Plus one Elective, one GEC and one Minor course

Total Credits 17
Level 300  
Semester 1  
Core Courses for Minor  
POL301 Modern Political Thought (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

Semester 2  
Core Courses for Minor  
POL305 Politics of Southern Africa (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

Level 400  
Semester 1  
Core Courses for Minor  
POL401 International Relations (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

Semester 2  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD405 Comparative Politics (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

5.9 Bachelor of Social Science  
Degree Programme: Minor in Public Administration + Major in Other Subject.  

Level 100  
Semester 1  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD101 Introduction to Public Administration (3)  
STA111 Basic Statistics (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, and two GECs.  
Total Credits= 16  

Semester 2  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD102 Institutions and Processes of Public Administration (3)  
STA112 Statistical Tools for Social Research (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, and two GECs.  
Total Credits= 16  

Level 200  
Semester 1  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD201 Organisation Theories (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Elective and two GECs.  
Total Credits 16  

Semester 2  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD202 Public Administration in Botswana (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

Level 300  
Semester 1  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD306 Public Policy Analysis (3) OR:  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

Semester 2  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD307 Human Resource Management (3)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course and two GECs.  
Total Credits 16  

Level 400  
Semester 1  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD401 Development Administration (4)  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course and one Elective.  
Total Credits 18  

Semester 2  
Core Courses for Minor  
PAD406 Ethics & Public Management (3) OR:  
PAD404 Contemporary Issues in Public Administration  
Plus two Major Core Courses, one Optional Course, one Elective and one GEC.  
Total Credits 17  

DEPARTMENT OF POPULATION STUDIES  

Diploma in Population Studies  

Special Regulations for Diploma in Population Studies  
Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations 000 and 100, and the Faculty of Social Sciences Special Regulations, the following Special Regulations shall apply:  

Entrance Requirements  
The normal requirement for entrance into Diploma in Population Studies shall be:  
a) A minimum of 3 credits (one of which is Mathematics) in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent;  
or:  
b) A GPA of at least 2.0 at the Certificate in Civil Registration and Population Dynamics of this University or its equivalent;  

Duration of the Programme  
The normal duration of the Diploma in Population Studies Programme shall be 4 to 6 semesters on a full-time basis or 8 to 12 semesters on a part-time basis.  

Programme Structure  
The curriculum and methods of assessment shall be as follows:  

Level 100  
Semester 1  
Core courses (6 credits)  
POP120 Introduction to Substantive Demography (3)  
STA101 Civil Registration and Population Dynamics of this University (3)  

Semester 2  
Core courses (6 credits)  
PAD102 Introduction to Demography (3)  
STA106 Introduction to Statistics (3)  

Elective courses (6 credits)  
General Education courses (3 credits)  

Students planning to enter a degree programme after the completion of their Diploma should take STA101 as well.  

Semester 2  
Core courses (6 credits)  
POP121 Introduction to Epidemiology and Technical Demography (3)  
POP110 Elements of Research Methods (3 credits)  

Elective courses (6 credits)  
General Education courses (3 credits)
Faculty of Social Sciences

is Mathematics) in the Botswana General Programme shall be:

a) A minimum of 5 credits (one of which is Mathematics) in the Botswana General Certificate of Secondary Education (BGCSE) or its equivalent;
Or:
b) A GPA of at least 2.0 in the Diploma in Population Studies of this University or its equivalent; Other qualifications for entrance to the Bachelor’s Degree in Population Studies may be accepted on their own merit as alternatives as shown by the General Regulation 00.052.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Population Studies Programme shall be 8 to 10 semesters of full-time study.

Bachelor of Arts Degree
Special Regulations for the Major/Major Programme in Population Studies Subject to the provisions of the Academic General Regulations 000 and 200, the following Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The normal requirement for entrance into the Bachelor’s Degree in Population Studies Programme shall be:

a) A minimum of 5 credits (one of which is Mathematics) in the Botswana General

Level 200
Semester 3
Core courses (6 credits)

POPO20 Methods of Demographic Analysis (3 credits)

POPO21 Computing for Demographers (3 credits)

Optional courses (3 credits)

Select one from the following:

POPO22 Introduction to Population and Developments (3 credits)

POPO26 Population Policy of Botswana (3 credits)

General Education Courses (6 credits)

Semester 4
Core Courses (3 credits)

POPO23 Demographic Data Analysis and Report Writing (3 credits)

Optional courses (3 credits)

Select one from the following:

POPO24 Reproductive Health and Family Planning (3 credits)

POPO25 Demography of Southern Africa (3 credits)

Elective courses (6 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits).

It is recommended that all Diploma students take POP202: Introduction to Population and Development.

Assessment
Each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination or semester paper in the ratio of 2:3.

Award of Diploma
In order to be awarded the Diploma, a student must have completed a minimum of 60 credits and have a cumulative GPA of at least 2.0.

Elective courses (3 credits)

General Education courses (3 credits)

Students entering the degree programme after the completing of their diploma should take STA102 as well if the course was not taken during the diploma studies.

Level 300
Semester 5
Core course (6 credits)

POPO30 Sources, Evaluation, Adjustment and Analysis of Demographic Data (3 credits)

Optional course (3 credits)

POPO34 Inter-relationships of Fertility, Mortality and Migration (3 credits)

Semester 6
Core courses (6 credits)

POPO31 Computer Applications in Population Analysis (3 credits)

Optional courses (3 credits)

Select from the following:

POPO33 Migration, Urbanisation and Development (3 credits)

POPO35 Population Policies and Programmes (3 credits)

General Education courses (4 credits)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core courses (9 credits)

POPO40 Integrating Population Variables into Development Planning (3 credits)

POPO41 Research Paper (3 credits)

POPO42 Indirect Estimation Techniques (3 credits)

Semester 8
Optional courses (6 credits)

Select from the following:

POPO43 Population, Development and Environment (3 credits)

POPO44 Gender, Reproductive Health and Development (3 credits)

POPO45 Demographic Dimensions of Poverty (3 credits)

POPO46 Demographic Aspects of Ageing (3 credits)

POPO47 Demographics (3 credits)

Elective courses (2 credits)

General Education courses (2 credits)
Assessment
Each course shall be evaluated by a combination of continuous assessment and final examination or semester paper in the ratio of 2:3.

Progression
In order to proceed from one semester to the next, a student must obtain a Cumulative GPA that is in accordance with General Regulation 00.9.

General Education Courses offered by the Department.
Semester 1 & 2
GEC 372 Migration and Globalisation (2)
GEC 278 Population and Society (2)

DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY

Programmes
The Department offers two degree programmes at undergraduate level:
  i) Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences degree with Psychology as Combined Major (Major/Major) and
  ii) Bachelor of Psychology degree, which is a semi-professional programme.

2.0 Bachelor of Arts in Social Sciences with Psychology as Combined Major

2.1 Aims of the Programme
The main aim of a Bachelor's programme with Psychology as a Combined Major is to introduce students to the discipline of psychology and provide them with basic knowledge about major substantive areas of research in psychology.

2.2 Entrance Requirement
Subject to provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.2, a credit in Mathematics shall be required for applicants intending to enroll for Psychology as a Combined Major.

2.3 General Provisions.
2.3.1 Psychology as a Combined Major shall consist of an eight semester programme and with core and optional psychology courses.
2.3.2 Subject to special regulations of programmes in other departments, students may pursue a combined major in psychology and any other major of their choice.

2.3.3 Students who enroll for psychology as part of a combined degree (major/major) shall be expected to combine courses from psychology and the second subject in the ratio of 50:50 (major/major).
2.3.4 Students at any level of their university studies may be allowed to enroll in a psychology course at another level with the permission of the Head of Department.

2.4 Programme Structure
Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
STA101*) Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)
STA116*) Introduction to Statistics (3)
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
*) or equivalent course

Semester 2
Core Courses
PSY102 Biological Basis of Human Behaviour (3)

Level 200
Combined Major students are expected to enroll in at least two psychology courses per Semester.

Semester 3
Core Courses
PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)
Optional Courses
PSY202 Social Psychology (3)
PSY203 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)
PSY204 History and Philosophy of Psychology (3)

Semester 4
Core Courses
PSY208 Statistics for Psychology I (3)
Optional Courses
PSY206 Developmental Psychology of Adulthood and Old Age (3)
PSY207 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Level 300
For the Combined Major, all but one Level 300 psychology courses are optional in order to enable the student flexibility in higher choice of courses. Level 300 Combined Major students are expected to enroll in at least two psychology courses per Semester.

Semester 5
Optional Courses
PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)
PSY303 Cognition and Learning (3)
PSY304 Health Psychology (3)
PSY305 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)

Semester 6
Core Courses
PSY311 Research Methods in Psychology (3)
Optional Courses
PSY309 Human Factors in the Work Environment (3)
PSY310 Consumer Psychology (3)

Level 400
For the Combined Major, all Level 400 psychology courses are optional in order to enable the student flexibility in higher choice of courses. Level 400 Combined Major students are expected to enroll in at least two psychology courses per Semester.

Semester 7
Optional Courses
PSY406 Psychological Challenges of HIV/AIDS (3)
PSY407 Special Topics in Psychology (3)
PSY409 Sensation and Perception (3)

Semester 8
Optional Courses
PSY410 Applied Psychology (3)
PSY411 Psychopathology (3)
PSY412 Research Project (3)

2.5 Assessment
Assessment of psychology courses shall be based on any one or combinations of the following: tests, assignments, written examinations, oral examinations as approved by the Department.
3.0 Bachelor of Psychology (B.Psych.) Programme

3.1 Objectives of the Programme
Students who graduate with a Bachelor of Psychology (B.Psych.) degree shall be qualified to work as semi-professionals in the field of psychology, more specifically as "psychological counsellors". In order to become full professional psychologists, graduates would, however, require post-graduate training in Psychology on either Masters or Doctorate level that provides coursework and internship.

3.2 Entrance Requirement
Subject to provisions of General Academic Regulations 20.2, a credit in Mathematics shall be required for applicants intending to enroll for a B.Psych. degree.

3.3 General Provisions
3.3.1 The B.Psych. degree shall consist of an eight-semester programme.
3.3.2 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree shall take a minimum of 87 credits in psychology courses (consisting of 54 credits in core and 15 credits in optional psychology courses and 18 credits in the internship), 6 credits from core Mathematics and Statistics courses, and 20 credits from General Education Courses. Required credits from another subject taken during Level 100 and Level 200 shall be determined by this other subject.
3.3.2.1 The core and optional psychology courses shall consist of 6 credits at Level 100, 12 credits at Level 200, 24 credits at Level 300 and 33 credits at Level 400.
3.3.2.2 B.Psych. students at any level of their university studies may be allowed to enroll in a psychology course at another level with the permission of the Head of Department.
3.3.2.3 A student who intends to pursue a B.Psych. degree shall enroll in a Bachelor's programme of any faculty at Level 100 and Level 200 and study psychology together with another major subject.
3.3.2.4 Students shall normally be selected for the B.Psych. programme after completing Level 200 to start the programme at Level 300 (fifth semester).
3.3.2.5 Students who are not selected for the B.Psych. programme may continue with psychology as a Combined Major.
3.3.2.6 The B.Psych. programme shall consist of core and optional psychology courses that include lectures, seminars, laboratory work and supervised practical work and a research project based on empirical data.

3.3.2.7 The B.Psych. programme shall include a supervised internship undertaken over six months with a minimum of 960 hours practical experience.

3.4 Programme Structure
Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
STA101* Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)

Level 200
Semester 2
Core Courses
PSY101 Introduction to Psychology (3)

Level 200
Semester 3
Core Courses
PSY102 Biological Basis of Human Behaviour (3)

Level 200
Semester 4
Core Courses
PSY201 Theories of Personality (3)

Level 200
Semester 5
Core Courses
PSY202 Social Psychology (3)

Level 200
Semester 6
Core Courses
PSY203 Developmental Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence (3)

Level 200
Semester 7
Core Courses
PSY204 History and Philosophy of Psychology (3)

Level 200
Semester 8
Core Courses
PSY205** Training and Human Resource Development (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least two courses)
PSY206 Developmental Psychology of Adulthood and Old Age (3)
PSY207 Psychology of Work and Labour Relations (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)

Level 300
Semester 5
Core Courses
PSY301 Abnormal Psychology I (3)

Level 300
Semester 6
Core Courses
PSY302 Psychological Testing and Psychometrics (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY303 Cognition and Learning (3)

PSY304 Health Psychology (3)
PSY305 Organisational and Personnel Psychology (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least one)
PSY309 Human Factors in the Work Environment (3)
PSY310 Consumer Psychology (3)

Level 400
Semester 7
Core Courses
PSY401 Research Project (3)

Optional Courses
(students choose at least two courses)
PSY404* Psychotherapy (3)
PSY405** Training and Human Resource Development (3)

Level 400
Semester 8
Core Course
PSY408 Internship* (18 credits)
The internship shall start with the first week of Semester VIII and continue for at least eight weeks in the Winter vacation.

3.5 Assessment
3.5.1 Assessment of psychology courses shall be based on any one or combinations of the following: tests, assignments, written examinations, oral examinations, practical examinations as approved by the Department.
3.5.2 Assessment of the performance on the internship shall consist of an evaluation of the intern according to criteria set by the Department.
3.5.2.1 A student who fails the internship shall
be permitted to continue his/her studies with psychology as a combined major.

3.8 Award of the Degree
In order to be awarded the B.Psych. degree, a student must meet the requirements of the Academic General Regulations, Faculty and Departmental Special Regulations and obtain a minimum of Grade Point of 3.0 (60%) in the internship.

DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL WORK

Diploma in Social Work (DSW) Programme

Entry Requirements
Subject to the General Regulations 200 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Social Work shall apply: The normal minimum requirement is a BGCSE with credit in English or a Certificate in Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification. Students shall be subject to the guidelines and regulations of the Department’s Fieldwork Manual.

DSW Programme Structure and Content
The Diploma in Social Work (DSW) programme has a total of 72 to 74 credits.

Level 100
Semester 1
DSW100 Introduction to Social Work and its Literature (3)
DSW101 Social Work with Communities and Groups (3)
DSW102 Social Services in Botswana (2)
DSW103 Social Work with Youth (3)
DSW104 Social Work in Health Services (3)
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills 1 (2)
GEC121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1 (2)

Semester 2
SWF200 Fieldwork (Block Placement) (3)
DSW201 Fieldwork and Professional Development (3)
DSW200 Introduction to Counselling in Social Work (3)
DSW201 Introduction to Social Policy (2)
DSW202 Selected Issues in Social Work (2)
DSW205 Probation (3)
General Education Course/Elective (2 or 3 credits)

NB: SWF200 is a 12-week block placement in social welfare agencies that takes place during the long vacation between Levels 1 and 2.

Level 200
Semester 1
DSW203 AIDS and Home Based Care (3)
DSW204 Social Work and Social Development (3)
DSW206 Management and Supervision in the Human Services (3)
DSW207 Culture, Change and Social Work in Botswana (3)
SOC122 The Social Structure of Society (3)
NB: A student can choose to take a GEC or an Elective course. GEC/Elective

Assessment
Assessment shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.8. Assessment criteria shall also be stated in each course outline.

Progression from Semester to Semester
Progression from one semester to the next shall be as per General Academic Regulations 00.9.

Award of the Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be as per General Regulations 00.852.

Diploma in Youth in Development Work (DYD)

Entry Requirements
The normal minimum requirement is a BGCSE, six credits with Credit in English or a Certificate in Adult Education or Social Work from this
University or an equivalent qualification in related areas. [Preference will be given to students who hold such qualifications]. Applicants with Certificate in Adult Education or Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification in related areas may be exempted from certain courses.

Mode of Delivery
As is the case with current UB distance education programmes, teaching will be done primarily through printed course modules. Other possible future additions are audio and video tapes, web-based instruction, e-mail interactions, etc. Additional face-to-face tutorial support will be provided in designated centres, but with the University of Botswana serving as the initial tutorial centre.

Programme Structure and Content

Structure
The programme will last for a minimum of four semesters and a maximum of eight semesters. It is comprised of core courses and the University’s General Education Courses. Students are expected to cover a total of 65 credits.

Level 100
Semester 1
DYD 101 (3) Commonwealth Values in Youth in Development Work
DYD 102 (3) Young People and Society
DYD 103 (3) Principles and Practice of Youth in Development Work
GEC 111 (2) Communication and Study Skills 1
GEC 121 (2) Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1
DYD 106 (3) Learning Processes

Credits: 16

Semester 2
DYD 104 (3) Working with People in their Communities
DYD 105 (3) Gender and Development
DYD 107 (3) Management Skills
GEC 112 (2) Communication and Study Skills 2
GEC 122 (2) Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 2
DSW 106 (3) Psychology for Social Work

Level 200
Semester 1
DYD 208 (3) Project Planning, Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation
DYD 209 (3) Policy, Planning and Implementation
DYD 210 (4) Conflict Resolution and Management Skills
DYD 211 (3) Promoting Enterprise and Economic Development
DYD 212 (3) Youth and Health
DYD 213 (3) Sustainable Development and Environmental Issues

Credits: 18 credits

Semester 2
DYD 214 (3) Proposal Development
DYD 215 (3) Statistics for Development Workers
BNS 101 (2) HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control
DYD 216 (3) Youth in Especially Difficult Circumstances

Course Listings
Level 100
Semester 1
DYD 101 Commonwealth Values in Youth in Development Work
DYD 102 Young People and Society
DYD 103 Principles and Practice of Youth in Development Work
GEC 111 Communication and Study Skills 1
GEC 121 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 1
DYD 106 Learning Processes

Semester 2
DYD 104 Working with People in their Communities
DYD 105 Gender and Development
DYD 107 Management Skills
GEC 112 Communication and Study Skills 2
GEC 122 Computing and Information Skills Fundamentals 2
DSW 106 Psychology for Social Work

Level 200
Semester 1
DYD 208 Project Planning, Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation
DYD 209 Policy, Planning and Implementation
DYD 210 Conflict Resolution and Management Skills
DYD 211 Promoting Enterprise and Economic Development
DYD 212 Youth and Health
DYD 213 Sustainable Development and Environmental Issues

Semester 2
DYD 214 Proposal Development
DYD 215 Statistics for Development Workers
BNS 101 HIV/AIDS Education, Prevention and Control
DYD 216 Youth in Especially Difficult Circumstances

DSW 200 Introduction to Counselling in Social Work

Assessment
Students will be assessed through written assignments, supervised tests, projects, and, at the end of each semester, examinations. The assignments to be done will be provided in the Students’ Information and Assignment Booklet. The ratio between continuous assessment and formal examination shall be 1:1, where the CA may constitute 50% [which may include Assignments, Supervised Tests, and Projects] and Examination, 50%.

Award of a Diploma
Subject to General regulation 00.85, to be awarded a Diploma in Youth in Development Work, a student must successfully complete a minimum of 65 credits.

Bachelor of Social Work Programme

Entry Requirements
Subject to the General Regulations 200 and the Special Regulations of the Faculty of Social Sciences, the following Special Regulations of the Department of Social Work shall apply:

1. The normal minimum requirement for entry into the Bachelor of Social Work (BSW) Programme is a credit in Mathematics.
2. Students shall be subject to the guidelines and regulations of the Department’s Fieldwork Manual.
3. Applicants with a Diploma in Social Work from this University or an equivalent qualification with a minimum grade of a credit shall be eligible for entry at Level 2 of the first semester of the second year of the BSW Programme.

BSW Programme Structure and Content
The BSW programme has a total of 129-137 credits.

Level 100
Semester 1
BSW 100 Reading and Writing in Social Work (2)
PSY 101 Introduction to Psychology (3)
POL 101 Introduction to Political Science (3)
LAW 151 Social Work and Law (3)
SOC 121 Introduction to Sociological
### Program Overview

The Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies shall consist of levels 100 and 200 core and optional courses, General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in other subject areas offered at comparable levels. A student wishing to graduate with the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies shall take and pass the following courses:

#### Level 100

**Semester 1**

- **Core Courses**
  - SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
  - LAW101 Introduction to the Legal System (3)
  - LAW102 Criminal Law in Botswana (3)
  - Electives (3)

**Semester 2**

- **Core Courses**
  - SOC130 Crime and Punishment in Modern Society (3)
  - SOC131 Theory of Deviance and Crime (3)
  - GEC (3)

### Program Structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Core Courses</th>
<th>Electives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 100</td>
<td>SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)</td>
<td>LAW101 Introduction to the Legal System (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 200</td>
<td>SOC130 Crime and Punishment in Modern Society (3)</td>
<td>SOC131 Theory of Deviance and Crime (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Entry Requirements**

The normal Entry Requirements shall be as stipulated in General 10.2.

**Duration**

The normal duration for the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies programme shall be four (4) semesters on a full-time basis.

**Programme Structure**

The Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies shall consist of levels 100 and 200 core and optional courses, General Education Courses (GECs) and electives in other subject areas offered at comparable levels. A student wishing to graduate with the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies shall take and pass the following courses:

**Semester 1**

- **Core Courses**
  - SOC121 Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
  - LAW101 Introduction to the Legal System (3)
  - LAW102 Criminal Law in Botswana (3)
  - Electives (3)

**Semester 2**

- **Core Courses**
  - SOC130 Crime and Punishment in Modern Society (3)
  - SOC131 Theory of Deviance and Crime (3)
  - GEC (3)

### Award of the Degree

The award of the Degree shall be as per General Regulations 00.852.
Duration of Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Sociology shall be eight (8) semesters on a full-time basis. Students who are granted exemptions under the Departmental regulations may be able to complete the programme in a shorter period of time.

Programme Structure
The Department offers Sociology as a subject in the following Programmes:

1. Single Major Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree (Sociology)
2. Combined Major/Major Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree
3. Combined Major/Minor (with Sociology as Minor) Programme leading to the award of Bachelor of Arts Degree.

Requirements for the Single Major Degree in Sociology
Only students with a cumulative GPA of at least 3.5 (B-) for all Sociology courses taken during the first and second years of their studies will be invited to pursue a single major degree in Sociology. A student pursuing a single major degree in Sociology must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

Electives (3)
GEC (4)

Semester 2
Core Courses
SOC246 Community and Crime (3)
Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
SOC225 Sociology of Policing (3)
SOC243 Crime and Social Justice (3)
LAW235 Specific Offences in Criminal Law (3)
Electives (3) GEC (3)

Assessment
Performance in each course shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment scores (CAS) and final examination marks; each contributing 50 percent to the final grade awarded. The final examination in every course will normally be not less than two hours. Seminars, internships and research projects will be assessed through assignments, term papers and (research) reports.

Progression from one Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be as per General Regulation 00.852

Degree Programme in Sociology

Entry Requirement
The normal Entry Requirements shall be as stipulated in General 20.2
### Level 100
#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC121</td>
<td>Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Elementary Statistics (3); or Equivalent course(s) approved by the Department</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

Any one of the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC125</td>
<td>Theories of Deviance and Crime (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC130</td>
<td>Crime and Punishment in Modern Society (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electives</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GEC**

(4)

### Level 200
#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC224</td>
<td>Introduction to Sociological Theory (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

Any one of the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC222</td>
<td>The Social Structure of Society (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC223</td>
<td>Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC227</td>
<td>Introduction to Penology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC233</td>
<td>The History of Punishment in Botswana (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electives</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GEC**

(4)

### Level 300
#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC322</td>
<td>Classical Sociological Theories (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC339</td>
<td>Quantitative Research Methods (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

Any one of the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC328</td>
<td>Comparative Social Institutions (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC329</td>
<td>Urban Sociology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC331</td>
<td>Industry and Society (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC334</td>
<td>Sociology of Development (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC342</td>
<td>Crime and Victimization (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Level 400
#### Semester 1

**Core Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC441</td>
<td>Research Proposal (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional Courses**

Any two of the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC424</td>
<td>African Social Thought (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC428</td>
<td>Family and Kinship (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC431</td>
<td>Sociology of Law (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC432</td>
<td>Social Movements (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC433</td>
<td>Work and Occupations (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC434</td>
<td>Special Topics in Sociology (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electives</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GEC**

(5)
SOC442  Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC438  The Medical Prof and Allied Occupations (3)
SOC439  Special Topics in Sociology (3)
SOC443  Sentencing Theory and Practice (3)
SOC444  Contemporary Research in Criminology (3)

Requirements for a Combined Major/Minor [Sociology Minor]
A student intending to pursue a degree with Sociology as a minor subject must take and pass the following Sociology courses:

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC121  Introduction to Sociological Concepts and Principles (3)
STA111  Elementary Statistics (3); or Equivalent course(s) approved by the Department
Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC125  Punishment in Contemporary Society (3)
PAD102  Institutional Process of Public Administration (3)
SOC127  The History of Punishment in Botswana (3)
Electives (3)
GEC (4)

Semester 2
Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
SOC225  Sociology of Policing (3)
SOC233  Families and Households (3)
SOC241  Social Structure of S. African Societies (3)
SOC243  Crime and Social Justice (3)
SOC246  Communities and Crime (3)
STA241  Statistical Analysis (3)
Electives (3)
GEC (5)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC322  Classical Sociological Theories (3)
SOC339  Quantitative Research Methods (3)
Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
SOC421  Contemporary Sociological Theory (3)
SOC441  Data Analysis and Report Writing (3)

Assessment
Performance shall be evaluated by the combination of continuous assessment scores (CAS) and final examination marks; each contributing 50 percent to the final grade awarded. Seminars, internships and research projects will be assessed through assignments, term papers and research reports.

Progression from one Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.852

Bachelor of Arts in Criminal Justice Studies (Single Major)

Entry Requirements
Admission to the BA CJS will be as per the University of Botswana General Regulation 20.2 or successful completion of the Diploma in Criminal Justice Studies (DCJ). Applicants who hold the DCJ from the University of Botswana will be admitted to the third year of the BA CJS degree programme. These students will be advised to take three new courses (1 at 1st year level, and 2 at second year level) as electives in order to satisfy requirements.

Duration of Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts in Criminal Justice Studies shall be eight (8) semesters on a full-time basis. Students who are granted exemptions under the Departmental regulations may be able to complete the programme in a shorter period of time.

Level 100
Semester 1
Core Courses
CJS 121  Introduction to Criminology (3)
CJS 125  Theoretical Criminology (3)
LAW 131  Introduction to Law (3)
Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
CJS 130  Punishment in Contemporary Society (3)
PAD 102  Institutional Process of Public Administration (3)
SOC 122  The Social Structure of Society (3)
SOC 123  Introduction to Social and Cultural Anthropology (3)
SOC 127  Introduction to Penology (3)
SOC 133  The History of Punishment in Botswana (3)
Electives (3)
GEC (4)

Semester 2
Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
CJS 127  Penology and the Penal System (3)
CJS 133  Punishment in Botswana (3)
Electives (3)
GEC (4)
Level 200
Semester 1
Core Courses
CJS 221 Classical and Post-Classical Criminological Theories (3)
LAW 234 Constitutional Law

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
- CJS 227 Criminal Justice Work Experience (3)
- CJS 223 Media, Crime and Culture (3)
- CJS 246 Gender, Crime and Justice (3)
- SOC 234 Social Problems in Southern Africa (3)
- BSW 201 Introduction to working with Families and Individuals (3)
- Electives (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CJS 221 Basic Concepts and Principles in Criminological Research (3)
CJS 246 Environmental Criminology (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
- CJS 225 Policing and Society (3)
- CJS 243 Social Inequality and Criminal Justice (3)
- LAW 235 Administrative Law (3)
- Electives (3)

Level 300
Semester 1
Core Courses
CJS 326 Crime Prevention, Management and Control (3)
CJS 343 Theoretical Debates in Criminology (3)
LAW 333 Criminal Procedure (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
- CJS 342 Victimology (3)
- CJS 325 Risk Management (3)
- CJS 328 Psychology of Criminal Behaviour (3)
- LAW 332 Evidence (4)
- SOC 324 Sociology of Gender (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CJS 321 Research Methods in Criminal Justice (3)
CJS 332 Policy Analysis in Criminal Justice (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
- CJS 324 White Collar Crime (3)
- CJS 327 Forensic Criminology (3)
- CJS 329 Juvenile Delinquency and Youth Justice (3)
- PAD 307 Human Resource Development (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CJS 326 Crime Prevention, Management and Control (3)
CJS 346 Data Analysis in Criminal Justice Studies (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
- CJS 422 Management of Criminal Justice Organisations (3)
- CJS 424 Domestic and International Security (3)
- LAW 432 Jurisprudence
- Soc 431 Sociology of Law
- Electives (3)

Level 400
Semester 1
Core Courses
CJS 426 Electronic Crime (3)
CJS 445 Sentencing (3)

Optional Courses
Any two of the following courses:
- CJS 422 Management of Criminal Justice Organisations (3)
- CJS 424 Domestic and International Security (3)
- LAW 432 Jurisprudence
- Soc 431 Sociology of Law
- Electives (3)

Semester 2
Core Courses
CHS 421 Research Project (6)
CJS 444 Organised Crime (3)
LAW 437 Human Rights Law

Optional Courses
Any one of the following courses:
- CJS 423 International Policing (3)
- CJS 425 Privatisation/Commercialisation of Criminal Justice (3)
- CJS 427 Criminal Offender Profiling (3)
- CJS 428 Special Topics in Criminal Justice Studies (3)
- CJS 443 Sentencing (3)

Progression from one Semester to another Semester
Progression from one Semester to the next shall be as per General Regulation 00.9

Award of Degree
The award of the degree shall be as per General Regulation 00.852
related discipline (3 sem2)

General Education Courses
Semester 1
1. GEC 111 Comm. & Study Skills I (2)
2. GEC 121 Computing & Info. Skills I (2)

Semester 2
3. GEC 112 Comm. & Study Skills II (2)
4. GEC 122 Computing & Inf. Skills II (2)

Level 200
Semester 2
STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)
STA272 Statistical Computing (3)
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)
STA222 Probability I (3)
STA211 Statistical Methods (3)
STA351 Analysis and Design of Experiments (3)
STA391 Field Survey (3)
MAT222 Calculus II (3)

Optional Courses (2 courses, 6 credits)

Semester 3
MAT212 Introduction to Algebra (3)
Level 200 Economics Course (3)
Level 200 Population or Environmental Science Course (3, Sem 2)

General Education Courses
One GEC course at 200 level (2 credits).

Assessment
Each course shall be assessed through continuous assessment and a final examination at the end of the semester as per Departmental Regulations. The final written examination normally shall be of 2 hour duration. The weighting for continuous assessment to examination shall be in the ratio of 1:2, unless otherwise specified.

Award of Diploma
A student shall be eligible for the award of the Diploma in Statistics after completing a minimum of 65 credits for courses specified in section 7.3.

Classification of the Diploma
The award of the Diploma shall be classified as Distinction, Merit, Credit or Pass, according to the GPA as per General Regulation 10.4.

Undergraduate Programmes
The Department offers Statistics as a subject in the combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Social Sciences and in the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree for both the Social Sciences and Science students. In addition Statistics is offered as a subject for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree in Science. For the Diploma Programme in Statistics see Faculty Regulation 180.

Special Regulations for the Undergraduate Degree Programmes
Special Regulation for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics Subject to the General Academic Regulations 00.00 and 20.00 the following Departmental Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
1 Entrance requirements are subject to the Faculty General Regulations.
2 Students who have passed the Diploma in Statistics Examination of this University or who possess the equivalent qualification can be admitted to Semester 5 of the Programme.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis. Students, who were granted exemption under the Departmental Regulations, may be able to complete the Programme in a shorter period of time.

Programme Structure
1 At Levels 100 and 200, the Statistics part of the Programme requires 10 core courses in Statistics totaling 29 credits, normally taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition courses from the other major as well as electives and General Education Courses are required as per Faculty Regulations. Core courses are listed in Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2 and 1.4.3.
2 At Levels 300 and 400, the Statistics part of the Programme consists of 8 core courses in Statistics totaling 24 credits normally taken in Semester 5 and upwards. In addition, students are required to take 12 credits of optional courses and 4 credits of General Education Courses. Core and optional courses are given in Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2, and 1.4.3.

Assessment
Normally the assessment for any course is based on the continuous assessment and the final examination in the ratio of 1:2, unless otherwise specified.

Award of Bachelor of Arts Degree
A student who has completed the entire core, optional, elective and General Education. Courses as listed above shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Arts Combined Degree in Statistics.

Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
The Single Major Bachelor of Science Programme can be taken by students from the Faculty of Science as well as students from the Faculty of Social Sciences or any other faculty, provided they satisfy the requirements outlined below.

Special Regulations for the Single Major Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
Subject to General Regulation 20.00 and the relevant Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Department of Statistics Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
1 Students who are admitted to the Faculty of Science and who have passed each of the 2 required Level 100 Statistics and Mathematics courses are eligible to join the Bachelor of Science (Statistics) Single Major Degree Programme.
2 Students admitted to other faculties, such as the Faculty of Social Sciences, and who have passed each of the 2 required Level 100 Statistics and Mathematics courses are eligible to join the Bachelor of Science (Statistics) Single Major Degree Programme. The decision as to what major is to be taken shall be made as early as possible, preferably not later than Semester 5 of the undergraduate studies.
3 Students who have passed the Diploma in Statistics examination of this University with a credit or who possess equivalent qualifications can join at level Semester 5 of the Programme on condition of Departmental recommendation.
4 Students who intend to join the Single Major Programme are normally expected to complete the courses listed under the Department of Statistics Special Regulation 1.3.3 before Semester 5 of study.
Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Science Degree Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis. Students who join under Departmental Special Regulation 4.6.1.3 may be able to complete the Programme in a shorter period.

Programme Structure
1. At Levels 100 and 200, the Programme requires 11 core courses in Statistics and Mathematics totaling 37 credits, normally to be taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition, students are expected to take elective and General Education Courses as required by their Faculty Regulations.
2. At Levels 300 and 400, the Programme consists of 15 core courses in Statistics and Mathematics totaling 48 credits that are usually taken from Semester 5 upwards. In addition, there are 3 optional Statistics courses totaling 9 credits.

Assessment
Normally assessment of any course is based on the continuous assessment and the examination in the ratio 1:2, unless otherwise specified in the Departmental Special Regulations.

Award of Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree
A student who has completed all core, optional, elective and General Education Course requirements shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Science (Statistics) Degree.

Classification of Degree
The award shall be classified according to the GPA as per General Regulation 20.4.

Combined Bachelor of Science Degree
The Combined Bachelor of Science Degree Programmes are for students who take Statistics as a major with any other subject major from the Faculty of Science. Special Regulations for the Combined Bachelor of Science in Statistics Degree The Programme will be offered under the General Regulations of the University, the Faculty of Science Special Regulations, which allows Statistics as one of the subjects available to the students at Level 100, and the Department of Statistics Special Regulations. Subject to General Regulation 20.00 and the relevant Faculty of Science Special Regulations, the following Department of Statistics Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
1. The Faculty of Science students can take Statistics as a Major subject combined with any other Science subject. In order to take Statistics as a Major the student should have passed the 2 relevant Level 100 courses in Statistics. The decision as to what major to take is to be made as early as possible, preferably not later than Semester 5.
2. Students who intend to join the Bachelor of Science Combined Major Programme in Statistics are normally expected to complete the courses listed under the Department of Statistics Special Regulation 1.3.2 before Semester 5.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration for the Bachelor of Science Combined Major Degree in Statistics Programme shall be 8 semesters on a full-time basis.

Programme Structure
1. At Levels 100 and 200, the Statistics component of the Combined Major requires 8 core courses in Statistics and Mathematics totaling 28 credits normally taken during the first 4 semesters. In addition, courses from the other major as well as electives and General Education Courses are required as per General Academic Regulations.
2. At Levels 300 and 400, the Statistics part of the Programme consists of 8 core courses in Statistics totaling 24 credits, normally for Semester 5 and upwards. In addition, there are 3 optional courses in Statistics totaling 9 credits to be taken during the same period. Courses from the other major electives and General Education Courses will supplement the Programme structure.

Assessment
Normally assessment of any course is based on the continuous assessment and the examination in the ratio 1:2, unless otherwise specified in the Department of Statistics Special Regulations.

Award of the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree
1. A student who has successfully completed the entire core, optional, elective and General Education Courses shall be eligible for the award of the Bachelor of Science Combined Major Degree.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STA101</td>
<td>Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA102</td>
<td>Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA111</td>
<td>Introductory Concepts of Mathematics I (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA115</td>
<td>Probability (4, Sem 2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA116</td>
<td>Introduction to Statistics (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA121</td>
<td>Elements of Probability (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA201</td>
<td>Elementary Calculus (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA221</td>
<td>Statistical Distributions I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA222</td>
<td>Probability I (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Classification of Degree
The award shall be classified according to the GPA, as per General Regulation 20.4.

Level 100

Undergraduate Degree Programmes
At Level 100 a student majoring in the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Statistics shall take:

Semester 1
- STA101 Mathematics for Social Sciences I (3)
- STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
- STA102 Mathematics for Social Sciences II (3)
- STA121 Elements of Probability (2)

Elective Courses
Semester 2
- One Course on the advice of HoD (3)

At Level 100 a student intending to major in Statistics in the Bachelor of Science Programme shall take:

Semester 1
- MAT111 Introductory Concepts of Mathematics I (4)
- STA116 Introduction to Statistics (4)

Semester 2
- MAT112 Introductory Concepts of Mathematics II (4, Sem 2)
- STA122 Introductory Concepts of Probability (4, Sem 2)

General Education Courses
Two GEC courses as required for the Faculty (2+2 credits) in semester one. Two GEC courses as required by the Faculty (2+2 credits) in semester two.

Level 200
At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree in Social Sciences shall take:

Semester 1
- STA201 Elementary Calculus (3)
- STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)

Semester 2
- STA102 Matrix Algebra (2)
- STA222 Probability I (3)
At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)
STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Sem 1&2)
MAT212 Introduction to Algebra (3)

Semester 2
STA222 Probability I (3)
STA211 Statistical Methods (3)

Optional Courses
One 200 level courses from Mathematics/Computer Science/Population Studies/Environmental Science (3, Sem3)
One 200 level course from Mathematics/Computer Science/Population Studies/Environmental Science (3, Sem 4)

At Level 200 a student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
MAT221 Calculus I (3)
STA221 Statistical Distributions I (3)

Semester 2
MAT222 Calculus II (3)
STA211 Statistical Methods (3)
STA222 Probability I (3)
STA272 Statistical Computing (3, Sem 1&2)

Optional Course
1. Two 200 level courses from Mathematics/Computer Science/Population Studies/Environmental Science (3 or 3 credits)
2. A 200 level course from Mathematics/Computer Science/Population Studies/Environmental Science (3 credits)

Electives
One 200 level course (2 or 3)

General Education Courses
GEC course (2 credit)

Levels 300
At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)
STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3)

Semester 2
STA322 Probability II (3)
STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

Optional Courses (4 courses, 12 credits)
STA301 Advanced Calculus (3)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA302 Linear Algebra for Statistics (3)
STA382 Operations Research I (3)
STA384 Economic Statistics (3)
STA391 Field Survey (3)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
MAT321 Real Analysis I (3)
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)

Semester 2
STA302 Linear Algebra for Statistics (3)
STA382 Operations Research I (3)
STA383 Econometric Methods (3)
STA384 Economic Statistics (3)

Level 400
At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Arts Degree shall take:

STA431 Theory of Estimation (3, Sem 1)
STA453 Sampling Theory and Applications (3, Sem 1)
STA432 Theory of Hypothesis Testing (3, Sem 2)

Optional Courses (2 courses, 6 credits) ONE
From Semester 1
STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
STA481 Operations Research II (3)
STA483 Health Statistics (3)
STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

From Semester 2
STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference (3)
STA471 Multivariate Data Analysis (3)
STA482 Agricultural Statistics (3)
STA482 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
STA490 Research Project (6, Sem 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

At Level 400, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3, Sem 1)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3, Sem 1)

Semester 2
STA322 Probability II (3)
STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 credits)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3, Sem 1)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3, Sem 1)

At Level 300, a student majoring in Statistics for the Combined Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)
STA354 Survey Research Methods (3)

Semester 2
STA322 Probability II (3)
STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

Optional Courses (4 courses, 12 credits)
STA301 Advanced Calculus (3)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA321 Statistical Distributions II (3)
STA352 Regression and Linear Models (3)

Semester 2
STA322 Probability II (3)
STA353 Experimental Design I (3)

Optional Courses (4 courses, 12 credits)
STA301 Advanced Calculus (3)
STA361 Time Series Analysis (3)
STA381 Statistical Quality Control (3)
Semester 1
STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
STA432 Theory of Hypothesis Testing (3, Sem 2)

Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 credits)
One From Semester 1
STA453 Sampling Theory and Applications (3)
STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
STA483 Health Statistics (3)
STA490 Research Project (6 credits, Semesters 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

One From Semester 2
STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference (3)
STA451 Experimental Design II (3)
STA452 Introduction to Generalized Linear Model (3)
STA462 Applied Stochastic Process (3)
STA471 Multivariate Data Analysis (3)
STA482 Agricultural Statistics (3)
STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)
STA490 Research Project (6 credits, Semesters 1 and 2) (will be allowed for exceptionally motivated students).

At Level 400 A student majoring in Statistics for the Single Major Bachelor of Science Degree shall take:

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA421 Multivariate Distributions (3)
STA431 Theory of Estimation (3)
STA453 Sampling Theory and Applications(3)

Semester 2
STA461 Elements of Stochastic Process (3)
STA432 Theory of Testing of Hypothesis (3)
STA433 Introduction to Bayesian Inference(3)
STA490 Research Project (6 credits, Semesters 1 and 2)

Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 credits)

Semester 1
STA483 Health Statistics (3)

Semester 2
STA451 Experimental Design II (3)
STA452 Introduction to Generalized Linear Model (3)
STA462 Applied Stochastic Process (3)
STA471 Multivariate Data Analysis (3)
STA482 Agricultural Statistics (3)
STA484 Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials (3)

Postgraduate Programmes in Statistics

Special Departmental Regulations
The Graduate Level courses in the Department of Statistics will be guided by the following Departmental Special Regulations:

Departmental Regulations for the Postgraduate Diploma in Statistics Programme
General Academic Regulations and the following Departmental Special Regulations shall apply:

Entrance Requirements
The normal entrance requirement is a Bachelor's Degree with at least 40 percent of the courses in Statistics, from any recognized University. Other applicants may be considered in exceptional cases on the recommendation of the Department; however they may be required to take some undergraduate courses as specified by the Department.

Duration of the Programme
The normal duration of the Programme on a full-time basis is 2 semesters. However a maximum of 6 semesters is allowed for part-time students to complete the Programme.

Programme Structure
The Postgraduate Diploma is done by course work that includes 7 core courses at Levels 5 and 6 totaling 19 credits and at least 2 optional courses totaling 6 credits. One of the core courses is the Project Report STA691. This is a 2-semester Programme for full-time students.

Semester 1
Core Courses
STA621 Probability (2)
STA631 Statistical Inference I (2)
STA641 Statistical Analysis I (3)

Semester 2
STA642 Statistical Analysis II (3)
STA672 Multivariate Analysis (3)
STA681 Statistical Consultancy (3)
STA691 Project Report (3)

Optional Courses (3 courses, 9 Credits)

Semester 1
STA601 Mathematical Methods for Statistics (3)
STA671 Advanced Statistical Computing (3)
STA685 Agricultural Statistics (3)
STA686 Economic Statistics and National Accounting (3)

Semester 2
STA651 Advanced Survey Sampling (3)
STA661 Time Series Analysis and Forecasting (3)
STA683 Medical Statistics (3)
STA684 Econometrics (3)
STA687 Education Statistics (3)

Assessments
Students shall be assessed on their coursework in accordance with General Academic Regulations and the Department of Statistics Special Regulations 6.2.

Award of the Postgraduate Diploma in Statistics
1 A student who has passed the core and optional courses and has received 25 hours of credits shall be eligible for the award of the Postgraduate Diploma in Statistics.

Classifications
The award of diploma shall be classified as per General Academic Regulation 40.73.9.

Coursework
1 Unless otherwise stated, each course is normally 3 credits.
2 The Project Report (STA691) is a non-taught one semester course, where the student does a project under a supervisor from the Department. The topic shall be finalized at the start of the semester. There will be no formal final examination. The course shall be assessed by 2 research exercises and a project report. The 2 research exercises shall constitute 40 percent and the project report shall constitute 60 percent of the final marks. The project report shall be submitted before the last day of the semester. However, a request for a one-month extension may be allowed by the Head of the Department under special circumstances, if so
recommended by the supervisor. This course is open to PGD Statistics students only.

3 For Advanced Statistical Computing (STA671) the final examination will be a practical exam of 4 hours and the final assessment grade will be based on the continuous assessment and the examination in the ratio 1:1.

4 The Statistical Consultancy (STA681) course is centered on consultancy projects which are assigned in the first 2 weeks of the semester. Some informal lectures accompany these projects to explain specific technicalities. The final grade is based on 3 minor projects and a major project. The minor projects shall account for 50 percent of the final mark and the major project will account for 50 percent of the final mark. There will be no formal final examination.

5 In the Selected Special Topics (STA 783) course, the student undertakes up-to-date reviews of 2 or 3 statistical techniques. Assessment is based on the review reports on the techniques selected, a presentation of at least one of the reports at a Departmental seminar, and a 3-hour open-book examination on the journal articles chosen for the report. The report presentation and the examination carry equal weight for the final grade.

6 The Research Treatise (STA790) shall be taken over a period of 2 semesters totaling 6 credits; the student will work under a supervisor. The student is expected to demonstrate the ability to master and critically analyse a prescribed area of advanced statistical literature by making 2 presentations and finally presenting a Research Treatise Report. At the end of STA 791 the student should have made the first presentation and the second presentation will be at the end of STA792. The last date of submission of the Report shall be the last day of lectures of the second semester. In exceptional cases, it may be extended by not more than 2 months, if a request is made through the Head of the Department, supported by the supervisor, at least 2 weeks before the due date. The length of the report shall be around 60 typed, A4 pages (1.5 line spacing). The report will be internally evaluated and will further be externalized. The final assessment grade for the course will be based on the 2 presentations (20 percent) and the report (80 percent).

Examinations and Assessment
The written examination for all courses, unless otherwise specified in the course template, will normally be of 3 hours’ duration. The continuous assessment and the examination shall be weighted in the ratio of 1:1. The cumulative GPA shall be computed in accordance with General Academic Regulation 00.86.
Act and Statutes
An Act to re-enact the University of Botswana Act with substantial revisions to the governance structures of the University and matters incidental thereto.

Date of assent: 28.08.2008
Date of Commencement: ON NOTICE
ENACTED by the Parliament of Botswana.

PART I - Preliminary

Short title and commencement
1. This Act may be cited as the University of Botswana Act, 2008, and shall come into operation on such commencement operation on such date as the Minister may, by Order published in the Gazette, appoint.

Interpretation
2. In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires -
   “Council” means the University Council established under section 9; “member” means a member of the Council; “Minister” means the Minister of Education and Skills Development; “Statutes” means the statutes enacted under section 22; “University” means the University of Botswana established under section 3.

PART II - Establishment of University of Botswana

Continuance of the University
3. (1) The University of Botswana, established in terms of section 2 of the Act repealed under section 23, shall continue to exist as it established under this Act.
   (2) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and common seal, capable of suing and being sued in its own name and, subject to the provisions of this Act, performing such acts as bodies corporate may by law perform.

Functions of University
4. The functions of the University shall include the following -
   (a) providing higher education and training;
   (b) advancing and disseminating knowledge through teaching;
   (c) undertaking, promoting and facilitating research and scholarly investigations;
   (d) supporting and contributing to the realisation of economic and social development of the nation;
   (e) contributing to the cultural and social life of the community; and
   (f) contributing to the advancement of the intellectual and human resource capacity of the international community.

Powers of University
5. (1) The University shall have the power to do all things necessary or expedient for exercising and discharging its functions subject to this Act.
   (2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the University shall have the power to -
      (a) provide programmes and courses of study, conduct examinations and other methods of assessment, and award degrees and other qualifications;
      (b) establish relationships and collaborate with other persons or bodies, or other institutions of learning, higher education, training or research, within or outside Botswana, upon such terms as may be provided in the Statutes;
      (c) establish or participate in the establishment of trading, research or other co-operations as may be necessary in the discharge of its functions;
      (d) collaborate with business, professional, cultural, social or other interests within and outside Botswana as may be necessary in the discharge of its functions;
      (e) collaborate with alumni and associations of alumni and graduates of the University;
      (f) receive and accept donations on such terms and conditions as shall not be inconsistent with this Act and the functions of the University;
      (g) maintain, manage, administer and invest funds in a manner which shall not be inconsistent with this Act and the functions of the University;
      (h) acquire and hold movable or immovable property, sell, lease, mortgage or otherwise alienate or dispose of the property, and enter into other transactions.
   (3) Where the University has resolved that it is necessary or expedient to acquire a property under subsection (2) (h), the property may be treated as property required for public purposes, and the Acquisition of Property Act shall apply with necessary modifications to allow for the vesting of the property acquired in the University and for the cost to be defrayed by the University.

PART III - Governance of University

Principal officers
6. The Principal officers and the governance bodies of the University shall be -
   (a) Chancellor;
   (b) Chairperson of the University Council;
   (c) Vice-Chancellor;
   (d) University Council;
   (e) Senate; and
   (f) Deputy Vice-Chancellors

Chancellor
7. (1) The Chancellor shall be appointed by the President of Botswana,
   (2) The Chancellor shall hold office for five years and shall be eligible for one more term of five years.
   (3) The Chancellor shall be the titular head of the University and shall be its ambassador, promoting goodwill and mobilising resources for the University.
   (4) The Chancellor shall preside over ceremonial assemblies of the University, confer awards of the University and, perform and exercise other functions and powers as described in this Act and in the Statutes,
   (5) In the absence of the Chancellor, the Chairperson of the Council shall act as Chancellor.

Vice-Chancellor
8. (1) The Vice-Chancellor shall be appointed by the Minister after consulting the University Council and the Senate.
   (2) The Vice-Chancellor shall be the chief executive officer of the University with overall responsibility for academic and administrative leadership as well as chief disciplinary officer of the University, subject to directions of policy that the University may give from time to time.
   (3) The Council shall, in consultation with the Senate, appoint Deputy Vice-Chancellors in accordance with the Statutes,
   (4) When the post of Vice-Chancellor is vacant, or when the Vice-Chancellor is absent, or for any reason unable to perform the functions of Vice-Chancellor, the Council shall appoint, in accordance with the Statutes, one of the Deputy Vice-Chancellors, or if no Deputy Vice-Chancellor is available, any other suitable member of the University staff, to act as Vice-Chancellor,
   (5) The Vice-Chancellor and the Deputy Vice-Chancellors shall together constitute an executive management team to provide executive leadership to the University.

Establishment of Council
9. (1) There shall be established the University Council which shall of Council consist of the following 32 members -
(a) 12 people appointed by the Minister, five of whom shall be appointed by the Minister at his or her discretion and seven on the recommendation of the Council;
(b) seven people representative of civil society and the private sector, appointed by the Chancellor on the recommendation of Council in accordance with the procedure and criteria specified in the Statutes;
(c) two people who are not resident in Botswana appointed by the University Council by reason of their special knowledge and competence in tertiary education;
(d) one graduate of the University and its antecedents who is not a member of staff of the University elected by the Alumni Association of the University;
(e) the Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellors;
(f) two members of Senate elected by Senate, one of whom shall be a professor and the other a Dean of Faculty;
(g) one member of the academic staff who is not on Senate, elected by members of academic staff; (h) two members of the support staff elected by the support staff, one of whom shall be a senior member of staff;
(i) one student elected by the student body of the University.
(2) The procedure for election of members under paragraphs (d), (f), (g), (h) and (i) of subsection (1) shall be prescribed in the Statutes.
(3) A member shall be responsible to the Council and not to the entity that appointed or elected the member and shall have a duty to act in good faith, avoid conflict of interest and, to exercise skill and judgment in the interest of the University.
(4) A member shall have collective responsibility for the decisions of the Council.

Chairperson of the Council
10. (1) The Minister shall appoint the Chairperson of Council and members shall elect the Vice-Chairperson from amongst those members that are not employees or students of the University.
2) The Chairperson of the Council shall—
(a) provide leadership to the Council;
(b) conduct meetings of Council;
(c) act as the representative and spokesperson of Council; and
(d) subject to restrictions and directions of the Council, act for and make decisions on behalf of the Council where it is not feasible or practicable to convene a meeting of the Council for that purpose.
(3) The Vice-Chairperson of the Council shall act as Chairperson in the absence of the Chairperson.

Functions of Council
11. (1) The Council shall be the governing body with ultimate responsibility for ensuring the performance of the University in accordance with the powers conferred by this Act.
(2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the Council shall—
(a) set the strategic directions of the University by overseeing the development and adoption of the mission and strategic plans of the University;
(b) approve major policies, capital plans, and the annual planning and budget report;
(c) monitor and review the overall performance of the University in relation to plans, policies, values, academic standards, financial management and buildings and estates management;
(d) approve the annual report and annual statement of accounts of the University;
(e) ensure the strategic leadership of the University;
(f) enhance the engagement between the University and the community; (g) approve the institutional plan of the University; and
(h) maintain, through Senate, high levels of academic standards.

Powers of Council
12. (1) The Council shall have the power to do or provide for any act or thing which it considers necessary or expedient for the performance or exercise of its powers and functions under this Act,
(2) Without prejudice to subsection (1), the Council shall—
(a) determine persons who are authorised to sign contracts, cheques and other documents on behalf of the University, and otherwise regulate procedure in relation to transactions entered into by the University;
(b) provide for the safe custody and proper use of the seal of the University; and
(c) approve terms and conditions of service for employees of the University,
(3) The Council may, where it deems it necessary or desirable, prohibit the admission of a person as a student of the University.
(4) The Council shall exercise the powers under subsection (3) notwithstanding the disciplinary powers conferred on the Vice-Chancellor by section 8(2),
(5) Without prejudice to the powers conferred on any other person or public officer under any other law, the Council shall have the power, after consultation with the Minister and the Senate, to declare the University closed for purposes of offering some or all academic programmes and courses and, whenever possible, indicate the period during which the University shall remain closed,
(6) Notwithstanding subsection (5), where there is an emergency, the Chairperson shall have the power to act on behalf of the Council and order the University closed.

Accounts and annual reports
13. (1) The Council shall cause the accounts of the University to be annual report drawn up, audited and published annually and at such times and in such manner as the Minister may direct,
(2) The Council shall cause, within six months after the end of each academic year, a report of the activities of the University to be drawn up and made available to the public.
(3) The Council shall, within 30 days of receiving a copy of the audited accounts and the report give such copy and report to the Minister.
(4) The Minister shall, within 90 days of receiving the report and a copy of the audited accounts, lay such report and accounts before the National Assembly.

Tenure of office
14. (1) The Chairperson and Vice-Chairperson of Council shall hold office for a period of three years and shall be eligible for re-election for one more term.
(2) All appointed or elected members, other than the member elected by the student body of the University, shall hold office for a period not exceeding three years and shall be eligible for reappointment or re-election for one more term at the end of the first period.
(3) The member elected by the student body shall hold office for a period not exceeding one year and shall be eligible for re-election for one more term.
Disqualification, removal and resignation of member
15. (1) A person shall not be appointed, or elected a member or be qualified to continue to hold office, who
(a) in terms of a law in force in any country-
   (i) been adjudged or otherwise declared bankrupt and has not been discharged; or
   (ii) made an assignment, arrangement or composition with his or her creditors, which has not been rescinded or set aside;
(b) within a period of 10 years immediately preceding the date of his or her appointment, been convicted - (i) of a criminal offence in any country; or
   (ii) of a criminal offence for which he or she has not received a free pardon and notwithstanding that the sentence has been suspended, which, if committed in Botswana, would have been committed, the penalty for which would be at least six months imprisonment without the option of a fine,
(c) a period of 30 days has elapsed from the date the member gave notice in writing of his intention to resign in accordance with subsection (1) (c),
(d) a period of 30 days has elapsed from the date the member was given notice in writing by the Secretary to the Council, but 'such person shall have no vote.
(e) a period of 30 days from the expiry of the member’s term of office, the Secretary shall initiate the process of appointing or electing a replacement who shall hold office for a full term,
(f) the Staff Appeals Committee; and   (g) the Physical Resources Committee.

Meetings of Council
16. (1) Subject to this Act and the Statutes, the Council shall regulate, its own proceedings.
(2) The Council shall meet at least three times in an academic year,
(3) The Chairperson may, upon giving a written notice of not less than 14 days, and upon a written request of not less than one half of the members, call a meeting,
(4) The Chairperson may, where the urgency of the matter does not permit giving notice as required in paragraph (a), call a special meeting of the Council, giving a shorter notice,
(5) The Chairperson shall preside at any meeting of Council, but in the absence of the Chairperson the Vice-Chairperson shall preside, and in the absence of both the Chairperson and Vice-Chairperson, the members present shall elect one of them, not being an employee or student of the University, to preside at that meeting.
(6) The quorum at any meeting of Council shall be one half of the members.
(7) A decision of the Council on any question shall be taken by the majority of the members present and voting at that meeting, and in the event of an equality of votes, the person presiding shall have a casting vote in addition to that person’s deliberative vote,
(8) The Council may invite any person whose presence it considers necessary, to attend and to participate in the deliberations of the Council, but ‘such person shall have no vote.

Disclosure of interest
17. (1) A member who has a direct or an indirect interest in a private capacity in any matter to be considered by the Council or a committee of Council shall, as soon as practicable after the commencement of the meeting, disclose the interest and shall not, unless the Council otherwise directs, take part in any consideration or discussion of, or vote on, any question relating to the matter,
(2) A disclosure of interest made under this section shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting at which it is made,
(3) Where a member fails to disclose his or her interest in accordance with subsection (1) and a decision by the committee is made which benefits ‘such member directly, such decision shall be null and void,
(4) A member who contravenes the provisions of subsection (1) shall be guilty of an offence and liable to a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both.

Confidentiality
18.(1) Every member and any person co-opted to a committee shall observe and preserve the confidentiality of all matters coming before a committee, and such confidentiality shall subsist even after the termination of his or her term of office or his or her co-option
(2) A person to whom confidential information is revealed through working with a committee shall not disclose that information to any other person unless he or she is required to do so in terms of any written law or for purposes of any judicial proceedings.
(3) A member or an expert engaged to render services that may include access to confidential information shall not, for a period of two years after leaving office or rendering such expert service, use to their personal advantage information acquired by him or her by virtue of being associated with a committee.
(4) Any person who contravenes the provisions of this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable to a fine not exceeding P6 000, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months, or to both, and for a second or subsequent offence to a fine not exceeding P10 000, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.

Committees of Council
19. (1) The Council shall have the following committees whose terms of reference and membership shall be as specified in the Statutes —
(a) the Executive Committee of Council;
(b) the Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate;
(c) the Audit Committee;
(d) the Finance Committee;
(e) the Human Resources Committee;
(f) the Staff Appeals Committee; and   (g) the Physical Resources Committee.
(2) The Council may from time to time establish other Committees of a special or general nature, consisting of its members or other suitably qualified persons, as it may
deem fit.

(3) The Council may delegate any of its functions under this Act to a committee established in terms of subsection (2).

(4) The provisions of sections 16 and 17 shall, with necessary modifications, apply to a member of a committee.

Remuneration and Allowances

20. A member may be paid remuneration and allowances, if any, as Government may from time to time determine.

Senate

21. (1) There shall be a Senate which shall have overall responsibility Senate for the -
(i) academic policies and academic plans,
(ii) academic development strategy, and
(iii) research and community service functions of the University.

(2) The Senate shall consist of the Vice-Chancellor and such other members as shall be specified in the Statutes.

(3) The Senate shall -
(a) have control and direction of teaching, research, assessment, conferment of degrees and granting of other awards of the University;
(b) be responsible for the integration of academic, financial and physical plans through the annual planning and budget report;
(c) be responsible for articulating the objectives, goals, mission and strategic direction of the University for approval by the Council;
(d) be responsive to requests of Council and regularly monitor its own performance; and
(e) establish committees of the Senate and regulate their membership as it sees fit.

(4) The Senate shall have such other functions and powers as shall from time to time be specified in the Statutes.

PART IV - General Indemnity

22. No matter or thing done or omitted to be done by a member or a member of a committee shall, if the matter or thing is done or omitted to be done bona fide in the course of operations of the Council or a committee, render a member or a member of a committee personally liable for an action, claim or demand.

Statutes

23. The Council, acting in consultation with the Senate may, from time to time, enact Statutes for the better carrying into effect of this Act.

Repeal of Cap.57:01

24. The University of Botswana Act, (hereinafter referred to as the repealed Act, is hereby repealed.

Savings

25. (1) All Statutes, rules, ordinances and regulations made under the repealed Act shall, to the extent consistent with this Act, and until otherwise provided for in terms of this Act, continue to apply and have effect.

(2) All principal officers, the Council and the Senate appointed under the repealed Act shall continue to hold and perform the duties and exercise the powers conferred under the repealed Act until they are replaced by officers and governance structures provided for in this Act.

Transitional Provisions

26. (1) Upon commencement of this Act, there shall be transferred to and vested in the University, by virtue of this Act and without further assurance, all property, rights, liabilities and obligations that, immediately before the commencement of this Act, were the property, rights, liabilities and obligations of the former University.

(2) The Minister may, by notice published in the Gazette, make such transitional arrangements not otherwise provided for in this Act as shall be necessary.

PASSED by the National Assembly this 14th day of August, 2008.
E.S. MPOFU,
Clerk of the National Assembly.

THE UNIVERSITY OF BOTSWANA STATUTES

In Exercise of the powers conferred by Section 14 of the University of Botswana Act (Cap.57:01), the Council of the University of Botswana hereby makes the following Statutes:

Part I Preliminary

1. These Statutes shall be cited as the University of Botswana Statutes, 1982, which came into operation on 7th October 1983; as revised from time to time.

2. In these Statutes, unless the context otherwise requires:
   “Academic staff” means an employee of the University whose terms and conditions of service include the obligation to undertake teaching, research and service and/or holders of posts declared by Council on the advice of Senate to be academic;
   “Act” means the University of Botswana Act (Cap.57:01);
   “Chancellor” means the person holding the office of Chancellor in accordance with Section 5 of the Act;
   “Council” means the University Council established under Section 8 of the Act;
   “Department” means either an academic department of the University established under Statute 45 in which one or more programmes of study are offered, or an administrative department;
   “Deputy Vice Chancellor” means a Deputy Vice Chancellor appointed under Part VI hereof;
   “Director” means the head of an institute, an academic centre or an administrative department;
   “Graduate” means a graduate of the University or a graduate of the former universities, in accordance with the Act;
   “Quorum” means the minimum number of members that must be present to constitute a valid meeting. Except where otherwise specified by the Statutes, the quorum of every committee shall be 50% (fifty percent) of the membership thereof;
   “Senate” means the Senate established under Section 9 of the Act;
   “Staff Development Fellow” means an employee of the University who is required to undertake programmes of study or training in order to become a member of the academic staff;
   “Student” means any person currently registered for the receipt of instruction in the University;
   “Support Staff” means an employee of the University whose terms and conditions of service do not include the primary obligation to undertake teaching and research;
   “University” means the University of Botswana established under Section 2 of the Act;
   “Vice Chancellor” means the Vice Chancellor appointed pursuant to Section 7 (1) of the Act.

3. Nothing in these Statutes shall be interpreted in such a manner as to conflict
with the provisions of the Act and where such conflict occurs the provisions of the Act shall take precedence.

4. The members of the University shall be:
   (a) The members of the Council;
   (b) The members of the Senate;
   (c) The employees of the University;
   (d) The professors emeritus;
   (e) The graduates;
   (f) The students;
   (g) Such other persons as the Council may declare to be members.

5. The membership of students on Council, Senate, the Committees of Council and Senate, and any other Committees or Boards defined in these Statutes shall cease if they cease to be registered students of the University or when they are suspended, provided that during such period of suspension the Student Representative Council may nominate replacement members from its membership.

6. Unless otherwise specified in these Statutes, the Secretary of every Committee or Board shall be appointed by the Chairperson of the Committee or Board.

7. The Secretary to Council, Senate, and any other Committee or Board defined in these Statutes shall also be the Secretary to the respective Executive Committee.

Part II Meetings of Council

8. (i) The Council shall hold an annual meeting in each calendar year within six months after the end of each academic year, as shall be appointed by the Chairperson of Council.
   (ii) At each annual meeting the Council will receive an annual report of the activities of the University, together with an audited Statement of Accounts, and the Council shall take such action as may be necessary and make such appointments as required to be made at an annual meeting.
   (iii) Notice of the annual meeting shall be circulated by the Secretary of Council at least twenty-one days before the date thereof and a copy of the annual report and the audited Statement of Accounts shall be sent to every member of the Council at least fourteen days before the date of the annual meeting.
   (iv) An agenda shall be circulated by the Secretary to Council at least fourteen days before any meeting of the Council.
   (v) The Council shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the restricted agenda of Council.
   (vi) Subject to these Statutes, Council shall regulate its own procedure.

9. The University’s duly appointed Director of Legal Services shall act as Secretary to Council and shall be responsible for the management of the Council Committee structure.

10. (i) When a vacancy occurs in the membership of the Council the Secretary shall notify the appointing or electing person or body, as appropriate, requesting the appointment or election of a successor to the vacant office, in accordance with Section 8 of the Act and the schedule the reter.
    (ii) The Secretary shall arrange the conduct of all elections to other bodies and offices by the Council, its committees, and such other groups of University staff as shall be determined from time to time by the Vice Chancellor.
    (iii) Elections conducted under Statute 10 (ii) to membership of Council shall be conducted by secret ballot.

11. The Secretary shall be responsible for the signing and custody of notices and legal documents on behalf of the University and Council shall pass a resolution to such effect for the purpose of legal process.

Part III The University Seal

12. (i) The Secretary to Council shall be responsible to the Council for the safe custody of the University Seal.
   (ii) The University Seal shall be affixed to leases, contracts and agreements to which the University is a party, and to parchments issued in respect of any degree, diploma or certificate conferred by the authority of the Senate; provided however, that it is specifically recorded that any failure by the University to affix the University Seal shall not affect the enforceability of such lease, contract or agreement in any manner whatsoever.
   (iii) Except as provided in Statute 12 (ii), the University Seal shall be used only on the specific authority of the Council.
   (iv) The affixing of the University Seal to any certificate, diplomas, degrees or any awards shall be attested to by the Secretary to Council and witnessed by a Dean of Faculty or School.
   (v) The affixing of the University Seal to any document, other than certificates, diplomas, degrees or awards, as authorised by Council shall be attested to by the Secretary to Council and by a witness who shall be a member of the Council.

Part IV Appointment of the Vice Chancellor

13. (i) There shall be a Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate to recommend to the Council what advice it should give to the Chancellor, in terms of Section 7(1) of the Act, on the appointment of a Vice Chancellor.

(ii) The Joint Committee shall consist of the following members:
   (a) A chairperson, who is not the chairperson of Council, appointed by Council from among those of its members who are not employees of the University;
   (b) Three persons appointed by the Council from among those of its members who are not members of the Senate; and
   (c) Three persons appointed by the Senate.

Part V Appointment of Deputy Vice Chancellors

14. (i) There shall be a Joint Committee of the Council and the Senate which shall make recommendations to the Council in respect of the appointment of Deputy Vice Chancellors.
   (ii) The Joint Committee prescribed by the Statute shall be constituted as in Statute 13 (ii) except that the Vice Chancellor shall also be a member.
   (iii) The Council shall appoint Deputy Vice Chancellors after considering recommendations from the Joint Committee of Council and Senate, and for such period and under such conditions as the Council shall determine.

Part VI Auditor

15. Unless otherwise directed under the provisions of Section 13 of the Act, the Council shall appoint an Auditor provided that:
   (a) The person so appointed shall be, in the opinion of the Council, a qualified accountant actively practising his/her profession; and
   (b) No person shall be so appointed who, or any of whose partners, is a member of the Council or staff of the University.

16. The Auditor appointed in accordance with Statute 15 may require:
   (i) Any member, servant or agent of the University to produce such material information in regard to any transaction of the University or the management of its affairs as such member, servant or agent is reasonably able to provide; and
   (ii) The production for inspection by the Auditor of any book or document relating to the affairs of or any cash or securities belonging to the
University by the member, servant or agent of the University in possession of such book, document, cash or securities.

17. The Auditor appointed in accordance with Statute 15 shall report directly to the Council on whether proper books of account have been kept and whether the financial statements of the University;
(a) Were prepared on a basis consistent with the requirements of the Council and/or in agreement with the books of account;
(b) In the case of the income and expenditure statement gives a true and fair view of the income and expenditure of the University for the financial year; and
(c) In the case of the balance sheet gives a true and fair view of the University's state of affairs as at the end of the financial year.

Part VII Finance and Audit Committee
18. (i) There shall be a Finance and Audit Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
(c) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Education or representative;
(d) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Finance and Development Planning or representative;
(e) Director of Financial Services;
(f) One person appointed by the Senate;
(g) One member of Council from among those appointed to Council from Senate;
(h) One student appointed annually by the Students Representative Council of the University;
(i) Member of Council appointed to Council from among the academic staff;
(j) Member of Council appointed to Council from among the support staff;
(k) Member of Council elected by the Botswana graduates of the University of Botswana and its antecedents.
(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.
(iii) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.
19. Subject to such limitations as the Council may impose, the Committee may govern, manage, regulate and advise the Council on the finances, accounts, investments, property business and generally, the financial affairs of the University; but the Committee shall not approve, without further reference to the Council, the annual estimates of expenditure. Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, the Committee may:
(a) Recommend policies regarding the management and administration of the finances of the University;
(b) Receive the annual estimates of revenue and expenditure and act as an advisory committee to Council on such estimates;
(c) Recommend to Council the form in which the annual estimates of revenue and expenditure and financial statements shall be prepared;
(d) Make rules and prescribe procedures for the control of expenditure and generally for the administration of financial affairs; and
(e) Determine the persons who shall be authorised to sign cheques, contracts and other financial orders and documents on behalf of the University, provided such persons shall include the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration).
20. (i) The Committee shall cause to be established a fund (in this Statute referred to as "the Fund").
(ii) There shall be paid into the Fund:
(a) Monies representing any gift, donation, legacy or endowment received by the University without direction as to the purpose to which the same shall be applied;
(b) Monies appropriated in terms of Statute 20 (ii); and/or
(c) Monies accruing or realised from any investment or deposit made under Statutes 20 (iv) or (v).
(iii) The annual estimates of the University shall make provision for the expenditure of any monies to be appropriated by the Committee for payment into the Fund, and shall specify the purposes for which those monies may be paid from the Fund.
(iv) Pending payment from the Fund, monies of the Fund (including monies appropriated for payment into the Fund) shall, as far as is practicable, be invested.
(v) Monies of the Fund which are not invested in accordance with Statute 20(iv) shall be deposited in a University bank account specifically opened for that purpose.
(vi) Subject to the supervision of the Committee, investments of the monies of the Fund may be released at any time.
(vii) Monies may be paid from the Fund either for the purposes specified under Statute 20 (iii) or for such other purposes as the Committee may determine.
21. (i) The Committee shall cause to be kept all proper books and records of account of the income, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the University.
(ii) Within three months of the end of each financial year, the Committee shall cause to be submitted to the Auditor the account of the University together with:
(a) a statement of income and expenditure during such year; and
(b) a statement of the assets and liabilities of the University on the last day of such year.
22. The financial year of the University shall be the period from 1st April in one year to 31st March in the following year.
23. (i) Subject to the approval of the Council, the Committee shall by regulation prescribe the level of fees payable, and the dates by which such fees shall be paid, in respect of tuition, maintenance and such other facilities and services of the University as the Council may from time to time determine.
(ii) No student shall be awarded a degree or other qualification of the University unless he/she shall have paid, or have had paid on his/her behalf, all fees including fines due to the University.
24. The Committee may exercise or perform any duty conferred or imposed on it with financial implications, subject to such limitations as the Council may specify.

Part VIII Human Resources Committee
25. (i) There shall be a Human Resources Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
(c) Director of Human Resources;
(d) A person appointed by Senate;
(e) One Dean of Faculty elected by the Deans;
(f) One external member of Council appointed by Council;
(g) One member of the academic staff elected by the academic staff;
(h) One member of the support staff elected by the support staff;
(i) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than two additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.
(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual
basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

26. The Committee shall inter alia recommend to Council, for approval, policies regarding the human resource development and training needs, the terms and conditions of service, and benefits of the employees of the University.

Part IX Physical Resources Committee

27. (i) There shall be a Physical Resources Committee (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellor;
(c) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Education or representative;
(d) Permanent Secretary of the Ministry of Finance and Development Planning or representative;
(e) One member of Senate appointed by Senate;
(f) Director of Institutional Planning;
(g) Director of Campus Services;
(h) Director of Financial Services;
(i) Director of the Department of Architecture and Building Services in the Ministry of Works, Transport, and Communications or representative;
(j) A representative of a local authority as a co-opted member;
(k) The member of Council appointed to Council from Senate;
(l) One external member of Council appointed by Council. The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.

28. (i) The Committee shall, inter alia recommend to the Council policies on the overall management of construction, maintenance and security of buildings, grounds, campus properties, equipment and vehicles of the University.

Part X Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee

29. (i) There shall be a Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of the Council (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
(c) Principal of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(d) Two external members of Council appointed by Council;
(e) One Dean of Faculty elected by the Deans;
(f) Director of Human Resources;
(g) Three professors from within the University, coming from different faculties, elected by Senate for a term of three years after which they shall be eligible for re-election for a second term only.
(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.
(iii) Deans of Faculties and Schools, Directors of Institutes and Centres, and Directors of Administrative Departments to or within which an appointment or promotion is to be made may be invited but only when the business of their Faculty, School, Institute, Centre, or Department is under consideration.
(iv) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

30. (i) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Council, the Committee shall make every appointment and every promotion of the academic staff of the University of the rank of associate professor and above, the appointment of Deans and Deputy Deans of Faculties, Directors of Institutes and Centres, and the appointment of support staff of the University of the rank of Director or equivalent.
(ii) No appointment or promotion of such members of the academic and the support staff of the University as are specified in Statute 30 shall be made by the Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee in accordance with Part XXXIII.

31. (i) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Council, every appointment and every promotion of the academic staff of the University below the rank of associate professor, and of the support staff of the University below the rank of director, shall be made by the Vice Chancellor or such persons as to whom such powers may be delegated by the Vice Chancellor.
(ii) No appointment or promotion of such members of the academic and the support staff of the University as are specified in Statute 31 shall be made by the Vice Chancellor or such persons as to whom such powers may be delegated until the Vice Chancellor has considered every recommendation made by the Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee in accordance with Part XXXIII.

32. The Vice Chancellor may refer decisions in respect of University staff appointments or promotions to Council and defer their implementation until Council has taken a decision on them.

Part XI Staff Appeals Committee

33. (i) There shall be a Staff Appeals Committee of Council (in this Part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
a) two external members of Council appointed by Council;
b) one member of Council elected to Council by Senate.
(ii) The Council shall appoint, on an annual basis, a Chairperson from amongst the members of the Committee.
(iii) Subject to any directions which may be given by Council, the Committee shall regulate its own procedures.
34. Subject to such directions as may be given by the Council, the Committee shall hear appeals by staff against decisions of Management and make appropriate recommendations to Council.

Part XII Vice Chancellor

35. Subject to the Act, the Vice Chancellor shall be the chief executive officer of the University and shall have overall responsibility for academic and administrative leadership by directing policy formulation and institutional planning and development; for the management and development of the University by ensuring implementation of University policy; and for the achievement of its mission through monitoring and evaluation of the performance of the University in realizing its goals and objectives.
36. The Vice Chancellor shall be responsible to the Council for maintaining and promoting the reputation and good order, efficient and effective processes and procedures of the University, and shall have all such powers as are necessary or expedient for the performance of these duties, and may establish such committees as the Vice Chancellor may deem necessary for the better carrying into effect of these functions.
37. The Vice Chancellor shall have overall direction and responsibility over the academic and administrative work of the University and the staff thereof, and the officers and servants employed in, or in connection with, such work,
including (but without limitation by reason of such particularity) the Deputy Vice Chancellors, and has such other powers and shall perform such other duties as may be conferred upon or assigned to the Vice Chancellor by the Council; it being specifically recorded that any derogation of responsibility to such officers, servants and Deputy Vice Chancellors made in accordance with these Statutes shall be strictly without derogation to the authority of the Vice Chancellor as provided for by Section 7 (1) of the Act.

38. (i) Subject to such regulation as the Council may approve, the Vice-Chancellor may, in the performance of his/her duties under Statute 34, by order:
(a) Prohibit the admission as a student of any person to the University;
(b) Prohibit, for such period as shall be specified, any student from attending classes or a particular class;
(c) Prohibit any student from entering or remaining on such part or parts of the University precinct as shall be specified;
(d) Dismiss or suspend for such period as shall be specified any student or group of students;
(e) Take any other action against any student as the Vice Chancellor may in the circumstances deem appropriate.
(ii) The Vice Chancellor may appoint a disciplinary committee, with such membership as is deemed appropriate, to assist the Vice Chancellor in the performance of the Vice Chancellor’s duties under this Statute.

39. Subject to the Act and to Statute 37, the Vice Chancellor may delegate such powers, duties or functions as is deemed fit and prescribe conditions governing the exercise of any delegated power, duty or function, provided that, in the absence of express provision made by him/her power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

40. The Vice Chancellor shall by virtue of office be a member of every Faculty and of every other entity of the University established by or under the Statutes and of every board or committee appointed by the Council, by the Senate, by any Faculty or by any other authority of the University established by or under these Statutes.

Part XIII Deputy Vice Chancellors
41. (i) The Deputy Vice Chancellors shall be responsible to the Vice Chancellor for providing leadership through policy formulation and planning, management and administration in their respective areas of responsibilities as may be defined in the Ordinances/Regulations provided for by Part XXXVII, if any.
(ii) By virtue of office, a Deputy Vice Chancellor shall be a member of such other committees of Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

Part XIV Senate
42. (i) The membership of the Senate shall consist of:
(a) Vice Chancellor;
(b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
(c) Three representatives from each faculty elected by the Faculty Board, two of whom shall be professors or Associate professors and the other a senior lecturer or lecturer;
(d) Deans of the Faculties, Schools of the University and the Deans of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(e) Three students one of whom should be a graduate student appointed annually by the Students Representative Council;
(f) Director of Academic Development;
(g) Two representatives of each Faculty, elected by the Faculty Board one of whom shall be a Professor or an Associate Professor;
(h) Director of Library Services;
(i) Director of Research and Development;
(j) Deputy Director of Affiliated Institutions;
(k) Director of Academic Services;
(l) Director of Continuing Education.
(ii) The Vice Chancellor shall be Chairperson of the Senate and in the absence of the Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall act as Chairperson of Senate.

43. Senate shall be the academic authority of the University and shall have overall responsibility for the academic policies, plans, and programmes of the University and shall have general control and direction under the Council of the teaching, research, examinations, conferment of degrees and the granting of other awards of the University. In addition, Senate shall be responsible for articulating the mission statement, goals and objectives of the University for approval by Council.

44. Subject to the provisions of the Act, the Senate shall have power to:
(a) Make regulations relating to teaching and instruction within the University including programmes of study and contents of courses, provided that the introduction of new programmes of study shall be subject to the approval of the Council;
(b) Make regulations governing the admission of persons to programmes of study in the University;
(c) Make regulations governing methods of assessing and examining the academic performance of students, and regulations for the conduct of examinations;
(d) Make regulations governing the award of such fellowships, scholarships, studentship, exhibitions and other prizes as the Council may establish, subject to any conditions made by the founders or donors thereof and accepted by the Council;
(e) Authorise the conferment of degrees, diplomas, certificates and other awards and shall be determined their titles and abbreviations;
(f ) By regulation, define academic dress and prescribe the use thereof;
(g) Recommend to Council the conferment of the title and status of Emeritus Professor on any Professor at or after his/her retirement in recognition of long and distinguished service to the University or to the former University of Botswana and Swaziland and their antecedents;
(h) Initiate proposals relating to the conduct of the University generally, discuss matters relating to the University and make representations thereon to the Council; exercise all such other powers as are or may be conferred upon the
Senate by the Act, by the Statutes, or by the Council, and make such regulations or rules as are necessary in the exercise of those powers.

45. The Senate shall recommend to the Council the establishment of academic Departments and determine which Departments and academic subjects shall form part of or be the responsibility of each Faculty or school and may determine that a Department or academic subject shall form part of or be the responsibility of more than one Faculty or School.

46. The Senate shall meet at least twice each semester.

Part XV Executive Committee of Senate

47. (i) There shall be an Executive Committee of the Senate (in this part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
   (a) Vice Chancellor;
   (b) Deputy Vice Chancellors;
   (c) the Deans of the Faculties and Schools of the University and the Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
   (d) Two persons who are members of the Senate, elected by the Senate, one of whom shall be a Professor or an Associate Professor;
   (e) Director of Academic Services;
   (f) Director of Continuing Education; and
   (g) The Director of Research and Development.

(ii) The Committee may make rules and regulations to govern its proceedings provided that the Vice Chancellor may summon meetings whenever the Vice Chancellor may deem it necessary to do so.

(iii) The Vice Chancellor shall be Chairperson of the Executive Committee and in the Vice Chancellor’s absence the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall act as Chairperson.

48. The Executive Committee may:
   (a) Act on behalf of the Senate between Senate meetings and deal with such matters as may be referred to it by Senate;
   (b) At the request of the Vice Chancellor, act as an advisory body to the Vice Chancellor;
   (c) Deal with such other matters as may from time to time be referred to it by Senate.

Part XVI Congregation

49. (i) There shall be a Congregation of the University for the purpose of conferring degrees and honorary degrees and for granting diplomas, certificates and other awards of the University.

(ii) All members of the University, as defined in Statute 2, shall be members of the congregation and it shall be open to the Senate to invite other persons to a Congregation.

(iii) A Congregation shall be presided over by the Chancellor or in the Chancellor's absence by the Vice Chancellor.

(iv) A Congregation shall be held at least once in each academic year and shall be called by the authority of the Senate.

Part XVII Honorary Degrees

50. (i) Any degree may be awarded honoris causa.

(ii) Honorary degrees may from time to time be conferred upon any person who is not an employee of the University and who has rendered distinguished service in the advancement of any branch of learning or who has otherwise rendered himself/herself worthy of such degree.

(iii) At the invitation of the Vice Chancellor, members of the University may submit written nominations for the conferment of honorary degrees upon deserving persons.

(iv) Each such nomination shall be accompanied by a statement of the degree recommended and the grounds for making the recommendation.

(v) The Vice Chancellor shall be the sole authority to ask persons upon whom it is proposed to confer honorary degrees whether or not they wish to accept such award.

(vi) Notwithstanding Statute 50 (i), an honorary degree shall be conferred only on the authority or a r resolution of the Senate and the Council passed by not less than two thirds of the members of the Senate and the Council present, on the recommendation of an Academic Honours Committee.

Part XVIII Academic Honours Committee

51. (i) There shall be an Academic Honours Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
   (a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be chairperson;
   (b) Three persons appointed by the Council; from among those of its members who are not members of the Senate; and
   (c) Three professors appointed by the Senate.

(ii) The Committee shall recommend to Senate the conferment of honorary degrees.

(iii) Subject to any directions which may be given by the Council and the Senate, the Committee shall regulate its own procedure.

Part XIX Planning and Resources Committee

52. There shall be a Planning and Resources Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
   (a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Finance and Administration) who shall be the chairperson;
   (b) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs);
   (c) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Student Affairs);
   (d) The Deans of the Faculties and Schools;
   (e) Two members of the academic staff appointed by Senate;
   (f) Director of Academic Services;
   (g) Director of Financial Services;
   (h) Director of Campus Services;
   (i) Director of Human Resources;
   (j) The Directors of Institutes and Centres;
   (k) Director of Library Services; and
   (l) Director of Institutional Planning.

53. The Committee shall inter alia:
   (a) Review the mission statement, goals, and objectives of the University and recommend to Senate accordingly;
   (b) Co-ordinate the University's planning and development strategy;
   (c) Co-ordinate the methodology of allocation and distribution of internal resources in support of the institutional planning and development strategy;
   (d) Review sectional planning submissions in order to ensure their appropriateness and consistency with the mission, strategy and objectives of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
   (e) Evaluate sectional planning submissions and recommend funding priorities to Senate; and
   (f) Advise Senate on the integration of academic, financial and physical plans into the University's institutional plan.

Part XX Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee

54. There shall be an Academic Policy Review and Planning Committee of Senate (in this part referred to as the “Committee”) which shall consist of the following members:
   (a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be the chairperson;
   (b) Principal of the Botswana College of Agriculture or representative;
   (c) Deans of the Faculties and Schools of the
University and the Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;
(d) Director of Library Services;
(e) Director of Academic Services;
(f) Director of Academic Development;
(g) Two persons appointed by Senate, one of whom should be a Professor or an Associate Professor;
(h) Director of Institutional Planning;
(i) Director of Research and Development;
(j) Director of Continuing Education.

55. The Committee shall:
(i) Review the University's academic policies and advise Senate accordingly;
(ii) Review proposals from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units for changes in academic policy, ensure their compliance with the academic policies of the University, and advise Senate accordingly;
(iii) Review and advise Senate on the submissions from the Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres and from the academic support service units in which are outlined the academic plans for the accomplishment of the University's mission, objectives, and strategies with a statement of the attendant human, financial, and physical resource requirements;
(iv) Integrate and consolidate the academic planning submissions into the University's academic plan, setting out the resource implications of implementation, and advise Senate accordingly;
(v) Review continually the needs which underpin the elements of the University's academic plan and, where necessary and appropriate, suggest changes and improvements to Senate.

Part XXI Boards of Faculties, Schools, Institutes and Centres

56. Each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall have a Board which shall meet at least twice each semester but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure by the standing orders formulated by it.

57. (i) There shall be a Faculty Board of each Faculty which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) The Deputy Dean of the Faculty;
(c) Heads of Departments;
(d) Such members of the academic staff of the Departments of the Faculty as the Board may determine;
(e) One representative of each of the Faculties including the Faculties of Botswana College of Agriculture;
(f) Director of Library Services or representative;
(g) One representative of each of the Institutes and Centres of the University;
(h) Such number of students as the Board may determine;
(i) Such number of staff development fellows of the Departments of the Faculty as the Board may determine;
(j) Such other persons as the Senate may determine.

(ii) The members of a Faculty Board referred to in Statute 57 (i) (e), (g) and (h) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.

(iii) The quorum of a Faculty Board shall be one third of the membership thereof.

(iv) Part-time members of academic staff may attend meetings of the Faculty Board at the discretion of the Dean but shall have no vote.

(v) A Faculty Board shall exclude from its meeting the student members when it is considering the academic performance of individual students, or when it is discussing any other matter relating to a member or members of staff which a Faculty Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.

58. Subject to the Statutes and to such limitations as the Senate may impose, a Faculty Board or School may:
(i) Direct and regulate, within the general academic policy formulated by the Senate, all matters relating to teaching, instruction and research within each Faculty or School, including curricula and examinations, and advise the Senate on such matters;
(ii) Appoint internal and external examiners and recommend to the Finance Committee the fees payable to the examiners;
(iii) Make recommendations to the Senate in respect of the award of degrees, diplomas, certificates and other awards, academic titles and distinctions within the Faculty;
(iv) Discuss any matters relating to the work of the Faculty and submit recommendations thereon to the Senate;
(v) From time to time, consider the progress and conduct of the students of the Faculty and make regular reports to the Senate;
(vi) Consider all matters referred to it for its consideration by the Senate and report to the Senate;
(vii) Receive at each meeting oral and/or written reports from Heads of Departments and Faculty representatives on University committees and boards;
(viii) Appoint committees consisting of members of the Faculty and such other persons as it thinks fit and delegate any of its functions to the committees so appointed.

59. (i) There shall be a School of Graduate Studies, the Board of which ("the School Board") shall consist of the following members:
(a) Dean of the School, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) One person appointed by Senate;
(c) One representative from each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre who shall be of the rank of at least senior lecturer or equivalent;
(d) One representative of each of the Departments offering postgraduate programmes;
(e) Director of Library Services or representative;
(f) Two post graduate students elected for a period of one academic year by and from among the postgraduate students; and
(g) Such other persons as the Senate may determine.

(ii) The members of the School Board referred to in Statute 59 (i) (b) and (c) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.

(iii) The quorum of the School Board shall be one third of the membership thereof.

(iv) The School Board shall exclude from its meeting the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examination or otherwise, of individual students, or when it is discussing any matters relating to a member or members of staff which the Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.

60. Subject to the Statutes to such limitations as the Senate may impose, the School Board shall:
(i) Promote the development of quality and relevance in the provision of graduate studies;
(ii) Approve admissions and progression for all graduate students;
(iii) Provide leadership in the co-ordination and development of graduate studies;
(iv) Maintain quality across all graduate programmes;
(v) Assist with fund-raising and marketing of graduate programmes;
(vi) Establish guidelines for supervision of graduate students (approval of supervisors and monitor the progress of graduate
students);
(vii) Maintain clear lines of communication with each faculty and department offering graduate studies;
(viii) Work to enhance the facilities available to graduate students.

61. (i) There shall be a Board of each Institute or Centre which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre who shall be the chairperson;
(b) Such members of the academic staff as the Board may from time to time determine;
(c) One member from each Faculty elected by the Faculty Board;
(d) One member of Senate elected by Senate;
(e) Such other persons as the Senate may determine; and
(f) Such number of staff development fellows of the Institute or Centre as the Board may determine.

(ii) The members of the Board referred to in Statute 61 (i) (e) and (d) shall vacate their seats at the end of each academic year but shall be eligible for reappointment.

(iii) Subject to the direction of Senate, the Board of an Institute or Centre may;
(a) Decide on matters of general policy regarding the work of the Institute or Centre, after consultation with the staff of the Institute or Centre;
(b) Establish advisory groups to give the Board and the Director advice on any academic work, research project, or consultancy being, or to be, undertaken by the Institute or Centre;
(c) Notwithstanding the generality of Statute 61 (i), advise the Director of the Institute or Centre on the priorities and emphasis of scholarship required for the benefit of the nation or of particular sectors of the nation;
(d) Approve the affiliation or attachment to an Institute or Centre of individual academics;
(e) Generally direct and approve proposals for activities of the Institute or Centre in pursuance of its objectives;
(f) Consider all matters referred to it by Senate and report thereon to the Senate.
(iv) The quorum of the Board of an Institute or Centre shall be one third of the membership thereof.

Part XXII Executive Committees of Boards, Schools, Institutes or Centres

62. (i) There shall be an Executive Committee of the Board of each Faculty, School, Institute or Centre.

(ii) The Executive Committee shall:
(a) Act on behalf of the Board between Board meetings and deal with such matters as may be referred to it by the Board;
(b) Act at the request of the Dean of a Faculty or School, or the Director of an Institute or Centre as an advisory body to the Dean or Director.

(iii) The Committee may make rules and regulations to govern its proceedings, provided that the Dean or the Director may summon meetings whenever the Dean or Director may deem it necessary to do so.

Part XXIII Executive Committees of Faculty Boards

63. (i) The Executive Committee of each Faculty Board (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty;
(b) The Deputy Dean of the Faculty;
(c) The Heads of Department of the Faculty;
(d) Two persons elected by the Faculty Board one of whom shall be a professor or an associate professor.

(ii) The Dean of the Faculty shall be the Chairperson of the Executive Committee and in his/her absence the Deputy Dean shall act as Chairperson.

Part XXIV Executive Committee of the School of Graduate Studies

64. The Executive Committee of the School of Graduate Studies (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the School, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) The Faculty representatives on the Board;
(c) One person appointed by the Senate;
(d) One person who is a member of the School Board, elected by the School Board.

Part XXV Executive Committees of Institutes or Centres

65. The Executive Committee of the Board of an Institute or Centre (in this part referred to as “the Committee”) shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre, who shall be the Chairperson;
(b) The Deputy Director of the Institute or Centre;
(c) The Heads of Departments or Units of the Institute or Centre; and
(d) One person who is a member of the Board of the Institute, elected by the Board of the Institute.

Part XXVI Deans of Faculties and Schools, and Directors of Institutes and Centres

66. (i) The Dean or Director shall be the chief executive officer of the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre to which he/she is appointed and in the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre shall, subject to the Act and to these Statutes, be responsible for its general administration, the supervision of the academic and the support staff, the teaching and study of the subjects assigned to the Faculty, School, Institute, or Centre, the welfare and academic progress of the students, and shall have such other powers and duties as may be assigned to him/her by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) on behalf of, and as directed by, the Vice Chancellor.

(ii) The Dean or Director shall participate in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. He/she shall provide academic leadership to the Faculty, School, Institute, or Centre by planning, directing, and co-ordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programmes of the departments of the Faculty, School, Institute, or Centre.

(iii) The Dean or Director, subject to the approval of the Vice Chancellor may delegate any powers or duties under this Statute subject to such restrictions and conditions as may be imposed, provided that a power delegated shall not include power to sub-delegate.

(iv) By virtue of office, the Dean or Director shall be a member of all the boards and committees in the Faculty, School, Institute or Centre. In addition, he/she shall be a member of such committees of the Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

67. Where the Dean of a Faculty is unable, whether by reason of his/her absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out his/her functions as such, the Deputy Dean or the Faculty shall act as Dean of the Faculty. If the Deputy Dean is unable to act as Dean, the Deputy Vice Chancellor may, after consulting the Dean, if that is reasonably practicable, and the members of the Executive Committee of the Faculty Board appoint a person of or above
the rank of senior lecturer from among those members of the Faculty Board referred to in Statute 57 (i) (c) to act as Dean of the Faculty.

68. Where the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies is unable, whether by reason of absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out functions as such, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall, after consulting the Dean, if that is reasonably practicable, and the members of the Executive Committee of the Board of the School of Graduate Studies, appoint a person of the rank of at least an associate professor from among members of the Faculty Boards to act as Dean of the School.

69. Where the Director of an Institute or a Centre is unable, whether by reason of absence from the University, or for any other reason, to carry out functions as such, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall appoint from among the academic staff of the Institute or Centre a person of or above the rank of senior lecturer to act as Director of the Institute or Centre.

Part XXVII Deputy Deans of Faculties

70. (i) The Deputy Dean of a Faculty shall assist the Dean in the formulation, planning and implementation of academic policy of the Faculty and shall have responsibility for ensuring the academic welfare of the students registered in the Faculty.

(ii) By virtue of office, the Deputy Dean shall be a member of all the boards and committees in their Faculty. In addition, the Deputy Dean shall be a member of such committees of the Council and Senate as may from time to time be prescribed in these Statutes.

Part XXVIII Appointments of Deans, Deputy Deans and Directors of Institutes or Centres

71. (i) Each Faculty shall have a Dean and a Deputy Dean and each Institute or Centre shall have a Director who shall be appointed by the Academic and Administrative Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the recommendation of the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee.

(ii) Where there is a vacancy in any of the offices referred to under Statute 71 (i), the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall cause the position to be advertised within the Faculty, Institute, or Centre.

(iii) Candidates for the position of Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director shall make their candidacy known either through an application or through a nomination or by invitation of the University of Botswana.

(iv) In the event of the establishment of a new Faculty, or where a vacancy of Dean of Faculty has been advertised in accordance with Statute 71 (ii) and it has been determined that there are no suitable internal candidates, the University shall, after consultation with the Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee, extend the search for a Dean internationally. In this event, the requirements shall be for a person holding the rank of associate professor or above.

(v) A Dean appointed in accordance with Statute 71 (iv) above shall, upon successful completion of two three-year terms, have the option to apply to take up appointment at the appropriate rank in the relevant Department by filling a vacant position. Alternatively, the University may offer appointment on supernumerary basis for a period not exceeding three years.

(vi) The file of candidates shall be reviewed by the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee which shall recommend a short list of candidates to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of persons for appointment as Deans and Deputy Deans of the Faculties and Directors of Institutes and Centres.

(vii) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director unless he/she has been, for the twelve months preceding the appointment, of or above the rank of senior lecturer or equivalent.

(viii) The Dean, Deputy Dean or Director shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee which shall recommend to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(ix) Subject to these Statutes, the Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director shall hold the appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for re-appointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(x) Before the completion of the initial three year term, the Dean, Deputy Dean, or Director shall inform the Deputy Vice Chancellor of his/her intentions regarding renewal of the term of office; which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term.

(xi) If the Dean, Deputy Dean or Director does not intend to renew his/her term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Dean, Deputy Dean or Director.

(xii) If the Dean or Director intends to renew the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall submit an assessment of the performance of the incumbent to the appropriate Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee which shall make a recommendation to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee on re-appointment of the Dean or Director. In the case of a Deputy Dean or Deputy Director, the assessment shall be done by the Dean or Director, as the case may be. (xiii) On completion of two consecutive terms of office, a Dean, Deputy Dean or Director shall not be eligible for further appointment to the position of Dean, Deputy Dean or Director until a three year period has elapsed.

Part XXIX Appointment of the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies

72. (i) The Dean of the School of Graduate Studies shall be appointed by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee taking into consideration the recommendation of a Special Selection Committee which shall consist of the following members:

(a) Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall be chairperson;

(b) The Deans of the Faculties and the Schools of the University and the Deans of the Faculties of the Botswana College of Agriculture;

(c) Two Professors appointed by the Senate;

(d) Director of Human Resources or representative.

(ii) Where there is a vacancy in the office of the Dean of the School of Graduate Studies, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall cause the position to be advertised within the University inviting applications from suitably qualified members of the University staff. No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean unless he/she has been, for the twelve (120) months immediately preceding the appointment, of or above the rank of associate professor.

(iii) Candidates for the position of Dean shall make their candidacy known either through an application or through a nomination.

(iv) The file of candidates shall be reviewed by the Special Selection Committee which
shall recommend a short list to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee of persons for appointment as Dean of the School.

(v) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Dean unless he/she has been, for the twelve months preceding the appointment, of or above the rank of associate professor.

(vi) The Dean shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) who shall provide a report to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

(vii) Subject to these Statutes, the Dean of the School shall hold the initial appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for re-appointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(viii) If the Dean intends to extend the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall submit an assessment of the performance of the incumbent to the Special Selection Committee which shall make a recommendation to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee on the reappointment of the Dean.

(ix) Before the completion of the initial three year term, the Dean shall inform the Deputy Vice Chancellor of his/her intentions regarding renewal of the term of office; which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term.

(x) If the Dean does not intend to renew the term of office, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Dean.

Part XXXI Departmental Boards

73. (i) Every Academic Department shall have a Departmental Board which shall consist of the following members:

(a) The Head of the Department, who shall be Chairperson;
(b) All the full-time members of the academic staff of the Department;
(c) Not more than three students elected annually by the students of the Department from among themselves;
(d) Staff Development Fellows of the Department;
(e) Such other persons as the Department may determine from time to time.

(ii) Part-time members of the academic staff may attend the meeting of the Departmental Board at the discretion of the Head of Department but shall have no vote.

(iii) A Departmental Board may co-opt representatives of Departments with related interests.

74. (i) The functions of a Departmental Board shall be to:

(a) Make recommendations for programmes and courses in the Department;
(b) Consider the general organisation of programmes and courses of study and research within the Department and make recommendations to the Faculty Board and the Board of the School of Graduate Studies;
(c) Make arrangements for the examination of each course in the Department and selection of external examiners for their academic programmes;
(d) Initiate recruitment and recommend candidates for appointment to posts within the Department;
(e) From time to time consider the progress and conduct of the students of the Department and make regular reports to the Faculty Board and to the Board of the School of Graduate Studies;
(f) Consider other academic matters as determined by the Department.

(ii) A Departmental Board shall exclude from its meetings the student members when it is considering the academic performance in examinations or otherwise, of individual students, or when it is discussing the appointment or promotion of a member of staff or any other matter relating to a member or members of staff which a Departmental Board in its discretion shall consider confidential.

75. Every Departmental Board shall meet at least twice each semester, but otherwise shall regulate its own procedure including the creation and establishment of committees.

Part XXXI Heads of Academic Departments

76. (i) The Head of a Department shall participate in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of the academic policies of the University and shall promote academic excellence in the teaching, research and service programmes of the University. In addition, the Head of a Department shall provide academic leadership to the Department by planning, directing, and co-coordinating the formulation and implementation of the academic plans and programmes of the Department.

(ii) The Head of a Department shall be appointed by the Vice Chancellor after receiving a recommendation from the Dean of the Faculty concerned, who shall make such recommendation after consulting the full-time members of the academic staff of the Department and the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs).

(iii) No person shall be eligible for appointment as Head of Department unless he/she has been, for the twelve months preceding his/her appointment, of or above the rank of senior lecturer.

(iv) The Head of Department shall be subject to an annual performance appraisal and review undertaken by the Dean of the Faculty who shall provide a report to the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs).

(v) Subject to these Statutes, the Head of a Department shall hold the appointment as such for three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment for a further term of three years provided that he/she shall not hold office for a continuous period exceeding six years.

(vi) On completion of the second term of office, a Head of a Department shall not be eligible for further appointment to the position of Head of a Department until a three year period has elapsed.

(vii) If the Head of a Department intends to renew the term of office (which intention shall be recorded in writing at least 60 days prior to the completion of the said initial three year term), the Dean shall, after consultation with the full-time members of the academic staff and the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs), make a recommendation to the Vice Chancellor on re-appointment of the Head of Department.

(viii) If the Head of a Department does not intend to renew his/her term of office, the Dean shall initiate the process of appointment of a new Head of Department.

Part XXXII Affiliated and Associate Institutions

77. Affiliated Institutions

(i) The Council may, on the recommendation of the Senate, approve the affiliation with the University of any other institution of teaching or research situated within or outside Botswana and may designate it an Affiliated Institution of the University.

(ii) In respect of any Affiliated Institution the Senate shall:

(a) Advise on and assist in the preparation of programmes of instruction;
(b) Validate programmes of instruction, examinations and the granting of certificates and other awards of the Affiliated Institutions; and
(c) Have the right of visitation and inspection of each institution affiliated to the University to ensure observance of affiliation regulations.

(iii) The Senate shall establish a Board of Affiliation with the following functions:
(a) To consider recommendations concerning the growth and development of the Affiliated Institutions;
(b) To consider matters concerning regulations, syllabi, assessment procedures, and teaching methods and to make recommendations to Senate accordingly;
(c) To oversee assessment procedures and to appoint external examiners;
(d) To deal with any matter of affiliation that may be delegated by Senate from time to time;
(e) To receive reports on other matters concerning Affiliated Institutions;
(f) To encourage research initiatives in the areas of educational expertise of the Affiliated Institutions;
(g) To present periodic reports to Senate;
(h) To consider and recommend examination results and awards to Senate.
(iv) The membership of the Board of Affiliation shall be determined by Senate after consultation with the governing bodies of the Affiliated Institutions.
(v) The Director of Academic Development shall be chairperson of the Board.

78. Associate Institutions
(i) The Council may, on the recommendation of the Senate, designate any academic or research institution situated within Botswana and seeking to offer programmes leading to the award of degrees, diplomas and other awards of the University of Botswana, an Associate Institution of the University.
(ii) The award of degrees, diplomas and other awards of an Associate Institution shall be the responsibility of, and shall be made by, the University of Botswana.
(iii) In respect of degrees, diplomas or other awards to be granted by the University, the University Senate shall be entirely responsible for approving programmes and courses of study, regulating the conduct of examinations, the marking of examinations, and the granting of such degrees, diplomas, or awards.
(iv) The governing body of an Associate Institution shall obtain the approval of the University in respect of:
(a) The appointment, promotion and review of academic staff and of Deans and Heads of Departments who teach courses, or are responsible for programmes leading to the awards by the University of Botswana; and
(b) The establishment of Boards for each Faculty or Department which is responsible for programmes leading to the awards of the University of Botswana.

Part XXXIII Appointments, Promotions and Review Committees
79. (i) The appointment, promotion, and annual appraisal and performance review of every academic member of staff and of every member of the support staff of the University shall be made by an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee.
(ii) Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committees shall make recommendations for the appointment or the promotion of staff in accordance with the provisions of Statutes 30 and 31.

80. Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committees
(i) There shall be a Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review Committee of each Faculty (in this part referred to as "the Committee") which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Dean of the Faculty who shall be Chairperson; and where the Dean is under review, the Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic Affairs) shall be the Chairperson;
(b) The Deputy Dean;
(c) Heads of Departments;
(d) Two members elected by the Faculty Board;
(e) One professor or associate professor from each Department, elected by the members of the Departmental Board; provided where the Department does not have positions of associate professor and professor, or the positions are vacant, the Department shall be represented by a senior member of the academic staff elected by members of the Departmental Board.
(f) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than two Professors with special competence from outside the Faculty; and
(g) The Director of Human Resources or representative.
(ii) Subject to such directions as may be given by the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee, the Committee shall recommend the appointment, the promotion and review of the academic staff of the Faculty.

81. Appointment, Promotion and Review of Academic Staff in Institutes or Centres
(i) The appointment, promotion, or review of academic staff who are members of a Centre or Institute which is not part of a Faculty shall be considered by the Faculty Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee of that Faculty which contains the discipline or academic subject area of the staff member under consideration.
(ii) In such circumstances, the membership of the Faculty Appointments, Promotions and Review committee specified under Statute 80 (i) shall be extended to include the Director of the Institute or Centre concerned.
(iii) When considering the appointment, promotion or review of professors of the University who are members of an Institute or Centre which is not part of a Faculty, the membership of the Committee specified under Statute 80 (i) shall be extended to include a professor or an associate professor of the Institute or Centre concerned provided where the Department does not have positions of associate professor and professor, or the positions are vacant, the Department shall be represented by a senior member of the Academic Staff elected by members of the Departmental Board.
(iv) An Institute or a Centre which is not part of a Faculty shall have an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Selection Committee which shall consist of the following members:
(a) The Director of the Institute or Centre who shall be the Chairperson;
(b) Three members of the academic staff of the Institute or Centre elected by the academic staff of the Institute or Centre;
(c) Two co-opted members with special competence, from outside the Institute or Centre.
(v) No recommendation on the appointment, promotion or review of academic staff of the University who are members of an Institute or a Centre which is not part of a Faculty shall be made by a Faculty Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee unless it has considered every recommendation made to it by an Appointments, Promotions, and Review Selection Committee in accordance...
with Statute 81 (iv).

82. Support Staff Appointments, Promotions and Review Committees
(i) For the purposes of this Statute, the Library and any other group of staff which Council shall specify, shall be regarded as Departments and the term Head of Department shall be correspondingly interpreted.
(ii) Where support staff consists of a cadre confined to a single Department, there shall be Departmental Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committees which shall consist of the following members:
   (a) The Head of Department, who shall be chairperson;
   (b) Director of Human Resources or representative;
   (c) Three members of the staff of the Department; and
   (d) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than four additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.
(iii) Where support staff consist of a common cadre which is not confined to a single Department, there shall be for each such cadre a Common Cadre Appointments, Promotions, and Review Committee which shall consist of the following members:
   (a) The Director, Human Resources, who shall be the Chairperson;
   (b) The Deputy Director (Appointments and Administration);
   (c) Two members of the staff belonging to the common cadre;
   (d) At the discretion of the chairperson, not more than four additional members with special competence from within or outside the University.
(iv) Heads of Departments to, or within which, an appointment or a promotion of common cadre staff is to be made shall be invited but only when the business of their Department is under consideration.

83. Special Appointments
(i) Notwithstanding the provisions of Statutes 80, 81, and 82, the Vice Chancellor may, in the event that he/she is satisfied that exceptional circumstances so require, and on the recommendation of any academic, support or other unit of the University, appoint any person as a member of staff of the University for a period not exceeding twelve (12) months.
(ii) Appointments made under this provision shall be reported periodically to the Staff Appointments and Promotions Committee.

84. Miscellaneous
(i) Where a spouse or relation of a member of Appointments, Promotions Review Committee, constituted under these Statutes is a candidate for appointment or promotion under consideration by the Committee, the member concerned shall recuse himself/ herself from any further consideration of the matter. Where the Chairperson is recused in accordance with the provisions hereof, another member shall be elected to preside. Heads of Departments, where recused, must be represented by a senior member of staff of the Department.
   (i) Subject to Statute 83, no appointment shall be made to any vacant post within the approved establishment of any Department of the University unless the vacancy which exists has been advertised publicly for a reasonable period in such a manner as the Council shall determine.

Part XXXIV Terms and Conditions of Service of Members of University Staff
85. (i) Subject to these Statutes, an employee of the University shall hold his/ her appointment upon such terms and conditions of service as the Council shall determine.
   (ii) The terms and conditions of service of every employee of the University shall be sent out in a written contract of service.
   (iii) Without prejudice to the foregoing, every member of staff of the University shall be subject to the general authority of the Council and of the Vice Chancellor.
86. Every contract of service between the University and an employee of the University shall contain or be deemed to contain a provision that the contract is subject to the Employment Act, University Act and Statutes, and to all regulations made hereunder.
87. Where an employee of the University is convicted by a court within or outside Botswana, of an offence which is a criminal offence under the laws of Botswana and in consequence thereof is sentenced to imprisonment, whether in respect of the nonpayment of a fine imposed for the offence or otherwise, such employee shall receive no emoluments in respect of the period of detention in prison in execution of that sentence unless the Council otherwise directs. In addition to the foregoing such conviction shall render the employee liable for immediate termination in respect thereof.

Part XXXV Students Representative Council
88. (i) The affairs of the students of the University shall be governed by a Students Representative Council.
   (ii) The constitution of the Students Representative Council shall be subject to review and/or amendment in such manner as the Constitution provides and/or as directed by Council should Council find it necessary or expedient in the interests of the student body.
   (iii) The function of the Students Representative Council shall be:
      (a) To represent the students in their relations with the authorities of the University and other relevant bodies;
      (b) To develop the intellectual, cultural, social and sporting life of the students; and
      (c) To foster the corporate spirit of the students.
89. Subject to the observance by them of the Statutes and of regulations prescribed under these Statutes, the students shall enjoy all the privileges and facilities available to them in the University.

Part XXXVI Security
90. The University reserves the right, through Ordinances and/or Regulations, to implement measures to control and to regulate access to, and movement within, its buildings and premises, and to promulgate such other regulations as may be required to establish and maintain good order, and to protect persons and property provided that such measures shall at all times be consistent with the preservation of individual rights of movement, association and privacy.

Part XXXVII Ordinances/Regulations
91. (i) Subject to the Act and the Statutes, the Council may make Ordinances/ Regulations prescribing any matter which, in the opinion of Council, is appropriate to be prescribed for the better carrying out of the University’s functions and in furtherance of these Statutes.
   (ii) Ordinances/Regulations may provide such information, activities or acts as, in the opinion of the Council, may be appropriate.
   (iii) The Council may at any time amend or repeal any Ordinance/ Regulation.
   (iv) Ordinances/Regulations need not be published in the Calendar, but the Council shall publish them in such a manner as the Council considers will best make them known
Part XXXVIII Amendments to Statutes

92. Without prejudice to the provisions of Section 15 (2) of the Act, the Council shall not amend, or revoke any Statute which, in the opinion of the Council, affects academic matters without first consulting the Senate and considering any representations the Senate may make upon such Statute, amendment, or revocation as the case may be.

Preliminary Investigation Procedure under Statute 73 (III) (a)

1.0 Appointment of Committee of Investigation

1.1 The Vice Chancellor shall, upon reasonable belief that any allegations of misconduct against a member of the academic or senior administrative staff of the University may necessitate disciplinary proceedings, hold a preliminary investigation into the allegations.

1.2 In holding a preliminary investigation as aforesaid the Vice Chancellor may appoint an investigator or investigators from among the academic and senior administrative staff to assist him/her in such preliminary investigation and to report to him/her, provided that the supervisor of the member of staff whose conduct is being investigated, or any member of staff of the department to which the member of staff whose conduct is being investigated belongs, shall not be appointed an investigator as afore described, and, further, provided that the investigator or investigators as afore described shall not be of a rank less senior than the member of staff whose conduct is being investigated.

2.0 Conduct of Investigation

2.1 In investigating any matter referred to be investigated, the Vice Chancellor or his/her investigator or investigators may require any person (excluding the member of staff whose conduct is being investigated):
(a) To furnish in writing or otherwise, such particulars in relation to the matter as may be specified;
(b) To attend before or then;
(c) To give a verbal or written statement on oath or otherwise;
(d) To produce any document relevant to the investigation.

2.2 The Vice Chancellor, or an investigator or investigators shall not be bound by any rules of evidence or procedure and no person shall be represented by a legal practitioner in any part of the preliminary investigation.

3.0 Report

Upon completion of the preliminary investigation:

3.1 An investigator or investigators, as the case may be, shall, having completed the investigation forthwith, submit a report thereon to the Vice Chancellor which report may contain any proposals and such recommendations as he/she or they may think fit to make.

3.2 Neither the Vice Chancellor, nor any investigator shall disclose to any person any information obtained or disclosed during any investigation, save as required by the Statutes of the University.

*Please note that the University of Botswana Statutes are currently under review and/or consolidation.*